

*MASTER NEGATIVE*

*NO. 93-81335-21*

MICROFILMED 1993

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES/NEW YORK

as part of the  
"Foundations of Western Civilization Preservation Project"

Funded by the  
NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Reproductions may not be made without permission from  
Columbia University Library

# **COPYRIGHT STATEMENT**

**The copyright law of the United States - Title 17, United States Code - concerns the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.**

**Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specified conditions is that the photocopy or other reproduction is not to be "used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research." If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of "fair use," that user may be liable for copyright infringement.**

**This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copy order if, in its judgement, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of the copyright law.**

*AUTHOR:*

HARPER, WILLIAM  
RAINEY

*TITLE:*

AN INDUCTIVE GREEK  
METHOD

*PLACE:*

NEW YORK

*DATE:*

[1888]

Master Negative #

93-81335-21

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES  
PRESERVATION DEPARTMENT

BIBLIOGRAPHIC MICROFORM TARGET

Original Material as Filmed - Existing Bibliographic Record

887.82  
H23

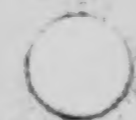
Harper, William Rainey, 1856-1906.

An inductive Greek method, by William R. Harper ...  
and William E. Waters ... New York and Chicago, Ivi-  
son, Blakeman, and company [1888]

viii p., 2 l., (13)-355 p. 18 $\frac{1}{2}$ cm.

1. Greek language—Composition and exercises. I. Waters, William  
Everett, 1856-1914 joint author.

Library of Congress  
© 1889: 24388



PA258.H45 1888

10-24159†

Restrictions on Use:

-----  
TECHNICAL MICROFORM DATA

FILM SIZE: 35mm

REDUCTION RATIO: 1/x

IMAGE PLACEMENT: IA IIA IB IIB

DATE FILMED: 4-28-93

INITIALS MB

FILMED BY: RESEARCH PUBLICATIONS, INC WOODBRIDGE, CT

## BIBLIOGRAPHIC IRREGULARITIES

MAIN

ENTRY: Harper, William Rainey  
An inductive Greek Method

### Bibliographic Irregularities in the Original Document

List volumes and pages affected; include name of institution if filming borrowed text.

\_\_\_\_\_ Page(s) missing/not available: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Volumes(s) missing/not available: \_\_\_\_\_

Illegible and/or damaged page(s): p. 20-50

\_\_\_\_\_ Page(s) or volumes(s) misnumbered: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Bound out of sequence: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Page(s) or illustration(s) filmed from copy borrowed from: Library  
of Elmira College

\_\_\_\_\_ Other: \_\_\_\_\_

FILMED IN WHOLE  
OR PART FROM A  
COPY BORROWED  
FROM LIBRARY OF  
ELMIRA COLLEGE

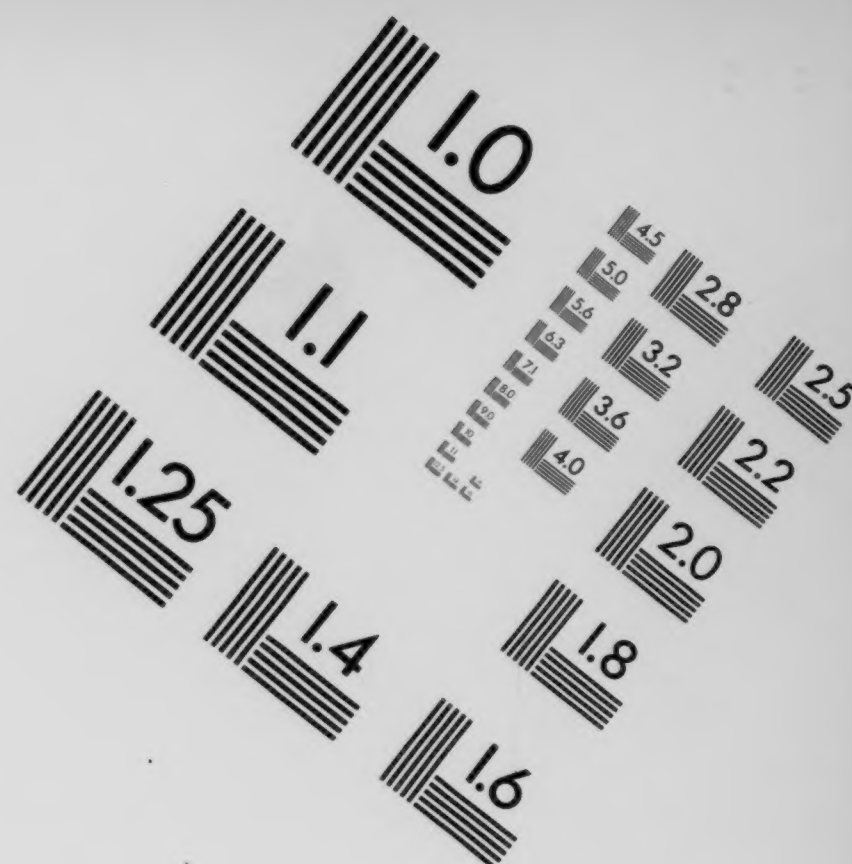
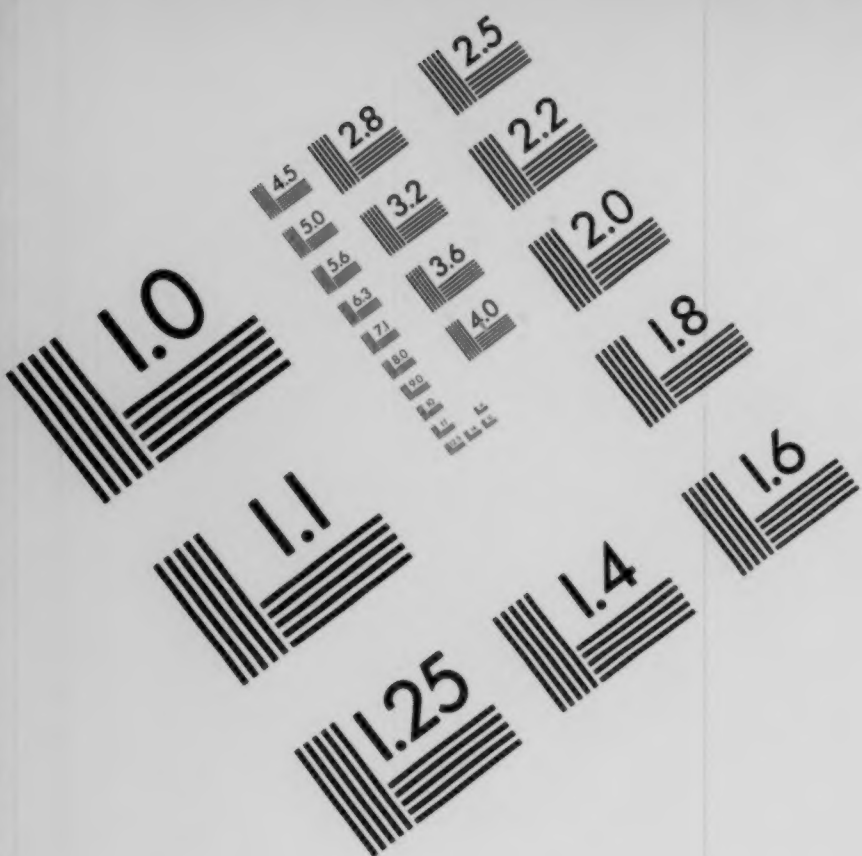


**AIM**

**Association for Information and Image Management**

1100 Wayne Avenue, Suite 1100  
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

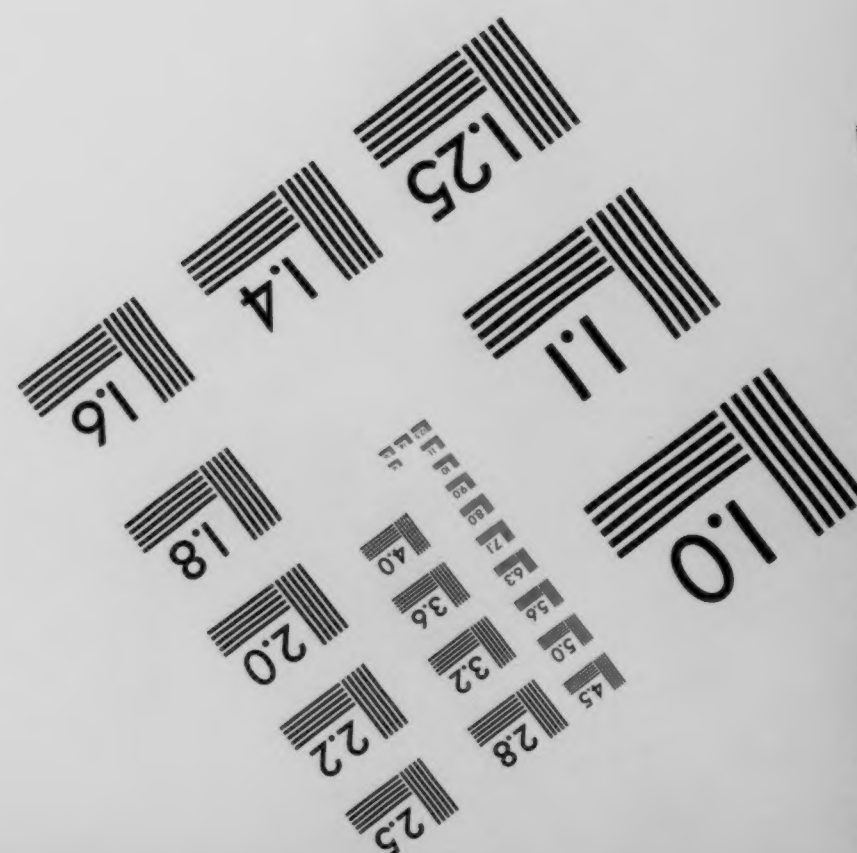
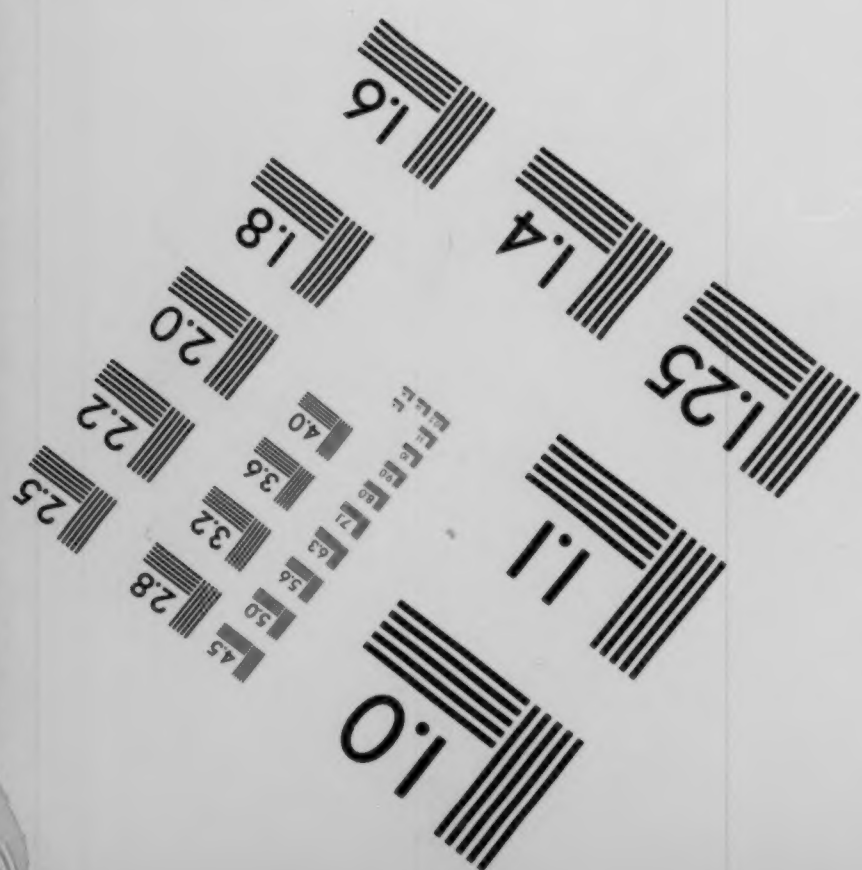
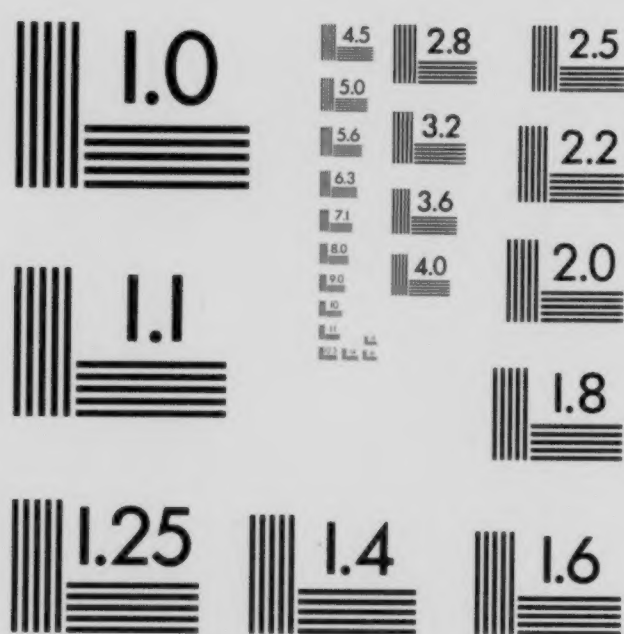
301/587-8202



Centimeter



Inches



MANUFACTURED TO AIIM STANDARDS  
BY APPLIED IMAGE, INC.



*Instructive  
Creek Method*

HALL & WATERS

NEW YORK: HALL & WATERS  
1857

887.82

H23

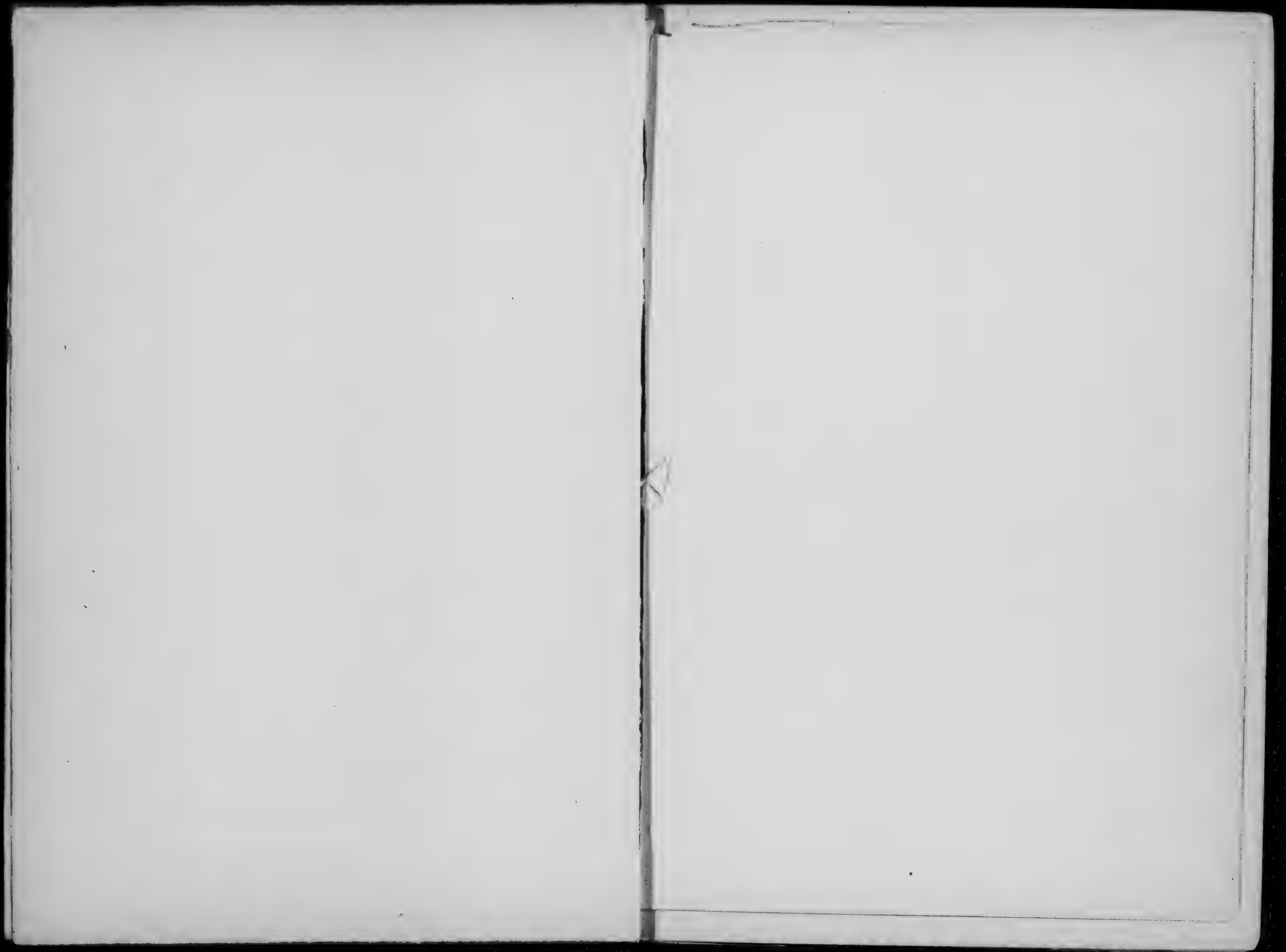
Columbia College  
in the City of New York



Library.

GIVEN BY

Am. Book Co.



AN INDUCTIVE GREEK METHOD

AN INDUCTIVE  
GREEK METHOD

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

WILLIAM E. WATERS, PH.D.

CINCINNATI, OHIO

NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Copyright, 1888,  
BY IVISON, BLAKEMAN, AND COMPANY.

Printed by  
Wm. Ivison  
New York, U. S. A.

25 Jun. '94. Sk.

## PREFACE.

---

THERE is clearly no demand for a new Introductory Greek book, unless it is one which differs essentially from those which are already in use. The score or more of methods which have appeared in this country are constructed according to the same idea. Though many of them are scholarly and progressive, all are merely companions to the grammar, and not guides to the language.

The existence of so many "methods" indicates a feeling that, thus far, an entirely satisfactory introductory book has not been found. If anything additional were needed to justify the existence of this feeling, it would be found in the lack of interest which characterizes the average student of Greek, and in the confessedly small results accomplished in college.

The method presented in this book claims to overcome both of these difficulties. It will arouse enthusiasm; it will increase results. It is not supposed that this claim will be accepted until the merits of the method have been tested in the class-room, but the following outline of the *plan of work* which it advocates may, perhaps, show the value of the principles on which the claim is based.

1. A sentence of the original text, or part of a sentence (in later work, even a section), is placed before the pupil. The pronunciation and exact translation of each word are furnished him. By the aid which the teacher gives him in advance, and with the material given in the book, he thoroughly masters the words and

16 JUN 1894 Ann. Book Co. 9

172601

phrases of this sentence or section. His knowledge is tested by requiring him to recite or write the Greek sentence with only the translation before his eye.

2. In connection with this mastery of the words and phrases of the sentence assigned, the pupil reads and digests the contents of the "Notes" on these words. This study accomplishes two things, — first, the careful examination of each remark, with its application to the work in hand, aids in fixing more firmly in mind the word sought to be mastered; second, grammatical material from the very beginning is being collected.

3. The "Text" and "Notes" having been learned, the next step is one of a more general character. Out of the material which has thus far been mastered, those principles which are of most importance, and which the pupil himself will be most likely to recognize, are pointed out under the head of "Observations." The pupil may be brought to see these points himself before having his attention called to them in the Lesson.

4. The grammatical material obtained in the Lesson is now systematized and arranged with reference to the two leading grammars. This not only furnishes a review of what already has been done, but also enables the pupil to see the connection of each new fact or principle with the others to which it stands related.

5. The words of the sentence or section are now separated from their context and placed in alphabetical order. Thus separated, they form the basis of additional study. In some cases words similar in form and meaning to familiar English words are inserted in order to allow a greater variety in the exercise.

6. In order to prevent the memorizing of the Greek text without a clear idea of the force of each word, to impress more firmly on the mind the words and phrases of the text, and to drill the pupil in prose composition, "Exercises," Greek into English and English into Greek, are given. These are always based upon the sentence or section which furnishes the basis of the Lesson. Prose composition taught in this manner ceases

to be dreaded by the pupil, and becomes, indeed, a source of delight.

7. Once more the leading points of the entire Lesson, whether suggested in the "Notes," the "Observations," or the "Grammar Lesson," come up for consideration under the head of "Topics for Study." Upon each topic the student is expected to make a statement of what *he knows* (not of what has been said in the book). If his statement is not sufficiently full, it will be criticised by the class.

From this outline the idea of the method will be apparent. It proposes, first, to gain an accurate and thorough knowledge of some of the facts of the language; second, to learn from these facts the principles which they illustrate, and by which they are regulated; third, to apply these principles in the further progress of the work. A few words in explanation of this statement are needed.

1. The method employed is inductive, and yet a slight departure is made at times to allow a more complete treatment of a subject, in order to elucidate some detail of which an example has not occurred.

2. The term "facts," as used, includes data from every source. Special emphasis is laid upon the collecting of facts from the living page of the original text; but paradigms and vocabularies are also to be used for this purpose.

3. It is not to be supposed that a long time must elapse before the beginner is ready to take hold of principles. As a matter of fact, he is taught important principles, and that, too, inductively, during the first hour's work. The three processes are all the while going on together. He is increasing the store of facts at his command, learning from the facts thus acquired new principles, and applying these principles to the new forms continually coming to his notice.

4. The memorizing of the facts of a language before a knowledge of the principles has been acquired is, indeed, a piece of drudgery, and yet not so great as is the memorizing of grammar

without a knowledge of the facts. Nor will it long remain drudgery; for very soon the student begins to see analogies, and to compare this word with that, and, in short, to make his own grammar.

The Lessons cover Book I. of Xenophon's Anabasis, and include a formal study of almost every portion of the grammar. Special attention is given to review, lessons for the purpose being frequently inserted. Some additional items of interest to teachers will be found elsewhere.

To Professor W. R. Crabbe, of Shadyside Academy, Pittsburgh, the authors are under obligation for his kindness in consenting to examine the proof-sheets, and for the very valuable suggestions and criticisms which have been received from him.

The List of Words arranged in the order of their first occurrence has been prepared by Professor James Wallace, of Macalister College, Minn., who is engaged in the preparation of a second book upon the Anabasis to accompany the present volume.

Suggestions, corrections, and criticisms will gladly be received, and in each case proper acknowledgment will be made. It is the hope of those engaged in the preparation of this method, that by its publication a greater interest in the study of the Greek language may be awakened.

WILLIAM R. HARPER,  
WILLIAM E. WATERS.

AUGUST 18, 1888.

## SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

1. Use twenty minutes of every hour in explaining to the class the new points of the advance-lesson; and in no case ask a class to prepare a lesson which has not thus been explained.
2. Do not fail to require the pupil so to master the text that, with the English translation before his eye, he can repeat or write the original with accuracy and without hesitation; and with every advance-lesson let the text of the ten or twelve preceding lessons be reviewed.
3. Let every point referred to in the "Notes" be called up in one form or another in the class-room.
4. In teaching the "Observations," let the words or phrases which serve as the basis of the "Observations" be written upon the board.
5. Insist upon the thorough mastery of the "Vocabularies," not only from the Greek into English, but also from the English into Greek.
6. In the translation of the English sentences into Greek, the following order is suggested: (1) The pupil will write the exercise in a blank-book; (2) He will copy it upon the blackboard; (3) The instructor will read and correct the work on the board, the pupil at the same time incorporating the corrections in his blank book; (4) The instructor will examine the book and mark all words which contain an error; (5) The pupil will take the book and correct all words so marked. To carry out this plan two blank books are required.
7. The Review lessons are very important, and should be dwelt upon until thoroughly mastered.
8. Much time can be saved and much good accomplished by having the class do a portion of the work in concert. This is especially helpful in reproducing the original text from the English translation and in reviewing the "English Exercises into Greek."
9. It is unnecessary, indeed harmful, to tell the pupil everything that may be said concerning a word or form, when it first occurs. Nor should one feel obliged, when a general statement is made concerning a given point, to indicate all the exceptions which exist.
10. Require the mastery of the paradigms, but not merely that they may be recited by rote. The pupil should study and compare them, with a view to ascertaining the principles in accordance with which they are constructed. As paradigms are commonly studied, they work more injury than benefit.
11. Introduce conversation in Greek upon the text if possible; it relieves the monotony of a recitation; it fixes the text more firmly in mind; it teaches the pupil to think in the language which he is studying. Every teacher knows the common stock of interrogative words and phrases, or can get them from a grammar.
12. It is not supposed that an ordinary class will learn *one* lesson a day. If the seventy lessons can be covered in one hundred or one hundred and twenty recitations, the progress should be regarded as satisfactory.



TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	v
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS . . . . .	ix
LESSONS I.-LXXII. . . . .	13-226
TEXT OF ANABASIS BOOK I. . . . .	227-277
A LITERAL TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I.-III. . . . .	279-288
A FREE TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I.-II. . . . .	289-294
WORDS OF ANABASIS BOOK I. IN ORDER OF FIRST OCCUR- RENCE . . . . .	295-327
VOCABULARY . . . . .	329-355

# INDUCTIVE GREEK METHOD.

## LESSON I.

### ANABASIS, I. I. 1.

**NOTE.** — In studying the "Text" and "Notes" the pupil will observe the following suggestions: —

(1) Take up first the word *Δαρείου*, and notice the form of each letter, the marks of accent, the transliteration given below it, the number of syllables, and the translation. After reading carefully what is said about it in Note 1, (a), (b), (c), copy it on paper two or three times, each time pronouncing it aloud; write it from memory two or three times, comparing the result with the printed form; pronounce it (always aloud) until it can be uttered without hesitation, and in pronouncing associate the meaning with the sound.

(2) Treat in the same manner the remaining words of the lesson, but in no case take up a new word until the word preceding it has been thoroughly mastered.

(3) Having mastered the words separately, study the sentence as a whole, pronouncing the Greek, and writing it out from the English translation (p. 279).

(4) Understand from the beginning that every sentence of the Greek text is to be *mastered*. Nothing short of absolute mastery will answer the purpose.

#### 1. TEXT.

[For the first few lessons the words will be divided into syllables, to facilitate reading.]

*Δα-ρεί-ου καὶ Πα-ρύ-σα-τί-δος γί-γνον-ται παῖ-δες*  
Da-rei-ou kai Pa-ry-sa-ti-dos gi-gnon-tai pai-des  
*Of-Darius and of-Parýsatis are-born boys*

δύ-ο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος  
 dy-o, pre-sby-te-ros men Ar-ta-xer-xēs, ne-ō-te-ros  
 two elder indeed Artaxerxes, younger

δὲ Κύρος.  
 de Cy-ros.  
 however Cyrus.

## 2. NOTES.

1. Δᾶρειος, of Darius: (a) three vowel sounds: *a* = *a* in *father*, *ei* = *ei* in *pine*, *ou* = *ou* in *uncouth*; (b) the mark (´) over the second syllable from the end, or penult, is the *acute accent*, indicating where the vocal stress is to be laid;<sup>1</sup> (c) ending *ou* indicates gen. sing.

2. καὶ, and: (a) one vowel sound, = *ai* in *aisle*; (b) the mark (˘) drawn from left to right is called the *grave accent*, indicating an absence of vocal stress.

3. Παρυσάτιδος of Parýsatis: (a) five vowel sounds: *a* = *a* in *art*, *v* = *y*, made by placing the lips for *oo* in *moot* and sounding *ee* in *thee* (like the Germ. *ü*), *i* = *i* in *pit*, *o* = *o* in *obey*; (b) two characters, *σ* and *ς* for *s*, the latter being used at the end of the word; (c) end. *os* indicates gen. sing.; cf. also *ou* in Δᾶρείου.

4. γίνονται, (they) are born; for γι-γέν-ονται cf. *gen-esis*, birth, creation: (a) *γ* = *g* in *give*; (b) *ντ* indicates 3d plur., *they*; cf. Lat. *incolu-nt*; (c) *νται* indicates 3d plur. pass., cf. *nascu-ntur*.

5. παῖδες, boys; cf. Eng. *ped-agogue*: (a) two vowel sounds: *ai* = *ai* in *aisle*, *ε* = *e* in *met*; *εσ* = *es* in *yes*, never *ez*; (b) the accent (´) over the penult is called *circumflex*, practically the same as the acute so far as concerns pronunciation; (c) cf. Δᾶρείου and note that either the acute or the circumflex accent may stand over the penult; and that when a diphthong is accented, the mark is over the second vowel; (d) end. *εσ* indicates nom. plur., cf. Lat. *honor-es*, Eng. *box-es*.

6. δύο, two; Lat. *duo*.

7. πρεσβύτερος, elder; cf. *presbyter*, *presbyterian*: (a) end. *ος* (Lat. *us* as in *servus*) indicates nom. sing. masc.; but note different use of the

<sup>1</sup> In reality the acute accent indicated a higher pitch of the voice. The matter of accent is, however, no more important than that of quantity; the pupil should never fail to give to long vowels and diphthongs their full, complete value.

same end. in Παρυσάτιδος (3 c); (b) cf. place of accent in this and the preceding words, and note that the accent does not go before the third syllable from the end, or *antepenult*.

8. μὲν, on the one hand, indeed: followed immediately by another word, hence μὲν, not μέν; cf. καὶ (2 b).

9. Ἀρταξέρξης, Artaxerxes: (a) ξ = *x* in *exert*, *ks* in *barks*; (b) η = *ey* in *prey*; (c) two *e* characters: ε = *e* in *met*, η = *ey* in *prey*; (d) end. ης indicates nom. sing. mas., cf. similar use of *ος* in πρεσβύτερος (7 a).

10. νεώτερος, younger: (a) one new vowel: ω, = *o* in *prone*; (b) two *o* characters, — *o* = *o* in *obey*, ω = *o* in *prone*; cf. Παρυσάτιδος, γίνονται, πρεσβύτερος; (c) note that the accent over the antepenult is the acute; (d) *ος* indicates nom. sing. mas., cf. πρεσβύτερος (7 a).

11. δὲ, on the other hand, but: (a) in contrast with μέν, indeed; (b) why δὲ and not δέ? see 8.

12. Κύρος, Cyrus: the accent over the penult is circumflex, cf. παῖδες (5 b); note that in these two words the circumflex stands over a full vowel sound (a long vowel or a diphthong).

## 3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The vowels in this lesson are: Α *a*, ε, η, ι, ο, υ, ω; the diphthongs: αι, ει, ου.

2. The consonants are: β, γ, Δ δ, Κ κ, μ, ν, ξ, Π π, ρ, σ ς, τ.

3. To be carefully distinguished are ε and η, ο and ω.

4. σ stands for the *s*-sound except at the end of words.

5. The three kinds of accent are, acute, grave, and circumflex.

6. The acute stands over one of the last three syllables.

7. The acute or circumflex may stand over the penult.

8. The circumflex stands only over long vowels or diphthongs; while the acute stands over short and long.

9. καί, μέν, δέ become καὶ, μὲν, δὲ (grave accent) when words immediately follow in the same clause.

10. -ου indicates gen. sing., so also -ος in some nouns (like *is* in Lat. *honor-is*, of honor); but -ος also indicates nom. sing. (like *us* in Lat. *servus*, a slave).

11. Ending -εσ indicates nom. plural.

12. In Greek, as in Latin, there are different declensions, and the same ending may have different uses.

13. μέν . . . δέ indicate a contrast; they do not stand first in their clauses.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. γίνονται, they are born.    | 6. μὲν, indeed, on the one hand. |
| 2. γίγνεται, he is born.       | 7. νεώτερος, younger.            |
| 3. δύο, two.                   | 8. παῖδες, boys.                 |
| 4. δέ, but, on the other hand. | 9. πρεσβύτερος, older.           |
| 5. καί, and.                   |                                  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) <sup>1</sup>Καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης γίγνεται. (b) Δύο δὲ παῖδες γίνονται. (c) Κῦρος μὲν Παρυσάτιδος γίγνεται. (d) Γίνονται δὲ παῖδες Παρυσάτιδος καὶ Δαρείου. (e) Γίγνεται δέ. (f) Γίνονται δὲ παῖδες δύο.
2. Translate: (a) He is born. (b) Artaxerxes indeed is born. (c) But Artaxerxes and Cyrus are born of Darius and Parysatis. (d) Cyrus indeed [was] younger, Artaxerxes, however, [was] older. (e) And two boys are born.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Endings -ov, -os, -es. 2. Place of the accent for diphthongs. 3. Use of grave accent for the acute. 4. End. -vτ, -vται. 5. Sound of vowel υ. 6. Long and short ε and ο sounds. 7. Uses of ς and σ. 8. Use of μὲν and δέ. 9. Accent of the antepenult, of the penult. 10. Length of vowel over which the circumflex stands.

## LESSON II.

## ANABASIS I. I. 1.

## 1. TEXT.

[In the study of the "text" and "notes," follow closely the directions given with Lesson I.]

ἐ-πεὶ δὲ ἡ-σθέ-νει Δαρείου καὶ ὑ-πό-πτει-ε  
 e-peî de ē-sthe-nei Dāreios kai hy-pōp-teu-e  
 When however was-sick Darius and was-suspecting

<sup>1</sup> Be prepared to pronounce these Greek exercises in the class room. This direction applies to subsequent exercises also.

τε-λευ-τήν τοῦ βί-ου, ἐ-βού-λε-το τὸ παῖ-δε  
 te-leu-tēn tou bi-ou, e-bou-le-to tō pai-de  
 an-end of-the (of)-life, he-was-wishing the-two two-boys

ἀμ-φο-τέ-ρω παρ-εῖ-ναι.  
 am-pho-te-rō par-ei-nai.  
 both to-be-present.

Note that the quantities of ε, η, ο, ω, are no longer indicated.

## 2. NOTES.

1. ἐπεὶ, when: (a) becomes ἐπεὶ when followed immediately by another word; (b) εἰ = i in pine, cf. Δαρείου I. <sup>1</sup> N. 1.
2. δέ, but: cf. μὲν, δέ I. N. 8, 11; note that these words do not stand first in their clauses. Cf. Lat. cum autem, but when.
3. Δαρείου, Darius: (a) end. -os indicates nom. sing., cf. us in Lat. servus; (b) -s is case end. nom., σ- being the stem end.; in Greek as in Latin, nouns whose stem ends in ο belong to the ο, or 2d, declens.; (c) cf. Δαρείου, παῖδες I. N. 1 and 5; note, when the penult has the circumflex accent, the ultima is short.
4. ἡσθένει, (he) was sick: (a) θ = th in thin; (b) from ἄσθενέ-ω, I am sick; (c) initial ἄ has been lengthened or augmented to η, ē; (d) this augment of a short initial vowel to a long one increases the time of pronouncing it; such augment is called a temporal augment; (e) -ει is a contraction of ε-ε.
5. ὑπόπτει-ε, he was suspecting: (a) the apostrophe mark turning to the right is written with an initial vowel to indicate that it is pronounced with an introductory h sound; it is called the rough breathing; turning to the left, it indicates that the vowel is not thus pronounced, and is called the smooth breathing, cf. ἐπεὶ, ἡσθένει; (b) ευ = eu in feud; (c) from ὑποπτέ-ω, I suspect; (d) ὑπ shortened from ὑπό, hypo, is a prepositional prefix; cf. sub in suspicio, I look under, suspect; (e) ο has been augmented to ω; this augment of a short initial vowel to a long one increases the time of pronouncing it, and is called temporal augment, cf. η in ἡσθένει (4 c, d); (f) -ε indicates 3d sing.; cf. εἰ in ἡσθένει (= ε-ε).

<sup>1</sup> This and similar references are to preceding Lessons.

6. *τελευτή-ν*, *end*: (a) nom. *τελευτή*; (b) *-η* is here the stem end., just as *ο* in *Δᾶρείος*, *Δᾶρείου*; (c) as nouns whose stem ends in *ο* belong to the *ο*, or 2d, decl. in both Greek and Latin, so those whose stem ends in *η* (in Lat. *α*) belong to the *α*, or 1st, decl.; (d) end. *-ν* indicates acc. sing., cf. *-m* in Lat. *mensa-m*.

7. *τοῖ*, of *the*: (a) the end. *-ον* as in *Δαρείου* indicates gen. sing.; (b) in *-ον* note stem end. *ο*, which indicates 2d decl.

8. *βίον*, of *life*; cf. *bio-logy*, *bio-graphy*: (a) ending *-ον* indicates gen. sing. 2d decl., cf. *τοῦ*, *Δαρείου*; (b) gen. *Δαρείου*, nom. *Δαρείος*; gen. *βίου*, nom. *βίος*.

9. *ἐ-βούλ-ετο*, *he was wishing*: (a) from *βούλ-ομαι*, *I wish*; Lat. *vol-o*; (b) the syllable *ε-* is an augment; since it makes an additional syllable it is called the *syllabic augment*, cf. *ἡσθένει*, *ὑπόπτει*; note that the augment indicates past time; (c) end. *-ετο*<sup>1</sup> indicates 3d sing. passive, cf. active end. *-ε* in *ὑπόπτει-ε*, *ἡσθένει*.

10. *τώ*, *the two*: this form of the art., indicating *two*, is dual; cf. singular, plural.

11. *παῖδε*, *two boys*: (a) end. *-ε* also indicates dual number; (b) cf. *Δᾶρείου*, *παῖδες*, *Κῦρος*, *Δᾶρείος*; note, when the penult has the circumflex accent the ultima is short, cf. 3 c.

12. *ἀμφοτέρω*, *both*; Lat. *ambo*: end. *ω* indicates dual number. cf. *τά*, *παῖδε*.

13. *παρ-εῖναι*, *to be present*: (a) *παρ*, for *παρί*, prepos. prefix, *by the side of*, *present*; cf. *par-allel*; (b) accent circumflex over the penult, cf. *παῖδε* (11 b); as regards accent the final *αι* is treated as short.

### 3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Two new consonants, *θ* and *λ*; new diphthong, *ευ*.
2. A breathing is placed over every initial vowel or diphthong.
3. The Greek has two breathings, called rough and smooth.
4. The Greek has a definite article, but no indefinite article.
5. The augment indicates past time; there are two kinds, temporal and syllabic.
6. Endings *-ε* (active) and *-ετο* (passive) indicate 3d sing. past time.

<sup>1</sup> This passive ending does not make the meaning of *βούλομαι* passive; the subject of deponents is reserved for a later lesson.

7. With verbs having prepositional prefix, the augment comes between prefix and verb.

8. The Greek has a dual number.

9. Ending *-ν* indicates accus. sing.

10. Final *-αι* treated as short so far as regards accent.

11. When the penult has the circumflex accent, the ultima is short.

12. *ε-ε* contracts to *ει*.

✓ 13. *μέν* and *δέ* do not stand first in their clauses.

### 4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Breathings .	H. 17.	G. 4.
2. Accent <sup>1</sup> .	H. 96 and a, 99, 100 a and b, 102, a, 108.	G. 21, 22 n. 1, 23.
3. Augment .	H. 354, 355, 356, 360.	G. 99 a and b, 100, 105.
4. Number .	H. 123.	G. 33.

### 5. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀμφοτέρω, both.	8. παρ-εῖναι, to be present.
2. ἀσθενέ-ω, I am sick.	9. τελευτή, end.
3. βίος, life.	10. τοῦ, of the (masc. sing.).
4. βούλ-ομαι, I wish.	11. τώ, the two.
5. ἐπεῖ, when.	12. ὑπό, under.
6. παῖδ-ε, two boys.	13. ὑπ-οπτεύω, I suspect.
7. παρὰ, beside.	14. ποιέ-ω, I make.

### PRESENT.

βούλομαι, <sup>2</sup> I wish.	βούλεται, he wishes.	βούλονται, they wish.
γίγνομαι, I am born.	γίγνεται, he is born.	γίγνονται, they are born.

<sup>1</sup> The pupil meeting the word *oxytone* in the grammar will understand by it *accented acute on the last syllable*.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that this word, though passive in form, is *active* in signification.

## IMPERFECT.

ἐβούλετο, he was wishing.	ἐβούλοντο, they were wishing.
ἐγίγνετο, he was born.	ἐγίγοντο, they were born.

## 6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγοντο παῖδες δύο. (b) Τελευτήν τοῦ βίου βούλομαι. (c) Βίου τελευτή. (d) Παρεῖναι τῶν παίδε ἐβούλετο. (e) Καὶ ἡσθένει Ἄρταξέρξης. (f) Γίγνομαι δὲ Δαρείου. (g) Ὑποπτεύω τελευτήν τοῦ βίου Κύρου. (h) Ἐβούλετο, ὑπόπτευε, ἡσθένει, ἐποίει. (Explain each augment and personal ending.)

2. Translate: (a) But when they wished to be present, Darius was sick. (b) And Darius suspected [the] end of his (= of the) life to be near (= present). (c) I wish the two boys to be present. (d) Cyrus indeed is born of Parysatis. (e) But when I suspect an end of life, I wish my two (= the-two) boys (= two-boys) to be present.

## 7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Place of the augment. 2. The augment and prepositional prefix. 3. Terms *augment*, *syllabic augment*, *temporal augment*. 4. Number. 5. Augment of *a, o*. 6. Contraction of *ε-ε*. 7. Noun endings *-ος, -υ, -ου, -ω, -ε*. 8. The marks ' and '. 9. The verb endings *-ομαι, -εται, -ονται, -ετο, -οντο, -ε*; which belong to the present tense? 10. Position of *μέν* and *δέ*. 11. Meaning of *oxytone*.

## LESSON III.

## ANABASIS I. I. 2.

## 1. TEXT.

[Easy words are no longer divided into syllables.]

ὁ	μέν	οὖν	πρεσβύτερος	παρῶν
ho	men	oun	presbyteros	parōn
The	on-the-one-hand	now	elder	being-present

ἐ-τύγ-χα-νε· Κῦρον δὲ με-τᾶ-πέμ-πε-ται ἀπὸ τῆς  
e-tyng-cha-ne· Cyron de me-ta-pem-pe-tai apo tēs  
happened; Cyrus however he-sends-after from the

ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σά-τρά-πην ἐ-ποίη-σε.  
archēs hēs auton sa-tra-pēn e-poiē-se.  
government of-which him satrap he-(had)-made.

## 2. NOTES.

1. *ὁ*, *ho*, *the*: (a) the article, nom. sing. masc.; what is the genitive? (b) *ὁ* has no accent; it is read as if part of the following word.

2. *μέν*, *indeed*, *on the one hand*: cf. πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἄρτ. I.; μὲν stands second in its clause or sentence; cf. *δέ* II.

3. *οὖν*, *accordingly*, *now* (logical, not temporal): the circumflex accent stands over the breathing when they are written together; on accented diphthongs, cf. *παῖδες* I. N. 5.

4. *πρεσβύτερος*: accent on the antepenult, cf. Πανσάτιδος, νεώτερος, ὑπόπτευε, ἐβούλετο; when the acute accent stands over the antepenult, the final syllable is short.

5. *παρ-ών*, *being present*: (a) *παρ* for *παρά*, prepositional prefix, *by the side of*; cf. *παρ-εἶναι* II. N. 13; (b) *ών*, participle, *being*: cf. *εἶναι* in *παρ-εἶναι*, *to be present*.

6. *ἐ-τύγχαν-ε*, *(he) happened*: (a) from *τυγχάν-ω*, *I happen*; (b) *έ-*, syllabic augment; cf. *ἐβούλετο*, *ἡσθένει* II. N. 9; (c) *χ* = *ch* in Scotch *loch*, *γχ* = *nch* in *anchor*; (d) final *-ε* indicates 3d sing., past tense; cf. *ὑπόπτευε*, *ἡσθένει* II. N. 5; (e) the English is "happened to be present," the Greek, "happened being present."

7. *Κῦρον*, *Cyrus*: end. *-ον* indicates accus. sing. 2d declension, cf. *um* in Lat. *servum*; gen. and acc. sing. of *βίος*!

8. *μετα-πέμπ-εται*, *he sends after*:<sup>1</sup> (a) from *πέμπω*, *I send*, with prepositional prefix *μετά*, *after*; (b) on the accent, cf. *πρεσβύτερος* 4, and *παρεῖναι* II. N. 13 b.

<sup>1</sup> *He sends* would really be *πέμπ-ει*, not *πέμπ-εται*; but the ending *-εται*, though a passive ending, may represent the actor as acting for his own benefit; thus, *πέμπεται*, *he is sent*, or *he sends for his own sake or benefit*. This latter use is technically called the *Middle Voice*.

9. ἀπό, from, away from; cf. Lat. ab: (a) may be used as a prepositional prefix; thus, ἀπ-ών, being away (absent); (b) what would ἀπ-εἶναι, ἀποπέμπω mean?

10. τῆς, of the: (a) -ης indicates fem. gen. sing. 1st declension; (b) cf. -ου, which indicates gen. sing. 2d declension.

11. ἀρχῆς, of [the] province, government; cf. Eng. an-archy, non-archy: (a) nom. ἀρχή, cf. τελευτήν II. N. 6; (b) genitive governed by, or following ἀπό; (c) cf. -ης in τῆς 10.

12. ἧς, of which: (a) fem. gen. sing., cf. τῆς, ἀρχῆς; (b) corresponding masculine form is οἷ, cf. τοῦ, Δαρείου.

13. αὐτόν, him: (a) -ον indicates masc. sing. acc. 2d declension, cf. Κύρον 7.

14. σατράπην, satrap:<sup>1</sup> acc. sing.; cf. τελευτήν, 1st declension, βίου, 2d declension; the acc. sing. 1st and 2d declensions ends in ν. Cf. Lat. mensa-m, servu-m.

15. ἐποίησ-ε, he made, had made: (a) οι = οἰ in oil; (b) from ποιέ-ω, I make, cf. English poet; (c) note the augment, the ending -ε, the verb stem ποιε, and that σ has been inserted after the stem, the ε of which has at the same time been lengthened to η; (d) this σ (representing -σα-), when added to a simple verb stem, forms a new stem, called First Aorist, and denotes past time.

### 3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The new consonants χ, γχ; the diphthong οι.
2. The circumflex accent stands over the breathing when they are written together.
3. The article and relative are declined: e. g. ὁ, τοῦ, τῆς; οὗ, ἧς.
4. Nouns whose stem ends in α (nom. η) are feminine; those whose stem ends in ο (nom. ος) are masculine.
5. -η, -ης, -ην are endings of 1st declension; -ος, -ου, -ον are endings of 2d declension.
6. The participle with τυγχάνω has the force of an English infinitive.
7. Many prepositions, e. g. ἀπό, μετά, παρά, ὑπό, are found prefixed to verbal forms.
8. Besides the imperfect, there is an aorist which denotes past time.
9. ε of ποιέω becomes η before σ of the aorist.

<sup>1</sup> A kind of lord-lieutenant who represented the interests of the Persian monarch in his dependent provinces.

10. The acute accent stands over the antepenult only when the ultima is short.

11. μέν and δέ do not stand first in their clauses or sentences.

12. οὖν does not stand first in its clause or sentence.

### 4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Gamma nasal . . . . .	II. 20.	G. 6, 1.
2. Accent . . . . .	II. 99, 100, 108.	G. 21, 22, 23.
3. Declension . . . . .	II. 131, 132, 134.	G. 34, 35.
4. The Article . . . . .	II. 270, 272.	G. 78 (read).
5. Adjective and Relative Agreement . . . . .	II. 620, 627.	G. 138, 151.
6. Compound Verbs . . . . .	II. 580.	G. 131, 3.
7. Imperf. and Aor. Tenses . . . . .	II. 829, 836, 837.	G. 200 and N. 5.

### 5. VOCABULARY. A.

1. ἀπό, from.	9. ὁ, the (nom. masc. sing.).
2. ἀρχή, government.	10. οὖν, accordingly.
3. αὐτόν, him.	11. παρά, by the side of.
4. ἧς, of which (fem. sing.).	12. παρών, being present.
5. μετά, after.	13. σατράπης, satrap.
6. πέμπω, I send.	14. τῆς, of the (fem. sing.).
7. μεταπέμπομαι, I send after.	15. τοῦ, of the (masc. sing.).
8. οἷ, of which (masc. sing.).	16. τυγχάνω, I happen.

### VOCABULARY. B.

#### MASCULINE SINGULAR. — SECOND DECLENSION.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.
ὁ, the.	τοῦ, of the.	τόν, the.
Δαρείος, Darius.	Δαρείου, of Darius.	Δαρείον, Darius.
πρεσβύτερος, elder.	πρεσβυτέρου, of an elder.	πρεσβύτερον, elder.
νεώτερος, younger.	νεωτέρου, of a younger.	νεώτερον, younger.
βίος, life.	βίου, of life.	βίον, life.
Κύρος, Cyrus.	Κύρου, of Cyrus.	Κύρον, Cyrus.
αὐτός, he himself.	αὐτοῦ, of him, his.	αὐτόν, him.

## 6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Τυχάνω ὦν. (b) Τυχάνω οὐν παρών. (c) Ἐτύχανε δὲ ἀπὼν. (d) Βούλομαι αὐτὸν σατράπην εἶναι. (e) Αὐτὸς<sup>1</sup> δὲ ἐβούλετο τὸν νεώτερον παρῆναι. (f) Καὶ ἐβούλοντο ἀπεῖναι Δαρεῖον, οὗ γίγνεται Κῦρος. (g) Ὁ σατράπης τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐποίει τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου τοῦ νεωτέρου Κύρου.

2. Translate: (a) Being. (b) Being absent. (c) To be present. (d) To be. (e) But I happen to be absent. (f) The two boys accordingly were wishing to be absent. (g) Darius on the one hand sent after Artaxerxes. (h) He himself (αὐτός) on the other hand happened to be (= being) absent. (i) And Cyrus indeed wished to be older. (j) But Cyrus happened to be satrap of the government, from which Darius sent-after him.

## 7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Analysis<sup>2</sup> of ἐποίει, of ἐποίησε. 2. Participle with τυχάνω. 3. Position of μέν and δέ. 4. Nom., gen., acc., sing. endings 1st and 2d declensions. 5. Augment in compound verbs. 6. Accent of antepenult; of penult. 7. Gender of stems in -a, in -o. 8. Formation of aorist. 9. ε- before -σ of the aorist. 10. Difference between signification of aorist and imperfect tenses. 11. Pronunciation of χ, γχ. 12. Meaning of the augment; tenses which have it.

## LESSON IV.

## ANABASIS I. I. 2.

## 1. TEXT.

[Only the more difficult words will be divided into syllables or transliterated.]

καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων,  
stratēgon a-pe-dei-xe  
also general and him he-(had)-appointed of-all,

<sup>1</sup> αὐτός (in nom.) does not mean *he*, but *he himself*, Lat. *ipse*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the distinguishing of the various elements of which each word is made up.

ὄσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται.  
hosoi Cas-tō-lou ath-roi-zon-tai.  
as-many-as into Castolus's plain assemble-themselves.

## 2. NOTES.

1. καί, *and, also*: cf. Lat. *et, and, also*; like *et*, καί most frequently means *and*.

2. στρατηγόν, *general*; cf. Eng. *strat-egy*: nominative, genitive, gender, declension? It is here one of the objects of ἀπέδειξε, *he appointed him (αὐτόν) general, etc.*

3. δέ, *and*: cf. νεώτερος δέ I., ἐπεὶ δέ II.; note, δέ may be connective as well as adverbative.

4. ἀπέδειξε, *he appointed*: (a) from ἀπο-δείκ-νυμι; (b) ἀπ for ἀπό, cf. ἀπ-ών III. n. 9; (c) ξ not only pronounced like *ks*, but actually made up of κ and σ, cf. Lat. *vox = voc-s*; note therefore ἀπέδειξε = ἀπέδεικσε; (d) σ in ξ indicates the aorist, cf. ἐποίησε III. n. 15 d; (e) ε before δ as in ἐβούλετο II. n. 9; ε after ξ as in ἰπώπτει II. n. 5 f.

5. πάντων, *of all*; cf. Eng. *panto-mime*: end. -ων indicates gen. plur.

6. ὄσοι, *quantif, as many as, who*: (a) end. -οι indicates nom. plur. masc. 2d declension, cf. I in Lat. *serv-ī*; meaning of πρεσβύτεροι, πρεσβυτέρων? (b) the acute accent stands after the breathing when written over the same vowel, cf. however οὐν III. n. 3.

7. εἰς, *into*: εἰς has no accent, and is read as if part of the following word, cf. ὁ III. n. 1 b; such words are called *proclitics*.

8. πεδίον, *plain*; acc. sing.: (a) nom. πεδίον, neut.; if masc., it would have been πεδῖος; (b) -ον, like -um in Lat. *regnum*, indicates neuter nom., acc., voc., sing., 2d declension.

9. ἀθροίζονται, *they collect themselves*: (a) ξ = z, or ds in *avoids*, not z in *azure*; (b) from ἀθροίζω, *I collect*; (c) -ντ- indicates 3d plur., as in γίγνεται I. n. 4; (d) -νται is a significant ending; cf. γίγνεται, *they are born*, βούλονται, *they wish (for themselves)*, ἀθροίζονται, *they collect themselves*. In the first the subject is acted upon, in the second and third it acts for or upon itself (reflexive); (e) the Greek has, besides the active and passive voices, also a reflexive, called *Middle*, cf. μεταπέμπεται III. n. 8.



## 3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. One new consonant, — ζ, = *ds* in *avoids*. ξ in ἀπέδειξε is a double consonant.
2. καί and δέ have each two different significations.
3. Verbs meaning "to appoint" govern two accusatives.
4. The circumflex accent stands over the breathing, the acute behind it, when accent and breathing fall together.
5. -οι, -ων indicate respectively the nom. and gen. plur. masc. 2d declension.
6. -ον indicates nom., acc., voc., sing. neuter, 2d declension.
7. The Greek verb has three voices, — active, passive, middle.

## 4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |                            |                 |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Final -αι, -οι . . . . .                     | H. 102, α.                 | G. 22, N. 1.    |
| 2. Decl. of ἄνθρωπος, δῶρον . . . . .           | H. 153.                    | G. 42.          |
| 3. The double consonant ξ . . . . .             | H. 26.                     | G. 5, 2.        |
| 4. Formation of the first aorist stem . . . . . | H. 428.                    | G. 110, III. 1. |
| 5. Voices . . . . .                             | H. 298 and α; G. 88, 1, 2. | 811-13.         |
| 6. Verbs with two accusatives . . . . .         | H. 726.                    | G. 166.         |

## 5. VOCABULARY.

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ἀθροίζω, I collect.        | 5. πᾶς (gen. plur. πάντων), all. |
| 2. ἀπο-δείκνυμι, I appoint.   | 6. πεδῖον, plain.                |
| 3. εἰς, with acc., into.      | 7. στρατηγός, general.           |
| 4. ὅσος, quantus, as many as. |                                  |

## 6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Βούλεται τελευτῆν πάντων, ὅσοι γίνονται. (b) Ἀποδείκνυμι αὐτὸν πάντων σατράπην. (c) Ἀρταξέρξης ὁ πρεσβύτερος, ἀπὸν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, βούλεται Κῦρον στρατηγὸν εἶναι. (d) Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν σατράπης ὡν ἐτύγχανε. (e) Παρύσατις, ἧς ὁ Κῦρος ἐγένετο, ἐποίησε αὐτὸν στρατηγὸν τῆς ἀρχῆς. (f) Αὐτὸς ἐτύγχανε παρῶν. (g) Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐτύγχανε σατράπης ὧν, ὁ στρατηγὸς τελευτῆν τοῦ βίου ἐποίησε. (h) Τυγχάνω πρεσβύτερος ὧν. (i) Βούλομαι δὲ νεώτερος εἶναι. (j) Μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κῦρον ἀπὸ τοῦ πεδίου.

2. Translate: (a) He was sending him into Castolus's plain. (b) He was sending after him. (c) I wish in truth (that) the satrap be present. (d) The general indeed happened to be absent. (e) But I happen to be the general of all who assemble themselves. (f) From the government of which he happened to be satrap and general. (g) But when the younger suspected an end of his life. (h) I appoint him general of all who wish to be present. (i) And Darius (ὁ Δαρ.) happened to be absent; happened to be general. (j) They sent after Cyrus the satrap.

## 7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The aorist tense. 2. The middle voice. 3. Translation and analysis of ἐποιεῖτο. 4. The letters ξ and ζ. 5. The participle with τυγχάνω. 6. Analysis of μετεπέμπετο. 7. Endings in the 2d declension. 8. Endings -οι, -ων. 9. Meanings of καί and δέ. 10. Neuter nouns of the 2d declension. 11. Verbs which take two accusatives. 12. Prepositions meaning *from, into, by the side of, after, up*.

## LESSON V.

## ANABASIS I. 1. 2.

## 1. TEXT.

ἀνᾶ-βαί-νει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τις-σα-  
ana-bai-nei Tis-sa-  
(he)-goes-up accordingly — Cyrus taking Tissa-

φέρ-νην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλ-λή-νων δὲ ἔ-χων  
pher-nēn hōs philon, tōn Hel-lē-nōn e-chōn  
phernes as a-friend, also of-the Greeks and having

ὀπ-λί-τᾶς ἄν-έβη τρι-ᾶ-κο-σί-ους, ἄρ-χον-τα  
hop-li-tas an-ebē tri-a-ko-si-ous, ar-chon-ta  
heavy-armed-soldiers he-went-up three-hundred, commander

δὲ αὐτῶν Ξε-νί-αν Παρ-ρά-σι-ον.  
Xe-ni-an  
and of-them Xenias a-Parrasian.

## 2. NOTES.

1. ἀνα-βαίνει, he goes up: (a) from ἀνα-βαίω, I go up; hence *Anabasis*, the going or marching up to Babylon; (b) ἀνά, up, prepositional prefix; "he goes away" would be ἀπο-βαίνει; (c) end. -ει indicates pres. ind. act. 3d sing.; (d) cf. γίνονται I. N. 4, μεταπέμπεται III. N. 8; note, the pres. tense may denote a time actually or historically past; as such it is called the *historical present*.

2. λαβών, taking<sup>1</sup>: (a) from λαμβάνω, I take; (b) end. -ων indicates participle, masc. sing. nom.; cf. παρών III. N. 5; (c) λαμβάν-ων, pres. part., also = taking, i. e. as a continued action; λαβών, taking, i. e. as an act simply brought to pass; (d) meaning of ὑποπεύων, ἀναβαίνων, ἀποβαίνων? (e) cf. use of -ων in πάντων IV. N. 5.

3. Τισσαφέρην, nom. Τισσαφέρης; on -ν cf. τελευτήν II. N. 6, Κύρον III. N. 7, σατράπην III. N. 14.

4. ὡς φίλον, as a friend; cf. Eng. *phil-anthropy*: (a) ὡς, no accent, cf. ὁ III., εἰς IV.; all pronounced with foll. word and called *proclitics*.

5. τῶν Ἑλλήνων, of the Greeks: on the end. -ων cf. πάντων IV. N. 5.

6. ἔχων, having: (a) from ἔχω, I have; (b) use here of end. -ων? Another use of same end.?

7. ὀπλίτας, heavy-armed soldiers; cf. Eng. *pan-opley*, full armor: (a) nom. sing. ὀπλίτης, accus. sing. ὀπλίτην; cf. σατράπης, σατράπην III. N. 14; (b) end. -ās indicates accus. plur. 1st decl.; cf. Lat. *mens-ās*; (c) cf. Ἀρταξέρξης, σατράπης, ὀπλίτης; masc. nouns 1st decl. end in -ης, nom. sing.

8. ἀν-έ-βη, he went up: (a) on ἀν- and -ε- cf. ἀπ-έ-δειξε IV. N. 4; (b) Greek for "he goes up"?

9. τριακοσίους, three hundred: (a) end. -ους (= ōs in Lat. *servōs*) indicates masc. plur. accus. 2d decl.

10. Ξενίαν, nom. Ξενίας: (a) Ξ, capital ξ, = ks in barks; (b) on the ending -ν cf. 3.

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should not be allowed to fall into the habit of rendering aorist participles by the Eng. "having" with a past partic., e. g. "having taken," "having come," etc.

11. ἄρχοντ-α, commander, governor; cf. ἀρχή, government: (a) nom. sing. ἄρχ-ων, partic. from ἄρχ-ω, formed as ἔχων from ἔχω; used here as noun; (b) -ντ-, partic. suffix; cf. Lat. *ama-nt-em*; (c) -α, ending accus. sing. 3d decl.

12. αὐτ-ῶν, of them: (a) on the ending cf. πάντων IV. N. 5.

## 3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Two new characters: Ξ, and φ (= ph in *hyphen*).

2. Unaccented words read as a part of the following word are called *proclitics*.

3. -ν is the ending of accus. sing. 1st and 2d decl.; -ās ending of accus. plur. 1st decl.; -ους ending of accus. plur. 2d decl.; -α ending of accus. sing. 3d decl.

4. Ending -ων indicates gen. plur.; also the nom. sing. masc. of participles like λαβών, ἔχων.

5. Masculine nouns, 1st decl., end in -ης or -ās nom. sing.

6. Ending -ει indicates pres. ind. act. 3d sing., as in ἀναβαίνει.

7. -ντ- is a participial suffix.

8. The accent, when it falls on the genitive endings -ης, -ου, -ων, is circumflex: ἀρχῆς, τοῦ, αὐτῶν.

9. Appositives (e. g. φίλον, ἄρχοντα) agree in case with their substantives.

10. The present tense may be used to denote an event actually past.

## 4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Proclitics . . . . .	II. 111.	G. 29.
2. Accent of nouns . . . . .	II. 128, 129.	G. 25, 1 and 2.
3. Noun stems . . . . .	II. 130.	G. 32, 2.
4. Declension of χώρᾱ, τῆμῆ . . . . .	H. 135.	G. 37.
5. Special rule of accent 1st decl. . . . .	H. 141.	G. 39, 4.
6. Appositives . . . . .	II. 623.	G. 137.
7. Tenses . . . . .	H. 821-24, 828.	G. 200 and N. 1 and 5.

## 5. VOCABULARY.

- |                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ἀναβαίνω, I go up. | 6. λαμβάνω, I take.              |
| 2. ἀνέβη, he went up. | 7. ὀπλίτης, heavy-armed soldier. |
| 3. ἄρχων, commander.  | 8. τριακόσιοι, three hundred.    |
| 4. Ἕλληνες, Greeks.   | 9. φίλος, a friend.              |
| 5. ἔχω, I have.       | 10. ὡς, as.                      |

## 6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὡς δὲ τυγχάνω ἀναβαίνων. (b) Ὁ ἄρχων λαμβάνει φίλους τριακοσίων. (c) Καὶ Κῦρον δὲ ὑπόπτειε ὡς ἔχοντα ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων. (d) Ἐγίνοντο δύο παῖδες. (e) Ὅσοι στρατηγοὶ εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίου ἰθροίζοντο, βούλονται τὸν Κῦρον ἄρχοντα εἶναι. (f) Ἐλάμβανε αὐτὸν ὡς ὀπλίτην. (g) Ὁ Κῦρος ἀνέβη, ὑποπτέων τελευτῆν τοῦ Δαρείου. (h) Ἀποδείκνυμι αὐτὸν σατράπην τῶν ἀρχῶν. (i) Ὁ φίλος τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀπὼν ἐτύχανε. (j) Μεταπέμπεται τοὺς φίλους τῶν ἀρχόντων.

2. Translate: (a) But when he went up, he was taking Xenias as a friend. (b) Xenias the Parrasian happens to be (= being) commander of 300 hoplites. (c) The government of which Tissaphernes was wishing to be satrap. (d) I wish the boys both to be absent. (e) They sent him away. (f) But when Tissaphernes desires Xenias the Parrasian to be absent, I suspect him. (g) Taking 300 friends and Xenias as commander of them, he went up into Castolus's plain. (h) But I have friends and generals as commanders. (i) Having Artaxerxes as the older satrap. (j) He appointed Cyrus as commander.

## 7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- The verbal endings -ω, -ει, -ομαι, -εται, -οινο, -ονται, -ετο.
- Partic. suffix.
- Analysis of ἄρχοντα.
- Use of the augment.
- Formation of the 1st aorist.
- Signification of the aorist tense.
- Accent of end. -ων 1st decl.
- Quantity of final -αι, -οι as regards accent.
- Quantity of -ας accus. plur. 1st decl.
- Difference between λαβῶν and λαμβάνων.
- The suffix ιτ.
- Appositives.
- Endings -ν, -ους, -ος, -ης, -ες, -οι.

## LESSON VI.

## ANABASIS I. I. 3, to ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.

For text and translation the pupil is referred to pp. 228, 279. The dividing of words into syllables will be discontinued from this point; such division as is continued hereafter will have for its object not to teach the pupil the syllables of which a word is composed, but the formative elements out of which it has grown. The marking of quantity will be continued only in the case of  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{i}$ , and  $\bar{u}$ .  $\eta$  and  $\omega$  are long by nature, and  $\epsilon$  and  $o$  are short. When a vowel has the circumflex accent it is always long.

## 1. NOTES.

1. ἐ-τελεύτη-σ-ε, he ended; cf. τελευτή II.: (a) from τελευτά-ω; (b) on the form cf. ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε III.; (c) note that  $a$ , like  $\epsilon$ , is lengthened to  $\eta$  before  $\sigma$  of the 1st aorist.

2. κατ-έ-στη, he took his stand (down), was established (as king): (a) from ἴστη-μι, Lat. sisto; both developed from the simple form or theme στα: (b) κατ (for κατά, cf. ὑπ in ὑπόπτειε II.), prepositional prefix = down; cf. Eng. cata-ract; (c) κατά + ἴστημι becomes καθ-ἴστημι; note change of  $\tau$  to  $\theta$  before the rough breathing; (d) cf. λαβῶν V., ἀνέβη V., κατέστη, all indicating past time, and in usage equivalent to aorists with the suffix σα (cf. ἐποίη-σ-ε); they however differ in form, and for convenience are called Second Aorists.

3. εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, into the kingdom; was established into the kingdom = he became king; (a) εἰς with acc. case, cf. εἰς πεδίου IV.; (b) βασιλείαν, nom. βασιλείᾱ, declined like χώρᾱ.

4. δια-βάλλ-ει, he slanders; cf. Eng. diabol-ical: (a) on the tense cf. ἀναβαίνει V. N. 1 c. d; (b) διά, through, prepositional prefix.

5. ἀδελφόν, brother; cf. Phil-adelph-ia, brotherly love; why not ἀδελφόν in the text?

6. ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύ-οι, saying that he was plotting against (him); the accuser's direct words to the king were, "he [Cyrus] is plotting against you," Κῦρος ἐπιβουλεύ-ει, etc. Xenophon quoting this indirectly uses a mode adapted for any verb quoted indirectly when dependent upon a verb denoting past time.<sup>1</sup> This is called the Optative mode.

<sup>1</sup> Do not forget that διαβάλλει is an historical present, really equivalent to an aorist.

7. αὐτῷ, to or for him, here against him; cf. Eng. auto-crat, aut-opsy: (a) -ω is a contraction of the stem vowel ο with ι, and is the case end. dat. sing. 2d decl.,<sup>1</sup> cf. Lat. servo, to a slave: (b) cf. αὐτῶν, αὐτῶ; the gen. and dat., having an accented ultima, are written with the circumflex accent.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The first aorist stem is made by adding the suffix -σα; in the 3d sing. -σα becomes -σε.
2. Final α of the simple verb stem or theme becomes η before -σα.
3. The second aorist has no suffix -σα; it has a shorter form of the verb than the present.
4. The first and second aorists differ only in form; each has the augment in the indicative mode.
5. Prepositional prefixes ending in a vowel lose it before the initial vowel of the verb.
6. Before a rough breathing τ is roughened to θ (th).
7. -ω marks the dat. sing. 2d decl.; if accented, it is circumflex.
8. The prepos. εἰς governs the acc. case.
9. The pres. ind. in a direct statement may become pres. optative when quoted after a main verb denoting past time.
10. When an oxytone, i. e. a word with acute accent on the ultima, is followed by another word so closely connected with it in sense as not to require any mark of punctuation, it changes or softens its acute accent into the grave accent. Some editors soften the accent even before a comma.
11. Ἐπιβουλεύω is followed by dative of the person conspired against.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Names and characters of first twelve Greek letters . . . . .	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. Elision in compound words . . . . .	H. 81.	G. 12, 2.
3. Greek modes . . . . .	H. 299.	G. 89.
4. Greek tenses in the indicative . . . . .	H. 300.	G. 90.
5. Themes and roots . . . . .	H. 307.	G. 92.
6. The article . . . . .	H. 272.	G. 78.

<sup>1</sup> This ω is pronounced like ω, i. e. o in prone; the ι is the same as the i in Lat. honor-i, reg-i.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ὁ ἀδελφός, brother.              | 8. κατά, down.  |
| 2. αὐτῷ, to (or for) him.           | 9. καθ-ίστημι, I cause to sit, = set down.            |
| 3. ἡ βασιλεία, kingdom.             | 10. καθ-έστη, he sat down.                            |
| 4. διά, through.                    | 11. πρὸς, at, by.                                     |
| 5. δια-βάλλω, I slander.            | 12. τελευτά-ω, I end.                                 |
| 6. ἐπί, upon.                       | 13. ὡς, that; on the ground that, as if (with part.). |
| 7. ἐπι-βουλεύω, I conspire against. |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate and explain the formation of: ἐποίησε, ἐτελεύτησε, ἀπέδειξε, ἐπεβούλευσε, ὑπόπτεισε, ἠσθένησε. 2. Decline ἀρχή, βασιλεία, ἡ νεωτέρᾳ, στρατηγός. 3. Translate: (a) Ὑπὸ τῷ πεδίῳ, παρὰ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, μετὰ τὸν στρατηγόν, ἀπὸ τῆς τελευτῆς, εἰς τὸν βίον, κατὰ τὴν χώραν, διὰ τοῦ βίου, πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. (b) Ἐπιβουλεύει οὖν τῷ στρατηγῷ. (c) Διαβάλλει τὸν ἀδελφόν. (d) Ὑπόπτεισε αὐτὸν ὡς διαβάλλοι τὸν ἀδελφόν.

4. Translate: (a) They desired in-truth to be absent. (b) And he made the younger to be satrap. (c) Artaxerxes indeed happens to be younger. (d) He is conspiring against the government. (e) He suspected that he was conspiring against the government.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison between formation of the 1st and 2d aorists. 2. Difference of use between imperfect and aorist. 3. The accent in declension. 4. The participial sign. 5. Nom. sing. endings 1st decl. masc. and fem. 6. Nom. sing. endings 2d decl. masc. and neut. 7. τ before a rough breathing. 8. Proclitics. 9. Verb endings -ει and -οι. 10. Construction after ἐπιβουλεύω. 11. The tenses which denote continued action; those which denote completed action; those which denote an action as simply brought to pass. 12. Time denoted by the different tenses of the indicative. 13. The historical perfect.

## LESSON VII.

## ANABASIS I. 1. 3, to the end.

## 1. NOTES.

1. *ὁ*, *the, he*: (a) stands here without its substantive Ἄρταξέρξης; *ὁ δέ*, *but he*; (b) note, the article standing without its substantive has the force of a demonstrative pronoun.

2. *πίθει-ται*, *he is persuaded, he believes*; cf. *γίγνε-ται*, *he is born*; (a) from *πείθω*, *I persuade*; *πίθομαι*, *I am persuaded, hence, believe*; (b) note the tense, denoting time actually past, cf. *ἀναβαίνει* V.

3. *συλ-λαμβάνει*, *he arrests*: (a) from *λαμβάνω*, *I take, cf. λαβ-ών* V.; (b) *συλ* for *συν*, prepositional prefix, = *together, with*; cf. *συν-αγογή*, a place of meeting together; (c) *ν* becomes *λ* before *λ*, but note *συν-ε-λάμβαν-ε*, *he was arresting*; (d) optative *συλλαμβάν-οι*.

4. *ἀπο-κτεν-ῶν*, *interfecturus, about to kill*; (a) from *κτείνω*, *I kill, ἀπο-κτείνω*, *I kill, destroy*;<sup>1</sup> (b) *ἀποκτείνων*, *killing*; *ἀποκτενῶν*, *about to kill* (future), not to be classed with *λαβῶν* as a 2d aor. partic. on account of the short form of the verb stem (*κτεν*); in the 2d aor. partic. the end. *ων* has an acute accent; (c) supply *αὐτόν* (*i. e.* *Κῦρον*) as the object.

5. *ἡ*, *the (fem.)*; *ἡ δέ*, *but she*, cf. *ὁ δέ* 1; *ἡ δέ μήτηρ*, *but the mother*.

6. *μήτηρ*, *mother*; cf. Lat. *māter*: (a) nom. sing.; (b) cf. *ἀρχή* III., *βασίλειά* VI., of the *a* decl.; *Δαρείος* II., *πεδίον* IV., of the *o* decl.; note that *μήτηρ* shows no resemblance to these and belongs to the 3d or consonant decl.

7. *ἐξ-αιτη-σα-μένη*, *begging (him) off*: (a) from *αἰτέω*, *I beg*, with *ἐξ*, Lat. *ex*, = *away, off*; (b) for *ε* lengthened to *η*, and for *-σα*, 1st. aor. suffix, cf. *ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε* III. n. 15; (c) *-μένη* (masc. *μενο-*) participial suffix, mid. voice; for the active suffix cf. *ἄρχοντα* V.; (d) *ἐξαιτησάμεν-ος*, *he begging off*; *ἐξαιτησαμένη-η*, *she*, etc., *ἐξαιτησάμεν-ον*, *it*, etc.; cf. the Lat. end. *-us, -a, -um*.

8. *ἐπί*, *upon, to*; cf. Eng. *epi-taph*, words upon a tombstone: note that after a verb of motion, *ἐπί* is followed by the acc.; cf. similar use of acc. after *εἰς*.

<sup>1</sup> Or, sometimes, *I lead away or order off to death*.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The proclitics *ὁ, ἡ, ὡς*, each, like *εἰς*, without an accent.
2. The article standing without a substantive is equivalent to a demonstrative pronoun: *he, she, it*.
3. The passive of a verb may acquire a meaning apparently disconnected with its active meaning, *e. g.* *πείθω, πείθομαι*.
4. Prepos. *ἐξ*, *out of, from*; *σύν*, *with*; *ἐπί*, *upon*.
5. *ν* of *σύν* becomes *λ* when followed by *λ* in the same word.
6. Stems ending in a consonant (*μήτηρ*, st. *μάτερ*) belong to the third declension.
7. *ὁ δέ*, *but he*; *ἡ δέ*, *but she*; *τὸ δέ*, *but it*.
8. The augment occurs only in the indicative mode, not in the partic., *e. g.* *λαβῶν, ἐξαιτησαμένη*.
9. *μενο-*, fem. *μενη*, is the partic. suffix middle voice.
10. The nom. of participles mid. voice is *-μεν-ος, -μεν-η, -μεν-ον*, Lat. *-us, -a, -um*.
11. *πίθεται, συλλαμβάνει*, pres. tense, here refer to time actually past.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The letters of the Greek alphabet	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. Division of consonants . . . . .	H. 22.	G. 6.
3. The semivowels . . . . .	H. 23.	G. 6, 1.
4. Declension of <i>ἀγαθός</i> . . . . .	H. 222.	G. σοφός, 62, 3
5. Participial suffixes . . . . .	H. 382.	G. 117, 2.
6. Article as a demonstrative . . . . .	H. 654 and ε.	G. 143 and n. 2

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>αἰτέω</i> , <i>I beg</i> .                | 8. <i>πάλιν</i> , <i>back, again</i> .                |
| 2. <i>ἐξ</i> , <i>from, out of</i> .            | 9. <i>πείθω</i> , <i>I persuade</i> .                 |
| 3. <i>ἐξ-αιτέω</i> , <i>I beg off</i> .         | 10. <i>πίθομαι</i> , <i>I am persuaded, believe</i> . |
| 4. <i>ἀπο-κτείνω</i> , <i>I kill, destroy</i> . | 11. <i>σύν</i> , <i>with</i> .                        |
| 5. <i>ἀπο-πέμπω</i> , <i>I send off, away</i> . | 12. <i>συλλαμβάνω</i> , <i>I seize, arrest</i> .      |
| 6. <i>κτείνω</i> , <i>I kill</i> .              |   |
| 7. <i>ἡ μήτηρ</i> , <i>mother</i> .             |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Κατέστη πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. (b) Ὁ δὲ συνελάμβανε αὐτόν, ὡς διαβάλλοντα τὸν Δαρείον. (c) Ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτερος, τοὺς τριακοσίους συλλαβῶν, κατέστη εἰς τὴν χώραν. (d) Ἡ δὲ τυγχάνει ἐξαιτησαμένη τὸν νεώτερον τῶν ἀδελφῶν.

2. Translate: (a) γιγνόμενος, (b) ὑποπτευόμενος, (c) βουλόμενος, (d) πέμπων, (e) πεμπόμενος, (f) λαμβανόμενος, (g) διαβαλλόμενος, (h) διαβάλλων, (i) πείθων, (j) πειθόμενος.

3. Translate: (a) going up, (b) being present, (c) having, (d) having for one's self, (e) collecting themselves, (f) persuading himself, (g) being persuaded.

4. Translate: (a) But being slandered, he wishes to be absent from the government. (b) He sends the three hundred back again to the government of which Cyrus had made him satrap. (c) But he believes (= believing) [and] sends after Cyrus as if (ὡς) about to kill him.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Article as demonstrative pronoun. 2. Classification of nouns according to decl. 3. Greek voices; significations of the middle. 4. Proclitics. 5. Historical pres. 6.  $\nu$  before  $\lambda$ . 7. Accent in decl. 8. Formation of participles. 9. Analysis of ἄρχοντα. 10. Quantity of the vowel of each final syllable in the cases of 1st and 2d decl. 11. The augment, kinds, place, effect on a prep. prefix. 12. Gender in first two declensions. 13. Formation of the aor. stem.

## LESSON VIII.

## ANABASIS I. I. 4, to ἀντ' ἐκείνου.

## 1. NOTES.

1.  $\delta\delta'$ , for  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$ , but *he*; cf.  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  VII.: note the loss of  $\epsilon$  before the initial vowel of  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$  and the use of the apostrophe to indicate the loss.

2.  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ , *when, as soon as*: conjunction, cf. meaning of  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$  VI., VII.

3. ἀπ-ἦλθε, *he went away, was gone*: (a) from theme ἐλθ (ἐλυθ) seen in Eng. *pros-elyte*, one who goes to another sect; (b) pres. ἔρχομαι, deponent, from theme ἐρχ; the fut., 2d aor., and perf. forms have the theme ἐλυθ; (c)  $\eta$  temp. aug., cf. ὑπώπτει II.; (d) ἀπ for ἀπό, as in ἀπ-ὢν, ἀπ-εἶναι.

4. κινδύνει-σᾶς, *after incurring danger*: (a) from κινδυνεύω; (b) -σᾶς indicates 1st aor. partic. act., standing for -σα-ντ-ς, as Lat. *amans* for *ama-nt-s*; (c) on -σα-, cf. ἐποίησε III. N.; on ντ cf. ἄρχο-ντ-α V.; (d) -ς case end. nom. sing. masc., cf. σατράπη-ς, Δαρείο-ς, Lat. *amans*.

5. ἀτίμασ-θεί-ς, *after being dishonored*: (a) from ἀτιμάζ-ω, theme ἀτι-μαδ; (b) ζ not only sounded with a δ sound, but actually containing a δ; (c) note the change<sup>1</sup> of a t sound before another t sound (i. e. δ before θ) to σ; (d) τ, δ, θ, sounded with the aid of the tip of the tongue, are called *lingual consonants* or *mutts*; (e) -θεί-ς for -θεί-ντ-ς indicates 1st aor. partic. pass.; (f) θε-, first pass. suffix; on -ντ- and -ς cf. κινδυνεύσᾶς for κινδυνεύσαντς.

6. ἔσ-ται, *he shall be*: (a) from theme ἐς, Lat. *es-se, to be*; infin. εἶναι, partic. ὄν; (b) -ται end. as in γίνε-ται; note that this fut. is deponent, i. e. active in meaning, but with passive terminations.

7. ἐπί, *upon, here in the power of*: followed by dat., cf. however ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν VII.

8. ἦν δύνη-ται, *if he shall (or may) be able*: (a) ἦν = εἰ, *if* (Lat. *si*) + ἄν (untranslatable); (b) cf. Eng. *dyna-mite*, an *able* explosive: from δύνα-μαι, dep., cf. βούλο-μαι; (c) -η-, vowel of subjunctive, but ω in 1st person: δύναμαι, I am able; δύνωμαι, pres. subjunctive, 1st sing., δύνηται, pres. subjunctive, 3d sing.

9. βασιλεύ-σ-αι, *he shall rule*; cf. βασιλείᾱ, kingdom: (a) from βασιλεύ-ω, I rule; βασιλεύ-ει, he rules; (b) note, σ- inserted after the verb

<sup>1</sup> So in Lat. *claus-trum*, from *claud-o*, is for *claud-trum*; this has come into Eng. as *clois-ter*.

stem forms the future stem, as *σα-* forms the 1st aor. stem, cf. *ἐποίησε* III.; (c) similarly *ποιή-σω, ποιή-σει*, I shall make, he will make.

10. *ἀντ'* for *ἀντί*, *instead of*; <sup>1</sup> cf. δ δ' 1; note, a final vowel may be dropped before the initial vowel of a following word, and an apostrophe indicate the loss; (b) preposition followed by the gen. case.

11. *ἐκείνου*, of that one, of him; from *ἐκείνος*, declined like *ἀγαθός* except that the neut. sing. is *ἐκείνο*, not *ἐκείνον*.

### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A final vowel may be elided before the initial vowel of a following word.

2. *ὡς* is used both as conjunction and adverb.

3. *ἐ* augments to *ἦ*, e. g. *ἀπῆλθε* from theme *ελθ*.

4. The augment in compound verbs comes after the preposition.

5. *τ, δ, or θ* before another *τ, δ, or θ* (in the same word) becomes *σ*.

6. *ε-ται* indicates the ind. mid. 3d sing.; *η-ται* the subjunc. mid. 3d sing.

7. *-ων*, end. of the active partic. in pres., 2d aor., and fut.

8. *-σās*, end. of the partic., 1st aor. act.; standing for *σα-ντ-ς*.

9. *-θείς*, end. of the partic., 1st aor. pass.; standing for *θε-ντ-ς*.

10. The verb stem is made fut. by adding *σ<sup>ο</sup>ε*.<sup>2</sup> e. g. *ποιή-σω, ποιή-σει*.

11. Second aor. forms (e. g. *ἀπῆλθε*) are derived from the theme without a tense suffix.

12. Only the indicative has the augment.

### 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The three classes of mutes	II. 24.	G. 6, 2 second group.
2. Linguals changed to <i>σ</i>	II. 52.	G. 16, 1 end.
3. Elision	II. 79.	G. 12.
4. Declension of <i>ἐκείνος, αὐτός</i>	II. 271, 265.	G. 83, 79.
5. Suffixes of the fut., 1st aor., and 1st pass. systems	II. 372.	G. 110 II., III., VI.
6. Vowel of the subjunctive	II. 408.	G. 114.
7. Tenses in participles	II. 856.	G. 204.
8. Final clauses	II. 885.	G. 217.

<sup>1</sup> Such Eng. words as *antichrist, antidote* show this preposition; but the sense in them is rather that of *against* than *instead of*.

<sup>2</sup> This means that an *o*-vowel follows *σ* in the 1st pers. sing. and plur. and 3d pers. plur.; and that *ε* follows elsewhere.

### 4. VOCABULARY.

1. <i>ἀλλά</i> , but.	10. <i>ἐπί</i> (with dat.), upon, in the power of.
2. <i>ἀντί</i> , instead of.	11. <i>ἔσται</i> , will be.
3. <i>ἔρχομαι</i> , I come, go.	12. <i>ἔτι</i> , yet, again.
4. <i>ἀπ-έρχομαι</i> , I go away.	13. <i>ἦν</i> ( <i>εἰ-ἄν</i> ), if.
5. <i>ἀπ-ῆλθε</i> , he went away.	14. <i>κινδυνεύω</i> , I incur danger.
6. <i>ἀτιμάζω</i> , I dishonor.	15. <i>μήποτε</i> , never.
7. <i>βουλεύω</i> , <sup>1</sup> I advise, plan.	16. <i>ὅπως</i> , in order that.
8. <i>δύναμαι</i> , I am able.	17. <i>λύω</i> , I loose.
9. <i>ἐκείνος</i> , that one, he.	

### 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) *ἔχων, κινδυνεύων, κινδυνεύσων, κινδυνεύσας, τελευτησάμενος, αἰτησαμένη, τελευτηθείς*. (b) *ποιήσων, ποιήσας, ποιησάμενος, ποιηθείς*. (c) *γίγνομαι, γίγνεται, βούλεται*. (d) *ἐποίει, ἐποιεῖτο, ἐποίησε*. (e) *πείθω, πείθει, πείθεται, πεισθείς, πείθων*. (f) *λύω, λύων, λυόμενος, λυσαμένη, λύσας, λύσων, λυθείς, λύει, ἔλυε, λύομαι, ἐλύετο, λύεται, ἐλύοντο*.

2. Translate: (a) after begging, about to beg, after being begged. (b) Cyrus is-begged-off (partic. aor. pass.) [and] sent away to the government of which Darius had made him satrap. (c) He plans (for himself) in order that he may again be able to be general of all the Greeks who assemble into the plain.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Participial suffixes. 3. Indirect discourse. 4. Tense suffixes. 5. Verb theme. 6. Future of *εἶναι*. 7. Analysis of *λύσας, λυθείς*. 8. Lingual consonant before another ling. cons. 9. Accent in declension. 10. *τ* before a rough breathing. 11. Tenses which denote continued action. 12. Purpose. 13. Meaning of *σ<sup>ο</sup>ε*.

<sup>1</sup> Very frequent as an indirect middle.

## LESSON IX.

## ANABASIS I. I. 4, 5.

TEXT: Παύσαται μὲν δὴ . . . ἡ βασιλεῖ.

## 1. NOTES.

1. ὑπ-ἦρχ-ε, *was (for, i. e.) aiding*: (a) from ὑπ-ἄρχω; on ὑπ (Lat. sub) for ὑπό cf. ὑπ-ώπτει II. N. 5 d; (b) on η and ε cf. ἡσθένει II. N. 4; (c) on the accent cf. ἀπ-ἦλθε VIII. N. 3; note that it is upon the temporal aug.
2. Κύρω: dat. after ὑπῆρχε; cf. similar use of the dat. in Lat. after verbs of *aiding*: e. g. *mihī succurrīt*.
3. φιλοῦσα, *loving*: (a) from φιλέω; (b) φιλέ-ων (he) loving, φιλέ-ουσα (she) loving; so ἔχων, ἔχουσα; (c) note, the diphthong ου absorbs ε of φιλέ-ω and a circumflex marks the contraction;<sup>1</sup> (d) so φιλω̄, I love, φιλῶν, loving, φιλοῦσα (she) loving; note the contraction.
4. βασιλεύο-ντ-α, (*him*) *ruling*; cf. βασιλεύσει VIII.: (a) on -ντ- and -α cf. ἄρχοντα V. N. 11; (b) βασιλεύων, *he ruling*, βασιλεύουσα, *she ruling*; (c) -α marks acc. sing. 3d decl.; so ἡ μήτηρ (stem μητερ), τὴν μητέρ-α.
5. ἀφ-ικνοῖτο, *might arrive, come*: (a) pres. opt. from ἀφ-ικνέ-ομαι dep.; (b) -οῖτο, contr. of -ε of the theme with end. -οῖτο; note that ε is absorbed by οἰ, as by ω in φιλέω, φιλω̄ 3 d, and that a circumflex marks the contr.;<sup>1</sup> (c) on the corresp. act. end. cf. ἐπιβουλεύ-οι VI.; (d) note that the verb is introduced by the indef. rel. pron. ὅστις, *whoever*, and that *whoever might come = if any one came*; (e) ἀφ for ἀπ (= ἀπό), cf. καθ-ίστημι VI. N. 2.
6. παρά, with the gen., *from beside, from the side of*: (a) note the idea of separation in παρά with the gen.; (b) "whoever, of those *from beside* the king, i. e. from the court, came" means "whoever of those *beside* [who were beside] the king came," etc.
7. βασιλέ-ως, *of (the) king*; note the omission of the def. art.;<sup>2</sup> (a) from βασιλέ-ς, *king*; cf. βασιλεύ-οντα above; (b) -ως for -ος as in Παρυσάτιδ-ος I. N. 3; or case ending gen. sing. 3d decl., cf. -is in Lat. 3d

<sup>1</sup> A circumflex on the penult of course can occur only when the ultima is short.

<sup>2</sup> The art. is regularly omitted before βασιλεύς, when the great king of Persia is referred to.

decl., e. g. *honor-is, of honor*; (c) so ἄρχοντ-ος, βασιλεύοντ-ος, παιδ-ός, μητρ-ός (Lat. *matr-is*).

8. πάντ-ας, *all*; acc. plur. masc.; gen. plur. πάντ-ων IV. N. 5; so πάντας βασιλέ-ας, *all kings*, πάντας ἄρχοντας, *all commanders*.

9. δια-τιθ-είς, *disposing*: (a) thus disposing all = thus affecting the minds of all; (b) from δια-τίθη-μι, theme θε, pres. stem τιθε; (c) pres. stem of the compound, δια-τιθε, partic. δια-τιθε-ντ-ς; on -έντς changed to -είς cf. ἀτίμασθείς VIII. N. 5 c; cf. also κινδυνεύσας VIII. for κινδυνεύσαντς; (d) note, ντ is lost before the end. -ς; then ε is lengthened to ει, α to ᾱ.

10. βασιλε-ῖ, *to the king*: (a) -ι, end. of dat. sing. 3d decl., cf. Lat. *regī* and iota subscript in αὐτῷ; (b) applying the endings met with, we have: βασιλεύ-ς, βασιλέ-ως, βασιλεῖ, βασιλέ-α; βασιλέ-ες,<sup>1</sup> βασιλέ-ων, βασιλέ-ας.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The accent of compound verbs does not precede the augment.
2. ὑπάρχω, *to be for, to aid*, governs the dative case.
3. Participles in -ων have the feminine in -ουσᾱ.
4. Verb themes ending in -ε lose it before an ending beginning with -ω, -ου, or -οι, and the contracted syllable receives a circumflex accent.
5. A sentence introduced by the indef. rel. ὅστις and containing the optative has the force of a condition.
6. π becomes φ before a rough breathing, as τ becomes θ.
7. The partic. suffix ντ is lost before the case ending σ, and a preceding α becomes ᾱ; ε becomes ει.
8. The third decl. endings: -ς, -ος, -ι, -α, -ες, -ων, -ας.
9. With the gen. παρά denotes separation: *from the side of*.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |                  |                                |
|--|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Three orders of the mutes               | H. 25.           | G. 6, 2 end.                   |
| 2. Compensative lengthening                | H. 34.           | G. 16, 6 N. 1.                 |
| 3. Contraction of e and o sounds . . . . . | H. 37, c; 39, b. | G. 9, 2 and 4.                 |
| 4. Accent in contraction . . .             | II 105.          | G. 24.                         |
| 5. Third declension . . . . .              | H. 163; 168-170. | G. 45, 1 and 2; 46, 2; 47; 48. |

<sup>1</sup> In Xenophon βασιλέ-ες is contr. to βασιλεῖς, a change like that of ἡσθίνες to ἡσθίνεις.



- |  |                 |                       |
|--|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 6. Declension of βασιλεύς . . . . .                | H. 206.         | G. 53, 3.             |
| 7. Accent as affected by the augment . . . . .     | H. 391, b.      | G. 105.               |
| 8. Verbs of aiding . . . . .                       | H. 764, 2.      | G. 184, 2.            |
| 9. παρά with the gen. case . . . . .               | H. 802 and 1.   | G. 191, VI. 4 (1).    |
| 10. πρὸς with the acc. case <sup>1</sup> . . . . . | H. 805 and 3 a. | G. 191, VI. 6 (3) a.  |
| 11. Conditional relative sentences . . . . .       | H. 912; 889.    | G. 231; 219, 1, 2, 3. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ἀφ-ικνέο-μαι, I arrive.          | 10. πάντες, all.                        |
| 2. ὁ βασιλεύς, king.                | 11. παρά, with gen., from beside, from. |
| 3. βασιλεύω, I rule.                | 12. ὑπό, under; sub.                    |
| 4. δῆ, accordingly, so then.        | 13. ὑπ-άρχω, I aid.                     |
| 5. δια-τίθη-μι, I arrange, dispose. | 14. φιλέω, φιλῶ, I love.                |
| 6. ἤ, than.                         | 15. φίλος, friend.                      |
| 7. μᾶλλον, rather.                  | 16. ὥστε, that as a result; ut.         |
| 8. ὅστις, whoever.                  |   |
| 9. οὕτω, so, thus; ita.             |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) βασιλεύων, βασιλεύοντος, βασιλεύοντα, βασιλεύουσα; λύσων, λύσουσα. (b) Ἡ δὲ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἐφίλει, ὥστε αὐτῇ μᾶλλον φίλον εἶναι ἢ τῷ βασιλεῖ. (c) Ὅστις οὖν ἀφικνοῖτο παρ' αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην, ἀπέδειξε στρατηγὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων. (d) Ἄλλ' ἢν δύνηται βασιλεὺς εἶναι, ποιήσει τὸν ἀδελφὸν στρατηγόν. (e) Ἡ μήτηρ οὖν ἀνέβαινε πρὸς τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ὡς ἐξαιτησομένη τὸν Κύρον. (f) Ὁ δὲ ἵποπτευθεὶς ἐτελεύτησε τὸν βίον.

2. Translate: (a) He indeed happens to be friendly (= a friend) to the king. (b) But when the younger happened to be absent, Tissaphernes slanders him before the ruling Artaxerxes. (c) But the mother, loving Cyrus rather than the older brother, persuades the king and sends Cyrus back again to his government.

<sup>1</sup> Make it a point to consult the treatment of the preposition given in the grammars, as often as new prepositions or new uses of the familiar ones are met with.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of ὑπήρχε. 2. ὅπως and ὥστε. 3. Analysis of partic. end. -ās, -είς. 4. φ in ἀφικνέομαι. 5. Endings in the 3d decl. 6. Adjective and relative agreement. 7. Analysis of βασιλεύοντα. 8. Augment of α, ε, ο. 9. Verb endings -οι, -οιτο. 10. Elision and augment in compound verbs. 11. Conditional relatives. 12. Classification of the consonants. 13. Article as a demonstrative. 14. Time indicated by the tenses of the participle.

## LESSON X. — REVIEW.

[This lesson is a review of all that have preceded it. Nothing is so necessary, in the acquisition of a language, as constant and thorough review. One should carry forward with him at least nine-tenths of what he has learned. The preceding lessons contain in all eighty-eight different words, together with a large number of grammatical forms. Many of the most important principles of the language have been considered. Others might have been brought forward; but it has been deemed wise to hold them in reserve. It is understood that the student will in no case proceed to take up Lesson XI. until this lesson, with all that it includes, is learned. Let every word, every phrase, every principle, be mastered absolutely.]

## 1. TEXT. ANABASIS I. I. 1 to βασιλεῖ I. I. 5.

In the review of the text which has thus far been taken, pursue the following order of work:—

1. Pronounce aloud the Greek text repeatedly.
2. With only the English translation before the eye, pronounce the Greek, until this can be done rapidly and without hesitation.
3. With only the English translation before the eye, write out the Greek; compare the result with the printed Greek text; note and correct mistakes.
4. Write out a grammatical analysis of the material of the text thus far studied under the following heads: (1) noun-forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (a) nom. forms, (b) gen. forms, (c) dat. forms, (d) acc. forms; (2) verb-forms, classify separately

(a) presents, (b) imperfects, (c) aorists; and, again, (d) subjunctives, (e) optatives, (f) participles.<sup>1</sup>

5. Go through the text and select those forms and phrases which, perhaps, still remain unmastered. Read again the previous notes given upon them. *Do not leave them before they have been conquered.*

## 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The alphabet . . . . .	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. The vowels . . . . .	H. 9.	G. 2.
3. Breathings . . . . .	H. 17.	G. 4.
4. Gamma nasal . . . . .	H. 20.	G. 6, 1.
5. Zeta . . . . .	H. 21 a.	G. 5, 2.
6. Classification of consonants	H. 22.	G. 5.
7. Semivowels . . . . .	H. 23.	G. 6, 1.
8. The mutes . . . . .	H. 24, 25.	G. 6, 2.
9. Xi . . . . .	H. 26.	G. 5, 2.
10. Compensative lengthening (α and ε) . . . . .	H. 34.	G. 16, 6 n. 1.
11. Contr. of ε with ω, ου, ε . .	H. 37.	G. 9, 2, 3, 4.
12. Lingual mute before an- other lingual mute . . . . .	H. 52.	G. 16, 1.
13. Elision . . . . .	H. 79, 81.	G. 12, 1 and 2.
14. Syllables . . . . .	H. 90.	G. 18, 1.
15. Accent . . . . .	H. 95, 96 and a, 99, 100 a, b, 102, a.	G. 21, 1, 2, 22, 1, 2, n. 1.
16. Accent as affected by contr.	H. 105.	G. 24.
17. Grave accent . . . . .	H. 108.	G. 23.
18. Proclitics . . . . .	H. 111.	G. 29.
19. Gender, number, cases . . .	H. 123.	G. 33, 1, 2, 3.
20. Accent of nouns . . . . .	H. 128, 129.	G. 25, 1, 2.
21. Stems . . . . .	H. 130.	G. 32, 1, 2.
22. Declensions . . . . .	H. 131.	G. 34.
23. Stem end., gender, nom. endings, 1st decl. . . . .	H. 134.	G. 35.
24. χώρᾱ, τιμῆ . . . . .	H. 135.	G. 37.
25. -ᾶν, 1st decl. . . . .	H. 141.	G. 39, 4.

<sup>1</sup> The instructor should aid the pupil in this work of classifying his material. Blank-books, properly ruled, should be used. It is of extreme importance that, from the beginning, the pupil should be encouraged to do independent work.

26. Second decl., stem end., gender, nom. end. . . . .	H. 151.	G. 40.
27. ἄνθρωπος, δῶρον . . . . .	H. 153.	G. 42, 1.
28. Third decl. stems and case endings . . . . .	H. 163, 168, 169, 170.	G. 45, 46, 2, 47, 1 49.
29. βασιλεύς . . . . .	H. 206.	G. 53, 3.
30. ἀγαθός . . . . .	H. 222.	G. 62, 3 σοφός.
31. αὐτός . . . . .	H. 265.	G. 79, 1.
32. ἐκείνος . . . . .	H. 271.	G. 83.
33. Article . . . . .	H. 272.	G. 78.
34. Voices, modes, tenses, themes . . . . .	H. 298-300, 307.	G. 88-92.
35. Augment . . . . .	H. 354-56, 360.	G. 99, 100, 105.
36. Tense and mode suffixes . .	H. 372.	G. 110 II., III., VI.
37. Participial suffixes . . . .	H. 382.	G. 117, 2.
38. Vowel of the subjunct. . .	H. 408.	G. 114.
39. Agreement of the subject	H. 601.	G. 134.
40. " " verb	H. 603.	G. 135.
41. " " adjective	H. 620.	G. 138.
42. " " appositive	H. 623.	G. 137.
43. " " relative	H. 627.	G. 151.
44. ὁ as a demonstrative . . .	H. 654 and ε.	G. 143 and n. 2.
45. Object and pred. acc. . . .	H. 726.	G. 166.
46. Voice . . . . .	H. 811-813.	G. 199.
47. Tense . . . . .	H. 821-24, 828, 829, 836, 837, 856.	G. 200, n. 1, 202, 1, 204.
48. Ὅπως with fut. ind. . . .	H. 885.	G. 217.
49. The cond. sentence . . . .	H. 889.	G. 219, 1.
50. Conditional relatives . . .	H. 912.	G. 231.

## 3. VOCABULARY.

[The pupil is expected to know the various forms which have occurred of each of the words here given.]

## VERBS.

1. ἀθροίζω.	3. ἀνα-βαίνω.	5. ἀπο-δείκνυμι.	7. ἀσθενέω.
2. αἰτέω.	4. ἀπ-έρχομαι.	6. ἀπο-κτείνω.	8. ἀτιμάζω.

9. ἀφ-ικνέομαι.	16. δύναμαι.	23. κτείνω.	30. ποιέω.
10. βασιλεύω.	17. εἶναι.	24. λαμβάνω.	31. συλ-λαμβάνω.
11. βουλεύω.	18. ἐξ-αιτέω.	25. λύω.	32. τελευτάω.
12. βούλομαι.	19. ἐπι-βουλεύω.	26. μετα-πέμπω.	33. τυγχάνω.
13. γίγνομαι.	20. ἔχω.	27. παρ-εἶναι.	34. ὑπ-άρχω.
14. δια-βάλλω.	21. καθ-ίστημι.	28. πείθω.	35. ὑπ-οπτεύω.
15. δια-τίθημι.	22. κινδυνεύω.	29. πέμπω.	36. φιλέω.

NOUNS.	ADJS., PRONS.	PREPOSITIONS.	ADV. PARTICLES.
1. ὁ ἀδελφός.	1. ἀμφοτέρω.	1. ἀνά.	1. δῆ.
2. ἡ ἀρχή.	2. νεώτερος.	2. ἀντί.	2. ἔτι.
3. ὁ ἄρχων.	3. πάντες.	3. ἀπό.	3. μὲν.
4. ἡ βασιλεία.	4. πρεσβύτερος.	4. διά.	4. μήποτε.
5. ὁ βασιλεύς.		5. εἰς.	5. οὖν.
6. ὁ βίος.	1. αὐτός.	6. ἐξ.	6. οὕτω.
7. οἱ Ἕλληνες.	2. ἐκείνος.	7. ἐπί.	7. πάλιν.
8. ἡ μήτηρ.	3. ὁ, ἡ, τό.	8. κατά.	8. ὡς.
9. ὁ ὀπλίτης.	4. ὅσος.	9. μετά.	
10. ὁ παῖς.		10. παρά.	
11. τὸ πεδίον.	CONJUNCTIONS.	11. πρός.	
12. ὁ σατράπης.	1. δέ, καί, ἀλλά.	12. σύν.	
13. ὁ στρατηγός.	2. ἐπεὶ.	13. ὑπό.	
14. ἡ τελευτή.	3. ἢ.		
15. ὁ φίλος.	4. ἤν.		
	5. ὅπως, ὥστε.		
	6. ὡς.		

## 4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὁ στρατηγός τελευτήν τοῦ βίου ἐποίει. (b) Ὁ πρεσβύτερος ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀπὸν ἐτύχχανε. (c) Ὅσοι στρατηγοὶ ἠθροίζοντο εἰς πεδίον, βούλοιντο τὸν Κῦρον εἶναι ἄρχοντα. (d) Ὁ δὲ Ξενίας κατέστη εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. (e) Ἡ δ' ἐτύχχανε διαβάλλουσα τὸν νεώτερον ὡς τῇ ἀρχῇ ἐπιβουλεύοι.

2. Translate: (a) He wishes accordingly to be absent from the kingdom. (b) He sends for the three hundred men from the province of which Darius had made him satrap. (c) The king indeed happens to be a friend to him. (d) But she, loving the younger, wished him to be present.

## LESSON XI.

## ANABASIS I. I. 5, 6.

TEXT: καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῶ . . . λάβοι βασιλεία.

## 1. NOTES.

1. παρ' (with dat.), *by the side of*: (a) cf. παρὰ βασιλέως IX. (gen.), from the side of the king; (b) on παρ' for παρά cf. ἀντ' VIII. n. 10.

2. ἑαυτῶ, *himself*, **sibi**: note that παρ' ἑαυτῶ stands between τῶν and βαρβάρων like an ordinary attrib. adj., e. g. τῶν ἀγαθῶν παίδων, of the good boys.

3. ἐπ-ε-μελεῖ-το, contr. from ἐπεμελέ-ε-το from ἐπι-μελέομαι, deponent: (a) on the form, cf. ἐ-βούλε-το II.; (b) ε-ε = εἰ as in ἠσθένει II.; (c) on ἐ-ε = εἶ, cf. ἐ-ον = οὔ in φιλοῦσα IX.; (d) construed with gen., he took care of the barbarians.

4. πολεμεῖν, contr. from πολεμέ-ειν, from πολεμέω; cf. Eng. *polemic*: (a) -ειν indicates the infin., cf. also -ναι in παρεῖ-ναι II.; (b) so ἔχω, ἔχειν; λύω, λύειν.

5. τε, for τέ, both, foll. by καί, and: (a) note loss of accent; to be read as part of the preceding word;<sup>1</sup> (b) cf. εἰς IV., ὡς V., ὁ VII., which have no accent, and are read as part of the foll. word.

6. ὡς . . . εἴησαν, *ut essent*, that they might be: (a) pres. opt. 3d plur., in a clause of purpose; (b) from εἶμι, I am, cf. ὢν, being, εἶναι, to be, ἔσται, will be; (c) on the optative in indir. disc. for indic. of the dir. disc. cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι VI.; (d) on the opt. in cond. rel. sent. cf. ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX.

7. εὐνοϊκ-ὡς ἔχοι-εν, and that they might have in a friendly manner, i. e. might be friendly: (a) -ως indicates the adverb; (b) as -οι indicates the pres. opt. 3d sing., so -οιεν indicates the pres. opt. 3d plur., cf. however εἴ-η-σαν 6; (c) opt. as in εἴησαν, 6 a.

8. δύναμι-ν, *force*: (a) nom. δύναμι-ς, cf. Eng. *dynamite*, δύνηται VIII.; (b) end. -ν indicates accus. sing. 3d decl., cf. also -α in ἄρχοντ-α V. n. 11.

9. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, *quam maxime poterat*, as well as he could: ἐ-δύνα-το from δύνα-μαι dep., cf. δύνηται VIII.; on the form cf. ἐ-βούλε-το II. n. 9; ἐπεμελείτο, 3 a.

<sup>1</sup> So in Lat., *hominésque*.

10. ἐπι-κρυπ-τό-μενο-ς, *hiding (for himself)*: (a) from ἐπι-κρύπτω, cf. Eng. *crypt*; (b) on the partic. suffix and the voice cf. ἐξαιτησα-μέν-η VII.

11. ὅπως, *ut, in order that*; cf. similar use of ὡς 6: (a) followed here by the opt. λάβ-οι; (b) cf. εἶσαν, ἔχοιεν, λάβοι, note that the verbs upon which they depend (ἐπεμελείτο, ἠθροίζεν) are in a past, or secondary, tense; (c) on ὅπως with fut. ind. after verbs of *striving*, cf. ὅπως ἔσται VIII.

12. ὅτι ἀπαρασκευό-τατο-ν, *as unprepared as possible*: (a) ὅτι like ὡς in ὡς μάλιστα 9, strengthening the superlat.; (b) -τατο- (nom. -τατος) indicates superlat.; (c) for the comparative suffix cf. -τερο- in πρῶτον-τερο-ς I.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. παρά is const. with both gen. and dat., but with different meanings.
2. A preposition with its dependent noun may stand between an article and its subst. and have the value of an attrib. adj.
3. ἐπιμελέομαι is construed with the gen.
4. ὡς and ὅπως indicate purpose.
5. -ειν, -ναι indicate the infinitive. ἐ-ειν = εἶν.
6. τέ loses its accent, and is read as part of the preceding word.
7. A clause of purpose may have its verb in the opt. when the principal verb is in a past tense.
8. ἔχω modified by an adv. has the sense of the Eng. *to be* with a pred. adj.
9. -οιεν and -ησαν indicate the opt. 3d plur.
10. ὡς, ὅτι, strengthen the superlative, like *quam* in Latin.
11. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the end. -ως.
12. Comparatives and superlatives are formed by the endings -τερο- and -τατο-.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Open and close vowels . . .	II. 12.	G. 2 N.
2. Contraction of vowels . . .	II. 37.	G. 9, 1, 2, 3, 4.
3. Enclitics . . . . .	II. 113.	G. 27.
4. Declension of πάλις . . . .	II. 201.	G. 53.
5. Comparison of adjectives . .	II. 248, 249.	G. 71.
6. Formation of adverbs . . . .	II. 257.	G. 74.
7. Tenses of the indicative . . .	II. 301, 302.	G. 90, 1, 2.

8. Article with attributives . . . II. 666 and a. G. 142, 1 and N.
9. Adverb with ἔχω . . . . . H. 810 examples.
10. Modes in final clauses . . . H. 881. G. 215 A., 216.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀπάρσκευος, <i>unprepared.</i>            | 9. εὐνοϊκός, <i>friendly.</i>                            |
| 2. ὁ βάρβαρος, <i>barbarian.</i>             | 10. εὐνοϊκῶς, <i>in a friendly way.</i>                  |
| 3. ἡ δύναμις, <i>force.</i>                  | 11. ἰκανός, <i>able.</i>                                 |
| 4. ἐαυτῷ, <i>to himself.</i>                 | 12. ὅτι, ὡς (w. sup.), <i>intensely the superlative.</i> |
| 5. εἶσαν (opt.), <i>they might be.</i>       | 13. παρά (w. dat.), <i>by the side of.</i>               |
| 6. Ἑλληνικός, <i>Greek.</i>                  | 14. πολεμέω, <i>I fight, make war.</i>                   |
| 7. ἐπικρύπτω, <i>I hide.</i>                 | 15. τέ . . . καί, <i>both . . . and.</i>                 |
| 8. ἐπιμελέομαι (w. gen.), <i>I care for.</i> | 16. ὡς (conj.), <i>in order that.</i>                    |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Form the adverb from Ἑλληνικός and ἰκανός. 2. Decl. δύναμις, ἀπάρσκευος (sing.), ἰκανός (plur.). 3. Translate: (a) Οἱ παρ' ἐαυτῷ βάρβαροι βούλονται εἶναι ἰκανοὶ πολεμεῖν. (b) Ὁ μὲν Κύρος ἀνέβη καὶ ἔσται παρὰ τῷ ἀδελφῷ. (c) Ἐβούλοντο δὴ αὐτὸν ἔχειν ὅτι ἰκανώτατον ἄρχοντα. (d) Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀσθενεῖ ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπιμελεῖται αὐτοῦ ἡ Παρύσατις. (e) Ἐπικρύπτετο τοὺς στρατηγούς ὅτι μάλιστα ἐδύνατο.

4. Translate: (a) But whoever might arrive from beside (Cyrus slandered the king as secretly (= hiding) as possible. (b) But Cyrus was plotting in order that he might rule. (c) The satrap accordingly went up when the king was happening to be most unprepared. (d) He will be a friend of the king if he is able (subj.) to hold (= have) his government. (e) And if he wishes to slay the generals, the king's brother will be present as a friend to them.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Contr. of ε-ε, ἐ-ε, ἐ-αι, ἐ-ου, ἐ-α, ε-ω. 3. Deponents.
4. Verb ending -ειν. 5. Different uses of the opt. 6. Accent of τέ.
7. Theme and pres. stem of λαμβάνω. 8. End. -οιεν, -ησαν. 9. ἔχω with the adv. 10. ὅπως with fut. ind. 11. Cases with παρά. 12. Endings of 3d decl. 13. Attributive position. 14. Position of μὲν; of δέ
15. Augment. 16. Participial suffixes. 17. Comparison of ἰκανός.

## LESSON XII.

## ANABASIS I. I. 6.

TEXT: Ὡδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο . . . πλὴν Μιλήτου.

## 1. NOTES.

1. εἶχε: (a) impf. ind. from εἶχω; here ε augments to εἰ; (b) aug. of α, ο?
2. ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, in the cities: (a) ἐν, Lat. in, in; with dat. case; (b) πόλεσι, dat. plur. of πόλις, cf. Eng. metro-polis; <sup>1</sup> (c) note change of ι to ε; in which cases is ι retained?
3. παρ-ἠγγειλε: (a) from παρ-αγγέλλω; cf. Eng. angel; <sup>2</sup> (b) γγ = ηγ, cf. γχ in τυγχάνω III. N. 6; (c) ἠγγελλε, impf., was announcing; ἠγγειλε, 1st aor., announced; (d) note, there is but one λ in the 1st aor., and the tense suffix -σ-α is not employed, but ε is strengthened to εἰ.
4. λαμβάν-ειν: (a) -ειν indicates infin. act., cf. πολεμεῖν XI. N. 4; (b) pres. infin., since λαμβαν is the pres. stem of the theme λαβ.
5. ἄνδρ-ας: (a) nom. sing. ἀνὴρ, stem ἀνερ, but ἄνδρ in decl.; (b) on stems in ρ belonging to the 3d decl. cf. μήτηρ VII. Obs. 6.
6. πλείστους, most, βελτίστους, best: (a) superlatives of πολὺς, ἀγαθός; (b) the adjectives meaning much, good, are irregularly compared.
7. ὡς as, as if, cf. ὡς φίλον V.: introduces the following two gen., which, taken together, make a construction equivalent to the Lat. abl. abs.
8. Τισσαφέρνους, for Τισσαφερνεσ-ος, σ here drops away between ε and ο and the vowels contr. to ου.
9. καὶ γὰρ ἦ-σαν, for [the, etc.] were: (a) cf. Lat. etenim = et-enim; (b) ἦ-σαν, erant, were; on -σαν cf. εἶσαν XI.
10. τὸ ἀρχαῖον, originally; cf. Eng. archaic: acc. sing. neut. with force of adverb.
11. ἐκ βασιλείως, from, by, [the] king: (a) ἐκ, same as ἐξ, but used when the following word begins with a consonant; (b) with the gen. case.

<sup>1</sup> From μήτηρ, mother, and πόλις, city.

<sup>2</sup> Strictly a messenger.

12. δε-δο-μέν-αι, having been given: (a) perf. part. pass. (or mid.) of theme δο, to give, cf. Lat. do, dare; (b) note, the stem of the perf. is formed by means of a prefixed reduplication, cf. Lat. pe-pendi, de-di, te-tendi; (c) on part. suffix -μενο cf. ἐπικρυπτό-μενο-ς XI. N. 10.

13. ἀφ-ει-στή-κε-σαν, (they) had revolted: <sup>1</sup> (a) from ἀφ-ίστημι, theme στα, Lat. sta-re; (b) on ἀφ for ἀπ' cf. ἀφ-ικνοῖτο IX. N. 5 ε, καθ-ίστημι VI. N. 2 ε; (c) -σαν indicates 3d plur., cf. εἶσαν XI., ἦ-σαν 9.

14. πᾶσ-αι, all; from πᾶς: nom. plur. fem.; stem πᾶσ-α; for the masc. stem cf. πάντ-ων IV. N. 5.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ε sometimes augments to εἰ. γγ pronounced like ηγ in sing.
2. ἐν is foll. by the dat.; ἐξ by the gen.
3. Verbs the stem of whose present ends in -λλ form the first aor. with only one λ and lengthen the theme-vowel, ε to εἰ; the tense suffix -σα is not used.
4. The theme λαβ becomes λαμβαν in the present system.
5. ἀνὴρ has ἀνδρ for its stem, in declension.
6. πολὺς, ἀγαθός are irreg. compared.
7. The Greek has a gen. abs. corresp. to the Lat. abl. abs.
8. -σαν indicates the 3d plur. in some forms of the verb.
9. The acc. sing. neut. of the adj. may be used adverbially.
10. ἐξ becomes ἐκ before consonants.
11. The perf. stem is formed by reduplication.
12. πᾶς has the two stems παντ (masc., neut.) and πᾶσ-α (fem.).

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Accent in the third decl. . . . .	H. 172.	G. 25, 3.
2. Declens. of ἀνὴρ . . . . .	H. 188 b, 189.	G. 57, 2.
3. Declens. of πᾶς . . . . .	H. 240.	G. 67.
4. Tense systems . . . . .	H. 303.	G. 92, 4.
5. Adverbial accusative . . . . .	H. 719.	G. 160, 2.
6. Genitive absolute . . . . .	H. 970	G. 183.

<sup>1</sup> This form is pluperf. ind., but being somewhat irregular, its full analysis is for the present withheld.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ἀγγέλλω, I announce.                     | 12. πλὴν, except.                       |
| 2. παρ-αγγέλλω, I announce. <sup>1</sup>    | 13. ἡ πόλις, city.                      |
| 3. ὁ ἀνὴρ, man.                             | 14. πολὺς, πλείστος, much, most.        |
| 4. ἀφ-ίστημι, I cause to stand off, revolt. | 15. ἡ συλλογή, levy.                    |
| 5. βέλτιστος, best.                         | 16. ἀρχαῖος, ancient, original.         |
| 6. δίδωμι, I give.                          | 17. τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly.               |
| 7. ἕκαστος, each.                           | 18. τότε, then.                         |
| 8. ἐν, in.                                  | 19. ὁ φρούραρχος, captain of the guard. |
| 9. ἦσαν, erant, they were.                  | 20. ἡ φυλακή, guard.                    |
| 10. ὅσος, quantus, as many as.              | 21. ἴδε, thus.                          |
| 11. πᾶς, every, all.                        |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Decl. πᾶσα ἡ συλλογή (sing.) ; ὁ βέλτιστος ἀνὴρ ; ἕκαστη πόλις.
- Translate: (a) And the city makes the levy as follows. (b) As many generals as he has in the city. (c) To each he announces that they are-to-take (= to take) 300 as good men as possible. (d) The Peloponnesian cities were, in truth, wishing to aid the Ionian cities. (e) I will make Tissaphernes general, on-the-ground-that (ὥς) Cyrus wishes (it).

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- Comparison.
- Vowel contraction.
- Open and close vowels.
- Adv. ending.
- Different meanings of ὥς.
- Modes in final clauses.
- Peculiarities in decl. of πόλις.
- Peculiarities of παρ-ἡγγειλε.
- Voice and accent of ἐποιεῖτο.
- Construct. of πόλεσι (after Τισσαφέρνους).
- Declens. of βασιλεύς.
- ους in Τισσαφέρνους.
- Accent in contraction.
- Stems of πᾶς.

<sup>1</sup> Literally pass the word along, announce to one after another.

## LESSON XIII.

## ANABASIS I. I. 7.

TEXT : ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ . . . ἐκπεπτοκίτας.

## 1. NOTES.

1. προ-αισθ-ό-μενο-ς, foreseeing : (a) from αἰσθάν-ο-μαι, I perceive, cf. Eng. aesthetic ; (b) πρό, before, Lat. pro ; (c) note, the partic. here has for its base the theme αἰσθ, not αἰσθαν ; it is 2d aor. ; cf. λαβ-ών V., ἀνέ-βη V.

2. τὰ αὐτά, the same (things) ; τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα, these same things : (a) ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ, the same man ; ἡ αὐτὴ τε εὐτή, the same end ; (b) ταῦτα, neut. plur. nom. or acc. of οὗτος, this, that.

3. βουλευο-μέν-ους, them planning for themselves : (a) in agreement with αὐτοὺς understood, the people of Miletus ; (b) note, the partic. in μενο- is declined like ἀγαθός ; for the nom. fem. cf. ἐξ-αιτησαμένη VII.

4. ἀπο-στή-ναι, to revolt ; cf. ἀφ-ει-στή κε-σαν XII. ; (a) cf. πολεμ-εῖν, εἶ-ναι ; note the infin. suffix is -ναι or -ειν ; (b) cf. κατ-έ-στη VI. ; both forms, showing the theme στα (here lengthened to στη), are 2d aor. ; (c) so κατα-στή-ναι, to stand down, be established.

5. ἀπ-έ-κτειν-ε, he killed : (a) from ἀπο-κτείνω, cf. ἀπο-κτείνων VII., theme κτεν ; (b) 1st aor., cf. παρ-ἡγγειλε XII. ; note, stems in ν, as those in λ, do not form the 1st aor. with the tense suffix σα, but lengthen the vowel of the theme, — ε to ει.

6. τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δέ, some . . . others : on δ as a demons. cf. ὁ δέ VII., ὁ δ' VIII.

7. ἐξ-έ-βαλ-ε, he cast out, banished : (a) from ἐκ-βάλλω, theme βαλ ; (b) note that the theme is the base of the verb here ; the form is 2d aor., cf. 4.

8. ὑπο-λαβὼν τοὺς φεύγ-ο-ντ-ας, undertaking (= receiving) the fleeing ones (= fugitives) : (a) cf. λαβὼν V. ; (b) φεύγοντας, pres. part. from φεύγω, fugio, flee ; on the form cf. ἄρχοντα V.

9. συλ-λέξ-ᾶς . . . ἐ-πολιόρκ-ει, collecting . . . he besieged, i. e. he collected and besieged : for συν-λεγ-σᾶς, from συλ-λέγω ; on συλ for συν cf. συλλαμβάνει VII. ; on ξ = κς, γς, cf. ἀπέδειξε IV. ; on -σᾶς = -σα-ντ-ς. cf.

κινδυνεύσῃς VIII. N.; (b) from πολιορκέω; -ει contracted from ε-ε, as in ἡοθένει II.

10. στρατεύμα, army (acc.); cf. στρατηγός IV.: (a) 3d decl. neut., stem στρατευματ; (b) note absence of case end. and dropping of final τ.

11. ἐπειρά-το, he was trying: (a) from πειρά-ο-μαι, dep.; (b) -ᾶτο for -ά-ετο; -ετο being the same ending as in ἐβούλ-ετο II.

12. κατ-άγειν, to lead down, back: (a) from ἄγω, ago, I lead; (b) on the end. -ειν, cf. 4.

13. ἐκ-πε-πτω-κ-ότ-ᾶς, fallen (i. e. cast) out, exiles: (a) nom. ἐκπεπτω-κώς, contr. from -κοτς; on -ως for -οτς cf. κινδυνεύσῃς for κινδυνευσαντς; (b) perf. partic., here with the force of a noun; theme πτω from πίπτω; (c) πε-, redup.; cf. δε-δο-μένοι XII.; (d) κ-, representing κα, perf. act. suffix, as σα- is of the 1st aor.; (e) -ας as in πάντ-ας IX.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἐν is followed by the dat. case.
2. αἰσθάνομαι, theme αἰσθ, ἴστημι, theme στα, κτείνω, theme κτεν, βάλλω, theme βαλ, λαμβάνω, theme λαβ.
3. ὁ αὐτός = the same.
4. Participles in μανο-ς are declined like ἀγαθός.
5. The infin. endings are -ειν, -ναι.
6. The 2d aor. commonly shows the verb theme; e. g. ἀπο-στή-ναι.
7. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ denote contrasted persons.
8. Verbs in ν and λ form the first aor. without -σ-, but lengthen the thematic vowel.
9. The participle standing without a substantive may have the force of a noun: e. g. ἄρχων, φεύγων.
10. κ and γ at the end of a verb stem, before -σα-, 1st aor. suffix, unite with σ, forming ξ.
11. Neuter stems in τ form the nom. and acc. sing. without a case ending, and by dropping τ.
12. α-ε contracts to α, ά-ε to ά.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                   |         |               |
|-----------------------------------|---------|---------------|
| 1. Declens. of γῆ . . . . .       | H. 144. | G. 38 (συκῆ). |
| 2. Declens. of neut. stems in τ . | H. 181. | G. 50 II.     |

- |  |                 |                  |
|--|-----------------|------------------|
| 3. ὁ αὐτός . . . . .   | H. 265.         | G. 79, 2.        |
| 4. Declens. of οὔτος (neut.) . . .                           | H. 272.         | G. 83.           |
| 5. First aor. of liquid verbs . . .                          | H. 431.         | G. 110, III., 2. |
| 6. Theme in 2d aor. . . . .                                  | H. 435, a.      | G. 110, V.       |
| 7. Attributives used without<br>their substantives . . . . . | H. 621; 965-66. | G. 139 1 and 2.  |
| 8. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ . . . . .                                | H. 654.         | G. 143.          |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ἄγω, I lead.                      | 10. ὁ αὐτός, idem, the same.                  |
| 2. κατ-άγω, I lead down, back.       | 11. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, he . . . he.            |
| 3. αἰσθάνομαι, I perceive.           | 12. πειράομαι, I attempt.                     |
| 4. βάλλω, I throw.                   | 13. πίπτω, I fall.                            |
| 5. ἐκ-βάλλω, I eject, banish.        | 14. πολιορκέω, I besiege.                     |
| 6. ἡ γῆ, earth, land.                | 15. τὸ στρατεύμα, army.                       |
| 7. ὁ ἐκπεπτωκώς, exile.              | 16. συλ-λέγω, I collect.                      |
| 8. ἡ θάλαττα, sea.                   | 17. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα, haec eadem,<br>these same. |
| 9. κατὰ, down; κατὰ γῆν, by<br>land. | 18. φεύγω, I flee; φεύγων, fugitive.          |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὁ δὲ φεύγων, συλλέξῃς τριακοσίων τῶν Πελοποννησίων, πολιορκεῖ τὴν πόλιν. (b) Ὁ μὲν ἀθροίζει τὴν βελτίστην δύναμιν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἑαυτοῦ. (c) Οἱ μὲν πείθονται, οἱ δὲ ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως λάβοιεν βασιλεία. (d) Οὕτως ἐπεμελείτο τῶν φευγόντων, ὥστε πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχαιον.

2. Decline τὸ αὐτὸ στρατεύμα: ὁ αὐτὸς φύλαξ; ἡ αὐτὴ ἀρχή.

3. Translate: (a) They desire to revolt to the brother of the ruling man. (b) All the generals were desiring to besiege those (τούς) in Miletus both by sea and by land. (c) He attempted to lead back the army to (εἰς) the government of which he happened to be satrap. (d) Some he was sending away into the city, others he was collecting in order that he might take Miletus. (e) He was taking care of the best of the barbarians. (f) Perceiving the same things in Miletus, the commander of the army goes up to (-the-side-of the) king.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. ge-ography.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Augment. 2. Tense suffixes. 3. The verb theme. 4. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 5. Declension of participles in -μενο-s. 6. Const. with ἐπιβουλεύω, ἐπιμελέομαι. 7. ἐξ and ἐκ. 8. Reduplication. 9. Analysis of ἐπολιόρκει, ἐπειράτο. 10. τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly, at first. 11. Enclitics. 12. Three uses of the optative. 13. The formation of the nom. of ἐκπεπτωκότας.

## LESSON XIV.

## ANABASIS I. I. 7, 8.

TEXT : καὶ αὕτη αὐτὴ ἄλλη . . . ἦσθάνετο.

## 1. NOTES.

1. αὕτη, this, i. e. the war with Tissaph. : (a) nom. sing., subj. of ἦν agreeing in gender with πρόφασις (fem.) ; (b) masc. οὗτος, neut. τοῦτο ; neut. plur. ταῦτα, cf. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα XIII.

2. ἄλλη πρόφασις, another pretext : (a) ἄλλη (masc. ἄλλος, Lat. alius) decl. like αὐτός ; (b) πρόφασις, declens. and gend. same as δύναμις XI., πόλις XII.

3. ἦν, was (3d sing.) ; ἦσαν, were, XII. ; meaning of ὧν, εἶναι, εἴησαν ?

4. αὐτῷ, to him ; was to him, = he had ; note the possessive force of the dative.

5. τοῦ ἀθροίζειν, of the to-collect = of collecting : (a) -ειν, sign of the inf. act., cf. πολεμ-εῖν XI., λαμβάν-ειν XII. ; (b) note the Greek inf. with the force of an Eng. noun in -ing ; so τοῦ λύειν, of loosening.

6. ἠξίου, he was asking (as a right) ; from ἀξιώω : (a) impf. 3d sing. for ἠξίωε, cf. ἠσθένεε, ἠσθένει II. ; (b) note, ο-ε = ου. Contr. of ε-ω, ε-ε, ε-ει, α-ε, ε-ο ?

7. δο-θῆ-ναι, to be given : (a) from theme δο, Lat. do, dare, cf. δε-δο-μένοι XII. ; (b) θη, long form of θε, 1st aor. pass. suffix ; cf. ἀτιμω-σθεῖς VIII., = ἀτιμωσ-θε-ντες ; (c) -ναι inf. suffix in the aor. pass. (cf. 5 a).

8. οἱ, to himself : cf. similar meaning of ἐαυτῷ XI.

9. ταύτας, these : (a) acc. plur. fem. from οὗτος cf. αὕτη 1 ; (b) note the forms : οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, ταῦτα ; (c) cf. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα XIII., note that the forms of οὗτος do not stand between the art. and its substantive.

10. αὐτῶν, of them ; gen. after ἄρχειν, to be ruler of them.

11. συν-ἐ-πράττε(ν) αὐτῷ, co-operated with him : (a) from συμ-πράττω, theme πρᾶγ ; ( ) final ν because the following word begins with a vowel, cf. ἦθροισεν XI. ; (c) αὐτῷ, dat. following σύν (with) in the verb.

12. πρὸς ἑαυτόν, toward, against himself ; cf. ἐαυτῷ, to himself, XI. : note, these words stand between ἐπιβουλήν and its art., cf. παρ' ἐαυτῷ XI.

13. ἦσθάνε-το, he was perceiving : (a) from αἰσθάνο-μαι, dep., cf. προ-αισθό-μενος XIII. ; (b) note, αι augments to η ; augment of α, ε, ο ! (c) tense of ἦσθάνετο ?

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

- οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, this, that.
- ἄλλος, another ; ὁ ἄλλος, the other, declined like αὐτός.
- πρόφασι-ς, πόλι-ς, δύναμι-ς, fem. 3d decl., are declined alike.
- εἰμί, am, is conjugated irregularly.
- The Greek, like the Latin, has a dat. of possessor.
- The infin. may be used as an indeclinable noun and take the art. as a modifier, representing any case.
- ο-ε = ου. θε, 1st passive suffix.
- ἄρχειν, a verb of ruling, governs the genitive case.
- σύν, with, in composition with a verb governs the dat. case.
- A prepositional phrase may take the attributive position.
- αι augments to η.
- οὗτος does not stand between a noun and its art., e. g. οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Mutes before σ . . . . .	H. 54.	G. 16, 2.
2. Contraction of ο-ε . . . . .	H. 37.	G. 9, 2.
3. Declension of οὗτος . . . . .	H. 272.	G. 83.
4. Declension of ἄλλος . . . . .	H. 267.	G. 84, 3.
5. Position of οὗτος . . . . .	H. 673 ; 670.	G. 142, 4.
6. Genitive with ἄρχειν . . . . .	H. 741.	G. 171, 3.
7. Dative with verbs comp. with σύν, ἐπί	H. 775.	G. 187.
8. Infinitive used as a noun . . . . .	H. 959.	G. 262, 2.



## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ἄλλος, another.                 | 8. οὐκ, not.                         |
| 2. ἀξιόω, I claim, ask as a right. | 9. οὗτος, this, that.                |
| 3. ἄρχω, I rule.                   | 10. ἡ πρόφασις, pretext.             |
| 4. ἀν, again.                      | 11. πράττω, I do, act, make.         |
| 5. ἡ ἐπιβουλή, conspiracy.         | 12. συμπράττω, I do with, cooperate. |
| 6. ἦν, erat, was.                  |                                      |
| 7. οἱ, sibi, to himself.           |                                      |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Declension of πρόφασις, αὐτός, στρατεύμα, βασιλεύς, πάσις, ἐπιβουλή, λυόμενος (loosing).
- Translate: (a) Ἦσθητο. (b) Ἦσθάνοντο οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες αὐτοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῇ πόλει βουλευομένους. (c) Στρατεύματα ὅτι βέλτιστα συλλέξαντες, ἐβούλοντο ταύτην τὴν πόλιν κατὰ γῆν πολιορκεῖν. (d) Ἐτύχανεν οὖν ἡ ἄλλη δύναμις τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν ἀνδρῶν αὐτὸν μάλλον φιλοῦσα ἢ τὸν βασιλιά. (e) Ἄλλ' ὁ Κῦρος φίλος ἦν καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ ταῖς φυλακαῖς.
- Translate: (a) In order that the king might take the army as unprepared as possible. (b) If he may be able to have those cities instead of the king. (c) He was not a friend to the ruling Artaxerxes. (d) But he was taking care of collecting an army. (e) He accordingly made (ποιέω) that pretext.
- Translate and analyze: δοθῆναι, λυθῆναι, ἀτιμασθεῖς, δοθεῖς, ἐπειρᾶτο, ἡξίου.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- The liquid consonants.
- Formation of the 1st aor. of verbs ending in a liquid.
- Attributive and predicate positions.
- Noun accent.
- Accent in the first declens.
- Accent of monosyllables in the third declens.
- The tense suffixes; 1st pass. suffix.
- Nom. of participles whose stems end in -στ, -αντ, -οντ, -εντ.
- Time denoted by the tenses of the indicative.
- Modes in final clauses.
- The unites, the three classes and three orders.
- Open and close vowels.

## LESSON XV.

## ANABASIS I. I. 8, 9.

TEXT: Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε . . . φυγὰς ἦν.

## 1. NOTES.

- Τισσαφέρνει πολεμοῦντα, (him) warring with Tissaphernes: (a) dat. after πολεμοῦντα; for Τισσαφέρνεισ-ι, on the dropping of σ cf. Τισσαφέρνους XII.<sup>1</sup>; (b) for the acc. cf. V. N. 3; (c) πολεμοῦντα for πολεμέο-ντ-α, from πολεμέ-ω, cf. πολεμεῖν XI.; on the form cf. ἄρχοντα V.
- στρατεύματ-α, armies: (a) on the gender and formation of the nom. cf. στρατεύμα XIII.; (b) -α, ending of nom. acc. neut. plur., cf. a in Latin, e. g. regn-a, gener-a, cornu-a.
- δαπανᾶν, for δαπανά-ειν, to be wasting money: from δαπανά-ω; note, -ά-ειν = -ᾶν.
- οὐδὲν ἤχθε-το, in-no-wise, not-at-all was angry: (a) acc. sing. neut. used adverbially, cf. τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII.; (b) nom. masc. οὐδεῖς, nullus; (c) from ἄχθο-μαι, dep.; on the aug. cf. ἡσθένει II.
- αὐτῶν πολεμού-ντ-ων, iis bellantibus, whilst, because, they were warring: on the gen. abs., cf. XII. N. 7.
- τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμούς, the (being-born) accruing revenues: note the attrib. position of the partic., cf. βασιλεύοντα IX.; theme of γι-γνο-μέν-ους? cf. I.
- ὧν Τισσαφέρνους κτέ., which, of (i. e. belonging to) Tissaphernes, he happened to be having: (a) ὧν for ᾧς (acc. fem.); note that the relative here agrees with its antecedent even in case.
- Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κτέ., in the Cherronesus, the directly opposite Abydos: (a) X, Eng. ch, cf. X in Xmas, for Ch(rist)mas; (b) 2d decl. fem.; (c) τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου is attrib. to Χερρονήσῳ; note that the attrib.

<sup>1</sup> This dropping of σ may be compared with the change of s to r in Latin in such words as arbos, arboris; genus, generis.

positions are : art., attrib., noun, or noun, art., attrib. ;<sup>1</sup> (d) Αβύδου, genitive with the locative adv. ἀντιέρας.

9. τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, *this way, thus, as follows* : acc. sing. used adverbially, cf. τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII., οὐδέν 4 a ; nom. ὅδε ὁ τρόπος ; note, ὅδε like οὗτος (XIV. n. 9) does not take the attrib. position.

10. φυγάς for φυγαδ-ς, *fugitive* ; same theme (φῦγ) as in φεύγοντας XIII. : (a) note loss of δ before σ ; so in Lat., *virtus* for *virtut* s ; (b) dat. plur. φυγαδ-σι becomes φυγάσι.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The person *against whom one fights* is expressed by the dative case.
2. ε-ο contracts to ου.
3. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. ends in α.
4. ά-ειν contracts to αν.
5. The accus. is used adverbially in certain expressions.
6. The attributive position is immediately after the article, — either between the article and substantive, or after the substantive with the article preceding.
7. Participles and prepositional phrases, like adjectives, may stand in the attributive position.
8. Adverbs of place are followed by the gen. case.
9. τ and δ before σ are dropped.
10. Stems in -εσ, 3d decl., lose ε between vowels.
11. Verb themes ending in ε contract ε with a following vowel.
12. The relative may occasionally agree with its antecedent even in case.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of βασιλεία, ἀρχή, γῆ.
2. Declens. of βίος, στρατηγός, τρόπος.
3. Declens. of ἀγαθός, αὐτός, ἄλλος, ὅ.
4. Declens. of πόλις, δύναμις, πρόφασις, στράτευμα, ἀνὴρ, βασιλεύς.
5. Declens. of φύλαξ (for φυλακ-ς) H. 174. G. 50.
6. Attributive positions . . . . H. 666 ; 668. G. 142, 1, 2.
7. Dative of association . . . . H. 772. G. 186, n. 1.

<sup>1</sup> The teacher should illustrate this point clearly and forcibly.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀμφί, <i>about</i> .                    | 5. ὁ δασμός, <i>revenue</i> .              |
| 2. ἀντιέρας, <i>directly opposite</i> .    | 6. νομίζω, <i>puto, I think</i> .          |
| 3. ἄχθομαι, <i>I am angry</i> .            | 7. ὅδε, <i>this, the following</i> .       |
| 4. δαπανᾶω, <i>I spend (waste) money</i> . | 8. οὐδείς, οὐδέν, <i>nobody, nothing</i> . |
|  | 9. ὁ τρόπος, <i>manner</i> .               |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἐνόμιζε, πολεμοῦντα, στρατεύματα, δαπανῶ, ἤχθετο, πολεμοῦντων, συνελέγετο, φυγάς.

2. Translate: (a) Ὁ φυγάς οὐ<sup>1</sup> βασιλεύσει. (b) Τοῦτο τὸ στράτευμα βούλεται τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα βασιλέα εἶναι. (c) Ἐβούλοντο οὖν ἄρχειν τῶν στρατευμάτων. (d) Οὐκ ἄχθομαι τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀναβαινόντων ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν.

3. Translate: (a) I wish to be opposite that city. (b) The commander makes his levy in this manner. (c) He takes 300 men of the Greeks and of the barbarians as many as possible. (d) He collects (aor. part.) his armies, generals, heavy-armed men of the Greeks, and guardsmen [and] besieges the Ionian cities both by land and by sea.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adverbial accusative.
2. Accent in contraction.
3. Case with verbs of *fighting*.
4. Contraction of ά-ειν.
5. Quantity of ω in πόλεως, πόλεων.
6. Agreement of the relative.
7. Mutes before σ.
8. Augment of α, ε.
9. Enclitics.
10. Construction with verbs of *ruling*.
11. Tenses in the subjunctive and optative.
12. Accent in declension.

<sup>1</sup> = οὐκ, but preferred when the foll. word begins with a consonant.

## LESSON XVI.

## ANABASIS I. I. 9.

TEXT: τούτῳ συγγενόμενος . . . πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι.

## 1. NOTES.

1. τούτῳ συγγενόμενος, associated with him [and], lit. becoming associated with that one: (a) dat. follows σύν in composition, cf. συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ XIV.; (b) from σύν + γίγνομαι (cf. I); note *νγ* becomes *γγ* = *ηγ*; cf. ἐτύχανε III., παρήγγειλε XII.; (c) γί-γνο-μαι, theme *γεν*; tense in συγγενόμενος!

2. ἠγάσθη τε, both admired [and, etc.]: (a) from ἄγα-μαι, dep., here aor. pass. with act. meaning (*σ* being inserted before the pass. suffix); cf. δοθῆ-ναι XIV.; note, the passive of deponents has an active meaning; (b) τε, enclitic; cf. τε XI.; τέ . . . καί = καί . . . καί (XIII.), both . . . and.

3. δίδω-σι(ν), he gives: (a) from δίδω-μι, cf. δοθῆναι XIV., δεδομένοι XII.; (b) -μι, -σι indicate pres. ind. act. 1st and 3d sing., like the more usual -ω, -ει; so ἀποδείκνυμι, ἀποδείκνυσι; ἴστημι, ἴστησι; (c) on (ν) cf. ἤθροίζεν XI., συνέπραττεν XIV.; theme of δίδωσιν?

4. ὁ δὲ λαβόν, but he took, lit. taking: (a) on δ as a demons. cf. ὁ δὲ VII.; (b) on λαβόν cf. V.; theme? tense here? pres. ind.!

5. συν-έ-λεξε(ν), for συν-έ-λεγ-σε(ν), he collected: cf. συλλογή XII., συλλέξας XIII.: (a) on ξ = κσ, γσ, cf. ἀπέδειξε IV., συλλέξας XIII.; tense here? (b) from συλ-λέγω; συλ for συν, cf. συλ-λαμβάνει VII.

6. ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων from, with, these means: note the order, τούτων τῶν, cf. ταύτας XIV.; χρημάτων decl. like στρατεύμα.

7. ὀρμώ-μενο-ς, rushing: (a) from ὀρμά-ω (cf. δαπανά-ω XV.), I start; ὀρμάο-μαι, I start myself, rush; the mid. voice as in ἀθροίζονται IV.; (b) -ω for α-ο; on α for α-ε, cf. ἐπειράτο XIII.

8. Θραξί . . . οἰκοῦσι, with the Thracians, the beyond the Hellespont dwelling, i. e. the Th. who dwell beyond the H.; on the attrib. position cf. Χερρονήσῳ . . . Ἀβύδου XV.: (a) nom. Θραξί (for Θραξ-ς), cf. φύλαξ, Gram. Less. XV.; on the dat. cf. Τισσαφέρνει XV.; (b) οἰκοῦσι for οἰκέο-ντ-σι, dat. plur.; on ε-ο contracted to ου, cf. πολεμοῦντα XV.; on ντ lost before σ, cf. ἀτιμασθείς VIII.

9. ὠφέλει, he was aiding: from ὠφελέ-ω; note, ω absorbs the augment ε-, and remains unchanged; on -ει (= -ε-ε), cf. ἠσθένει II.

10. χρήματ-α συν-ε-βάλλο-ντο, they were (for their sake) contributing means: (a) cf. χρημάτων 6; (b) from συμ-βάλλω for συν-βάλλω; so συμ-πράττω, συμ-βουλεύω; on the theme of βάλλω, cf. ἐξέβαλεν XIII.

11. στρατιωτῶν, of (the) soldiers, cf. στρατηγός, στρατεύμα: (a) nom. στρατιώτης, 1st decl. masc.; so ὀπλίτης, ὀπλίτης V.; note the accent of the gen. plur. 1st decl.

12. ἐκοῦσαι, willing, fem.; from ἐκῶν, masc. sing.; fem. ἐκοῦσᾶ, cf. φιλοῦσα IX.; ἐκόντες, they (masc.) willing.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dative follows verbs compounded with σύν.
2. συν becomes συγ before γ, pronounced *sunγ*.
3. Theme of γίγνομαι, γεν; λαμβάνω, λαβ; βάλλω, βαλ.
4. Deponents retain their active meaning even in passive forms.
5. -μι and -σι, personal endings, = -ω and -ει.
6. The impf. 3d sing. ending in ε adds ν before a word beginning with a vowel.
7. νλ becomes λλ; νπ, νβ become μπ, μβ.
8. Final κ or γ in verb themes unites with σα in the 1st aor., forming ξα.
9. α-ο, α-ω = ω; α-ε = ᾶ.
10. Final κ or γ in noun stems unites with ε (nom.) or -σι (dat. plur.), forming ξ, ξι.
11. Participles drop ντ before the dat. plur. end. -σι.
12. ω does not change in augment.
13. The genit. plur. 1st decl. ends in -ῶν (circumflex accent<sup>1</sup>).
14. Adjectives and participles in -ων have the fem. in -ουσα.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                    |         |              |
|------------------------------------|---------|--------------|
| 1. ν before other consonants . . . | H. 55.  | G. 16, 5, 6. |
| 2. ν movable . . . . .             | H. 87.  | G. 13.       |
| 3. Declens. of πολίτης . . . . .   | H. 145. | G. 37, 1.    |

<sup>1</sup> Except the feminine of barytone adjectives and participles in ος, which takes the same accent as the masc. and neut.

- |  |            |              |
|--|------------|--------------|
| 4. Declens. of φλέψ (for φλέβ-ς) . . . . . | H. 174.    | G. 50.       |
| 5. The -μ conjugation . . . . .            | H. 311.    | G. 93, 3.    |
| 6. Passive deponents . . . . .             | H. 497.    | G. 88, 2 N.  |
| 7. Circumstantial participle . . . . .     | H. 968-69. | G. 277, 1-6. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ἄγαμαι, <i>I admire.</i>                                     | 9. συμ-βάλλω, <i>I contribute.</i>                       |
| 2. ὁ δαρεικός, <sup>1</sup> <i>a daric.</i>                     | 10. ἡ τροφή, <i>support.</i>                             |
| 3. ἑκῶν, ἑκοῦσα, <i>willing.</i>                                | 11. ὑπέρ, <sup>2</sup> <i>beyond, above.</i>             |
| 4. μύριοι, 10,000.  | 12. τὸ χρῆμα, <i>thing; τὰ χρήματα,</i><br><i>means.</i> |
| 5. οἰκέω, <i>I live, dwell in.</i>                              | 13. τὸ χρῆσιον, <i>money.</i>                            |
| 6. ὀρμάω, <i>I start.</i>                                       | 14. ὠφελέω, <i>I aid.</i>                                |
| 7. ὁ στρατιώτης, <i>soldier.</i>                                |  |
| 8. συγ-γίγνομαι, <i>come into inter-</i><br><i>course with.</i> |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Οὗτος ὁ Θράξ δᾶρεικούς δύο συμβάλλεται. (b) Ἐκῶν ὠφελήσω τὸν αὐτὸν στρατιώτην. (c) Οἰκῶ ὑπὲρ πόλιν τὴν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. (d) Πολεμήσει σὺν στρατιώταις μυρίοις. (e) Ἐκῶν δίδωμι τὰ χρήματα εἰς τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἀνδρός.

2. Translate: (a) These men were contributing money for the support of the guards. (b) But the kings living in that city do not perceive the plots against them. (c) The army deemed it right (ἀξίως) that 10,000 darics should be given to the generals. (d) I do not wish to live in the kingdom of that king. (e) These men were not willing.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Sound of γγ, γχ. 2. Enclitics, proclitics. 3. ν before consonants; σύν in composition. 4. Uses of the pres. indic. 5. Declens. of χρῆσιον. 6. Case with ἀπό. 7. Declens. of χρῆμα. 8. Formation of 1st aor. stem. 9. Position of οὗτος. 10. Middle voice. 11. Case with verbs of fighting. 12. Analysis of ἐπολέμει. 13. Attributive position. 14. Contraction of ε-ο; ντ before σ. 15. Accent of στρατιωτῶν.

<sup>1</sup> A Persian gold coin equal to about \$3.75.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *super*, Eng. *over*.

## LESSON XVII.

## ANABASIS I. I. 9, 10.

TEXT: τοῦτο δ' αὖ . . . περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.

## 1. NOTES.

1. τοῦτο, *this*; join with τὸ στράτευμα, *this army*: separated from its noun for the sake of emphasis, — *this army, as well as the preceding.*

2. τρεφό-μενο-ν, *being supported*: from τρέφω, cf. τροφή XVI.

3. ἐ-λάνθαν-ε(ν), *escaped notice*: from λανθάνω, theme λαθ; cf. λαμβάνω, theme λαβ.

4. ξένος ἄν, *being a guest, friend*: on the partic. with τυγχάνω, cf. παρών III.

5. ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν, *by the at-home adversaries*: (a) note the meaning of ὑπό followed by the gen.; cf. the Lat. abl. of the agent with *ab*; (b) οἴκοι, *adv.*, with the position and force of an attrib. adj., cf. παρ' ἑαυτῷ XI., κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου XV.; on the meaning cf. οἰκέω, *I inhabit*; (c) ἀντιστασιωτῶν from ἀντιστασιώτης, 1st decl. masc., cf. στρατιώτης XVI. N. 11.

6. αἰτεῖ for αἰτέ-ει, *he demands*; from αἰτέω, cf. ἐξ-αιτη-σαμένη VII.: on ἐ-ει = εἶ, cf. πολεμεῖν XI.

7. αὐτόν . . . ξένους, μισθόν: objects of αἰτεῖ; αὐτόν, *i. e.* Cyrus, upon whom the demand is made; ξένους, μισθόν, the objects demanded.

8. εἰς, *into, about* (with numerals): so εἰς τριακόσιοι στρατηγοί. *about 300 generals.*

9. ξένους, *hired soldiers, mercenaries*: on ξένος, *guest, visitor*, cf. 4.

10. τριῶν μηνῶν, *of three months*: (a) nom. τρεῖς μῆν-ες; so τρεῖς παῖδες, *three boys*. τριῶν παίδων, *of three boys*; (b) cf. Lat. *tres*, *three*; (c) μηνῶν, nom. sing. μῆν, cf. Lat. *mensis*; on the nom. without case end. *ς*, cf. μήτηρ VII., ἀνήρ XII. vocab.

11. ὡς περι-γεν-ό-μενο-ς ἂν, *on-the-ground-that he would conquer, etc.*, [if he received aid from Cyrus]: (a) γεν, theme of what verb? tense here? (b) γενόμενος, *becoming*; συγ-γενόμενος, *being with*; περιγεγόμενος, *getting around, becoming superior to*; (c) ἂν, not translatable, but always

used in conclusions after conditions referring to the future in a vague or uncertain (and less vivid) manner.<sup>1</sup>

12. ἀντιστασιωτῶν . cf. 5 ; note the gen. following περιγεγόμενος ; cf. gen. after ἄρχειν XIV.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives are separated from their substantives for emphasis.
2. ν is added to the impf. indic. act. 3d sing. of verbs when the foll. word has an initial vowel.
3. λανθάνω, theme λαθ; λαμβάνω, theme λαβ; τυγχάνω, theme τυχ; γίγνομαι, theme γεν.
4. τυγχάνω is foll. by the partic. where the infin. might be expected.
5. ξένος has two different meanings: *guest, visitor; mercenary soldier.* Mercenaries were called *friends* euphemistically
6. ὑπό with the gen. of a noun denoting a *person* signifies the agent.
7. Adverbs, like partic. and prep. phrases, have the position and value of attrib. adj.
8. αἰτέω is foll. by the acc. of the *thing desired* and that of the person upon whom the demand is made.
9. εἰς with numerals means *about, approximately.*
10. Stems in -ν, 3d decl., like those in -ρ, do not take the end. ς in the nom. sing.
11. ἄν used in conclusions after conditions referring in a vague or uncertain manner to future time.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |                           |                    |
|--|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ντ, νδ, νθ before σ . . . . .                   | H. 56.                    | G. 16, 6, N. 1, 2. |
| 2. ν and ντ, νδ, νθ before -σι, dat. plur. . . . . | H. 57.                    | G. 16, 6, N. 1, 2. |
| 3. Two classes of feminines, 1st decl. . . . .     | H. 137-140.               | G. 37, 2.          |
| 4. Nom. sing. 3d decl. . . . .                     | H. 168.                   | G. 46, 2, 3, 4.    |
| 5. Decl. of λύων . . . . .                         | H. 241, <sup>2</sup> 242. | G. 68.             |

<sup>1</sup> The teacher should point out, in connection with this lesson, the signification of the phrases *fut. vivid*, and *fut. less vivid*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit the 3d sentence.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. αἰτέω, <i>I beg, demand.</i>                        | 9. ὁ ξένος, <i>guest; mercenary.</i>                  |
| 2. ἄν, used in the conclusion of less vivid fut. cond. | 10. οἶκοι, <i>at home.</i>                            |
| 3. ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης, <i>adversary.</i>                  | 11. περί, <i>around.</i>                              |
| 4. δισχίλιοι, 2,000.                                   | 12. περι-γίγνομαι, <i>I become superior, conquer.</i> |
| 5. ἔρχομαι, <i>I come.</i>                             | 13. πιέζω, <i>I press.</i>                            |
| 6. λανθάνω, <i>I escape notice.</i>                    | 14. τρεῖς, <i>three.</i>                              |
| 7. ὁ μήν, <i>month.</i>                                | 15. τρέφω, <i>I support.</i>                          |
| 8. ὁ μισθός, <i>pay.</i>                               | 16. ὑπό, <sup>1</sup> <i>under, by.</i>               |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Αὕτη δ' οὖν οὕτω τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπιβουλεύουσα λανθάνει ἡ πόλις. (b) Ξενίας δ' ὁ Παρράσιος φίλος ὧν ἐτύχανε τῷ σατράπῃ, καὶ ἀτιμασθεῖς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει οἰκούντων ἀνέβη πρὸς βασιλέα. (c) Ἡισθάνετο; ἦσθετο. Ἥιτει τὸν ἄρχοντα τὸν αὐτὸν μισθόν. (d) Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν.

2. Translate: (a) Clearchus, being a fugitive, was a general of the Greeks in the army of Cyrus. (b) But he took (aor. partic.) the money [and] was desiring to spend it for the support of the Grecian force. (c) He collected an army of 2,000 men by-means-of (ἀπό) these resources (χρῆμα). (d) The guards indeed thus make the levy. (e) And he was deliberating in order that he might take the cities as unprepared as possible.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Analysis of πιεζόμενοι. 2. Constructions after αἰτέω. 3. Constructions with verbs of *fighting*; verbs of *superiority*; with compounds in σύν; with ἐπιβουλεύω. 4. ὑπό with the genitive. 5. Accent in the 3d decl. 6. Vowel contraction. 7. Circumstantial participles. 8. ν before other consonants. 9. Declens. of στρατιώτης, σατράπης. 10. Three uses of the optative.

<sup>1</sup> παρά = *by, by the side of*; ὑπό = *by* only in expressions of agency.

## LESSON XVIII.

## ANABASIS I. I. 10.

TEXT : ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν . . . τρεφόμενον στρατεύμα.

## 1. NOTES.

1. δίδωσιν . . . καὶ δέεται, gives . . . and wants of, asks, him: (a) cf. δίδωσιν XVI. ; -ν movable as in ἤθροισεν XI., ἐξέβαλεν XIII. ; (b) from δέομαι, dep., I want; for δέ-ε-ται, ἐ-ε = εἶ as in ἐπεμελείτο XI., ἐποιεῖτο XII.

2. μὴ καταλύσ-αι, not to loosen down, let down, come to terms with, **ne condiciones ferat**: (a) μὴ, not, corresponding to the Lat. **ne** in many of its uses; (b) 1st aor. inf. act. from καταλύω; ending -αι; (c) on the pres. act. ending, cf. πολεμῆν; aor. pass., cf. δοθῆναι; 2d aor. act., cf. ἀποστήναι.

3. πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν ἄν, before, until; πρόσθεν = previously, but need not be translated when followed by πρὶν.

4. αὐτῷ συμβουλευσθαι, should consult with him: (a) αὐτῷ dat. as in συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ XIV. ; (b) from συμβουλεύω, I advise with; mid. I advise with (for my interest); συμ for συν as in συμπράττω XIV. vocab.; (c) -ηται indicates the subjunct., cf. δύνηται VIII. ; σ- (for σα-) indicates the 1st aor. stem; (d) note, πρὶν ἄν followed by the subjunct; cf. the Lat. **antequam consuluerit**; had the main verb been in a secondary tense, πρὶν might have been followed by the opt. without ἄν.

5. τὸ ἐν Θεσσαλίᾳ στρατεύμα, the army in Thessaly: on the attrib. position of ἐν Θεσσαλίᾳ, cf. παρ' ἑαυτῷ XI.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

- ν is added to the ending -σι before words beginning with a vowel.
- δέομαι is followed by the gen. of the person of whom a request is made.
- μὴ corresponds in many of its uses to the Lat. **ne**.

- The 1st aor. inf. act. ends in -σ-αι.
- πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν, until.
- The subjunct. is used after πρὶν ἄν, when it is dependent upon a primary tense.
- The opt. without ἄν may stand after πρὶν when it is dependent upon a secondary tense.
- The ending -ηται indicates the subjunct. 3d sing.
- The dat. is used after compounds with σύν.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- Declension of stems ending in a lingual mute: θῆς, ἐλπῖς, γέρων H. 176, 177. G. 50.
- Declension of φίλιος . . . H. 222. G. 62 (ἄξιος).
- Construction with αἰτέω . . . H. 724. G. 164.
- Construction with δέομαι . . . H. 743, a. G. 172, 2 N. 1.
- Relat. clauses introduced by until H. 921. G. 239, 240.

## 4. VOCABULARY A.

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. δέομαι, I want, ask.                  | 5. πρὶν, until.               |
| 2. ἔξ. six.                              | 6. πρόσθεν, before.           |
| 3. καταλύω, I loosen, come to agreement. | 7. συμβουλεύω, I advise with. |
| 4. μὴ, not.                              | 8. τετρακισχίλιοι, 4,000.     |

## VOCABULARY B.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| λύω, I loose.                         | λύοι, <sup>5</sup> he might loose.     |
| λύει, <sup>1</sup> he looses.         | λύοιεν, <sup>6</sup> they might loose. |
| ἔλυε(ν), <sup>2</sup> he was loosing. | λύειν, <sup>7</sup> to loose.          |
| λύσω, I shall loose.                  | λίσειν, to be about to loose.          |
| λύσει, <sup>3</sup> he will loose.    | λύσαι <sup>8</sup> to loose.           |
| ἔλυσε(ν), <sup>4</sup> he loosed.     | λύων, <sup>9</sup> loosing.            |

<sup>1</sup> cf. ἀναβαίνειν V.

<sup>2</sup> " ἐτύγχανε III.

<sup>3</sup> " βασιλεύσει VIII.

<sup>4</sup> " ἐποίησε III.

<sup>5</sup> " ἐπιβουλεύει VI.

<sup>6</sup> " ἔχοιεν XI.

<sup>7</sup> cf. λαμβάνειν XII.

<sup>8</sup> " καταλύσαι XVIII.

<sup>9</sup> " ἔχων V.

λίονσα, <sup>1</sup>	} loosing.	λύσομαι, I shall loose (for myself).
λίον,		λύσεται, he will loose (for himself).
λύσων, about to loose.		ἐλίσατο, he loosed (for himself).
λύσᾶς, <sup>2</sup> loosing.		ἐλύσαντο, they loosed (for themselves).
* λυομαι, am loosed.		
λύεται, he is loosed.		λύηται, <sup>4</sup> he may loose, be loosed.
λύονται, they are loosed.		λύσῃται, " " "
ἐλύετο, <sup>3</sup> he was being loosed.		λυθῆναι, <sup>5</sup> to be loosed.
ἐλύοντο, they were being loosed.		λυθείς, <sup>6</sup> loosed.

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Decline μισθός, ἀντιστασιώτης, τρεφόμενος, λαβών.
- Translate: (a) Καὶ ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν μὴ πρόσθεν ἀναβαίνειν πρὶν στρατεύμα ἀθροίξει. (b) Τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ δίδωσι στρατεύματα ὡς Τισσαφέρνους αὐτῷ ἐπιβουλεύοντος. (c) Τοῦτῃ τῷ ἀνδρὶ δώσω δύο μηνῶν μισθόν. (d) Οὐ συμβουλεύεται τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πρόσθεν πρὶν ἂν τὴν συλλογὴν ποιῆται.
- Translate: (a) Cyrus escapes notice [in] collecting his armies. (b) Being hard-pressed by the soldiers, they assemble in (= into) the cities. (c) The king thinks that his brother is spending-money on his armies. (d) He perceives the plots against himself and tries to arrest the men. (e) They do not wish to revolt to Cyrus.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- The declension of ἀνὴρ; of πᾶς.
- Comparison.
- Formation of the adverb.
- ὅτι, ὡς with superlatives.
- Some uses of the optative mode.
- Time denoted by the tenses of the subjunct., opt., infin.
- Classes of feminines 1st declens.
- Subjunct. and optat. after πρὶν.
- ν and ντ before σ.
- Nom. of stems in -οντ, -εντ, -αντ.

1 " φιλοῦσα IX.

2 " κινδυνεύσᾶς VIII.

3 cf. συνελέγετο XV.

4 " δύνηται VIII.

\* Middle or passive.

5 " δοθῆναι XIV.

6 " ἀτιμασθείς VIII.

## LESSON XIX.

## ANABASIS I. I. 11.

## 1. NOTES.

- ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ, being (acc. sing.) a guest-friend to him (since he was his guest-friend); on the dat. cf. αὐτῷ XIV in init.
- ὄντα . . . λαβόντα, being . . . having taken: from ᾧν, λαβών, stems ὄντ, λαβοντ; note, the nom. is formed without the case end. σ, and ο is lengthened to ω, τ disappearing, since it may never stand at the end of a word.
- ὅτι πλείστους, quam plurimos, cf. XII.
- παραγενέσθαι, to become beside, come, arrive: -σθαι, infin. ending mid. voice; γεν theme of what verb? tense here?
- ὡς . . . βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, as wishing (wishing, as he said) to conduct a campaign for himself; to march: (a) on ὡς, cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν VII.; (b) στρατεύεσθαι pres. inf. mid., cf. 4.
- ὡς παρεχόντων Πισιδῶν, on the ground that, etc.: on the gen. abs. cf. ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους XII.
- τῇ ἐαυτοῦ χώρᾳ, to-the of-himself country: (a) note, ἐαυτοῦ stands between the art. and its substant., i. e. in the attrib. position; (b) note the forms ἐαυτοῦ, ἐαυτῷ ἐαυτόν.
- ἔλθ-εἶν, to come: (a) 2d aor. infin. act., from the theme ἐλθ (ἐλυθ); ind. ἦλθε, he came; note that here ε augments to η; cf. εἶχε XII.; (b) the assumed pres. is ἔρχομαι. dep. cf. XVII. vocab.
- ὡς πολεμή-σων, as being about (intending, as he said) to fight, cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν VII.
- φυγά-σι, for φυγάδ-σι; on δ dropped before σ, cf. φυγάς XV.
- τοῖς Μιλησίων, namely, the (fugitives) of the Milesians: Μιλησίων, attrib. position, cf. τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι XVI.
- ἐποίουν οὕτως, thus they were doing: (a) note, οὕτω becomes οὕτως before an initial vowel; (b) ἐποίουν, contr. from ἐποίη-ον; on ε-ο = ου cf. πολεμοῦντα XV., πολεμοῦντων XV.; -ον, end. of impf. ind. act. 3d plur.; so ἔλυον, they were loosening.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in *-οντ* form the nominative in *-ων*.
2. The dative used with the verb *to be* may indicate possession.
3. *-σθαι* is the ending of the infin. mid. voice.
4. *ὡς* with the participle marks something as merely alleged, which may or may not be true.
5. The possessive *ἑαυτοῦ* stands in the attrib. posit.
6. *ε* may augment to *η* as well as to *ει*.
7. The pres., 2d aor., and fut. act. infinitives end in *-ειν*.
8. *ἦλθε*, *he came*, has no present, but assumes *ἔρχομαι* instead.
9. *ὡς* with the fut. partic. indicates an intention as stated, whether assumed or real.
10. Participles, prepositional phrases, adverbs, and genitives are found in the attrib. position.
11. The ending *-ον* indicates the impf. ind. act. 3d plur.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *φιλῶν* (loving) . . . . H. 243. G. 69.
2. Declension of *ἑαυτοῦ* (sing.) . . . . H. 266. G. 80.
3. Mute-, liquid-, and vowel-verbs . . . . H. 309. G. 92, 3.
4. Formative elements of the verb . . . . H. 353. G. 93 (read).
5. The infinitive endings . . . . . H. 381. G. 117.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>ἑαυτοῦ</i> , of himself.      | 5. <i>παρ-έχω</i> , I furnish, cause.        |
| 2. <i>ἦλθε(ν)</i> , he came.        | 6. <i>τὸ πρᾶγμα</i> , affair, plur. trouble. |
| 3. <i>κελεύω</i> , I order.         | 7. <i>στρατεύομαι</i> , I march.             |
| 4. <i>παρα-γίγνομαι</i> , I arrive. | 8. <i>ἡ χώρα</i> , country.                  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate and analyze: *κελεύσας, κελεύοιεν, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευον, ἐκέλευσεν*.
2. Translate: (a) *Καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τὰ γιγνόμενα χρῦσία βασιλεῖ πέμπων, ἐλάνθανεν ἐπιβουλεύων.* (b) *Οἱ δ' οὖν ἐκόντες χρήματα συνέβαλλον εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῆς πόλεως.* (c) *Πράγματα παρείχον<sup>1</sup> τῇ βασιλείᾳ.*
3. Translate: (a) But they were collecting men, as if the Pisidians were causing trouble. (b) I will war against Tissaphernes with the soldiers of these cities. (c) He announced to the guards in the city<sup>2</sup> to take as good men as possible, and thus they were doing. (d) That country was formerly the kingdom of Artaxerxes<sup>3</sup> the king. (e) Being his brother, he was asking-as-his-right (that) those armies be given to himself rather than to another man.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *ὡς* with participles.
2. The infinitive endings.
3. Constructions after *δέομαι, αἰτεῖν*.
4. Modes after *πρίν*.
5. The orders and classes of mutes.
6. *φ* in *ἀφικνοῖτο*.
7. Gen. and dat. sing. 1st declens.
8. Analysis of *ἐποίουν*, of *φυγάσι*.
9. Demonstrative use of the article.
10. The formation of the verb.
11. Mutes before *ς*.
12. Uses of the accus. plur. of *φίλιος* (3 genders).

<sup>1</sup> Why not *παρείχον*? Cf. *ἀπῆλθε* VIII.

<sup>2</sup> Put the prepos. phrase in the attrib. posit.

<sup>3</sup> First declension.



## LESSON XX. — REVIEW.

[In preparing this Review Lesson, follow closely the directions given with Lesson X.]

1. **TEXT**: καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῶ (l. 1. 5), through Chapter I.

## 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. (a) Open and close vowels, H. 12; G. 2 n. (b) Gamma nasal, H. 20; G. 6, 1. (c) Contraction of vowels, H. 37; G. 9, 1, 2, 3. (d) Mutes before σ, H. 54; G. 16, 2. (e) ν and σ before other consonants, H. 55-57; G. 16, 5, 6. (f) ν movable, H. 87; G. 13. (g) Enclitics, H. 113; G. 27.

2. **First Declens.**: (a) Two classes of feminines, H. 137-140; G. 37, 2. (b) Gen. and dat. sing., H. 140; G. 37, 2. (c) Accent, H. 141; G. 25, 2. (d) Declens. of πολίτης, H. 145-147; G. 37, 1.

3. **Third Declens.**: (a) Nom. sing., H. 168; G. 46, 2, 3, 4. (b) Special rule of accent, H. 172; G. 25, 3. (c) Declens. of φύλαξ, φλέψ, θής, ἐλπὶς, γέρον, σῶμα (d) Declens. of ἀνὴρ, H. 188 b, 189; G. 57, 2. (e) Declens. of πόλις, H. 201; G. 53.

4. **Adjectives**: (a) Declens. of ἀγαθός, φίλιος, πᾶς, λύων, φιλῶν. (b) Comparison, H. 248, 249; G. 71. (c) Formation of adverbs, H. 257; G. 74.

5. **Pronouns**: (a) αὐτός, H. 265; G. 79, 2. (b) ἑαυτοῦ, H. 266; G. 80. (c) ἄλλος, H. 267; G. 84, 3. (d) οὗτος, H. 272; G. 83.

6. **Verbs**: (a) Tenses of the indic., H. 301, 302; G. 90, 1, 2. (b) Tense systems, H. 303; G. 92, 4. (c) Mute-, liquid-, and vowel-verbs, H. 309; G. 92, 3. (d) The -μι form, H. 311; G. 93, 3. (e) Formative elements of the verb, H. 353; G. 93. (f) Infinitive endings, H. 381; G. 117. (g) First aor. of liquid verbs, H. 431; G. 110 III. 2. (h) Second aorists, H. 435 a; G. 110 v. (i) Passive deponents, H. 497; G. 88, 2, n.

7. (a) **Adjective** used alone, H. 621; G. 139, 1 and 2. (b) δ as a demonstrative, H. 654; G. 143. (c) The article with attributives,

H. 666-670; G. 142, 1 and n. 1, 2, 3. (d) The article with pronouns, H. 673; G. 142, 4.

8. **Accusative**: (a) Adverbial, H. 719; G. 160, 2. (b) Double object, H. 724; G. 164. **Genitive**: (a) With verbs of *ruling*, H. 741; G. 171, 3. (b) With δέομαι, H. 743 a; G. 172, 2, n. 1. (c) With verbs of *superiority*, H. 749; G. 175, 2. (d) With adverbs of *place*, H. 757; G. 182, 2.

9. **Dative**: (a) Of the possessor, H. 768; G. 184, 4. (b) Of association, H. 772; G. 186, n. 1. (c) With compound verbs, H. 775; G. 187.

10. **Verbs**: (a) καλῶς ἔχει, H. 810. (b) Modes in final clauses, H. 881; G. 215 A, 216. (c) Relative clauses introduced by *until*, H. 921; G. 239, 240. (d) Infinitive used as a noun, H. 959; G. 262, 2. (e) Attributive participles, H. 965, 966; G. 276, 1. (f) Circumstantial participle, H. 968, 969; G. 277, 1-6. (g) Gen. absolute, H. 970; G. 183.

## 3. VOCABULARY.

## VERBS.

1. ἄγαμαι.	15. εἶσαν, ἦν, ἦσαν.	29. παρ-έχω.
2. ἀγγέλλω.	16. ἐκ-πίπτω.	30. πειράομαι.
3. ἄγω.	17. ἐπι-κρύπτω.	31. περι-γίγνομαι.
4. αἰσθάνομαι.	18. ἐπι-μελέομαι.	32. πιέζω.
5. αἰτέω.	19. ἔρχομαι, ἦλθε(ν).	33. πολιορκέω.
6. ἀξιόω.	20. κατα-άγω.	34. στρατεύομαι.
7. ἄρχω.	21. κατα-λύω.	35. συγ-γίγνομαι.
8. ἀφ-ίστημι.	22. κελεύω.	36. συλ-λέγω.
9. ἄχθομαι.	23. λανθάνω.	37. συμ-βάλλω.
10. βάλλω.	24. νομίζω.	38. συμ-βουλεύω.
11. ἐκ-βάλλω.	25. οἰκέω.	39. συμ-πράττω.
12. δαπανάω.	26. ὀρμάω.	40. τρέφω.
13. δέομαι.	27. παρ-αγγέλλω.	41. ὠφελέω.
14. δίδωμι.	28. παρα-γίγνομαι.	

## NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀνὴρ.	3. ὁ βάρβαρος.	5. ὁ δαρεικός.
2. ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης.	4. ἡ γῆ.	6. ὁ δασμός.

7. ἡ δύναμις.	13. ἡ πρόφασις.	19. ὁ φρούραρχος.
8. ἡ ἐπιβουλή.	14. ὁ στρατιώτης.	20. ἡ φυλακή.
9. ἡ θάλασσα.	15. ἡ σιλλογή.	21. τὸ χρῆμα.
10. ὁ μῆν.	16. ὁ τρόπος.	22. τὸ χρῦσιον.
11. ὁ μισθός.	17. ἡ τροφή.	23. ἡ χώρα.
12. τὸ πρᾶγμα.	18. ὁ φεύγων.	24. ὁ ξένος.

## ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄλλος.	5. ἕκαστος.	9. ὀπίστος.
2. ἀπαράσκευος.	6. ἐκὼν.	10. οὐδεὶς, οὐδέν.
3. βέλτιστος.	7. ἕξ τρεῖς.	11. πᾶς.
4. δισχίλιοι, τετρα- κισχίλιοι.	8. μύριοι.	12. πλείστος.

## ADVERBS.

1. αὖ.	4. μή. οὐ, οὐκ.	7. τότε.
2. εὐνοϊκῶς.	5. πρόσθεν.	8. ὧδε.
3. ἀντιπέρασ.	6. τὸ ἀρχαῖον.	9. ὡς

## PRONOUNS.

1. ἑαυτοῦ.
2. ὁ, ἡ, τό.
3. ὅδε.
4. οἱ.

## PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀμφί.
2. ἐν.
3. πλὴν.
4. ὑπέρ.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

1. πρὶν.
2. τέ.
3. ὡς.

## 4. EXERCISES.

- Translate: (a) Ἐπεκρύπτετα τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὅτι μάλιστα ἐδύνατο. (b) Τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἦσαν δεδομένοι αἱ βελτισταὶ πόλεις τῷ ἀδελφῷ τοῦ βασιλέως. (c) Ὁ μὲν ἤθροιζε δύναμιν τὴν βελτίστην ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος ἑαυτῷ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. (d) Αὐτοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῇ πόλει βουλευομένους ἦσθάνετο.
- Analyze: φυγᾶς, συνελέγετο, στρατεύματα, ἐνόμιζε, πολεμοῦντα.
- Translate: (a) The satrap accordingly went up, when the king was happening to be as unprepared as possible. (b) He announces to as many generals as he has in the cities, that they take 300 men as good as possible. (c) All the generals were desiring to besiege those in Miletus both by land and by sea. (d) If he may be able to have those cities instead of the king. (e) This man contributes money for the support of the soldiers. (f) By means of these resources he collected an army of two thousand men.

## LESSON XXI.

## ANABASIS I. II. 1.

## 1. NOTES.

[By using the Vocabulary, pp. 361-387, and with the aid of the literal and free translations on pp. 279 and 289, the pupil will master the meanings not given for some of the words in the Notes of this and the subsequent Lessons.]

1. ἐ-δόκει, for ἐ-δόκε-ε, cf. ἠσθένει II.; from δοκέω; tense, pers., and num. of ἐδόκει?

2. πορεύε-σθαι dep., to proceed; on the ending -σθαι cf. παραγένεσθαι XIX. 4.

3. μὲν, on the one hand; used here without a following δέ, so that the real intentions of Cyrus are left to the surmises of the reader. On the use of μὲν . . . δέ cf. I. 8.

4. ἐποιεῖτο, mid., for himself; cf. ἐποιεῖτο XII.

5. ὡς βουλόμενος, as wishing [saying that he wished]; cf. ὡς βουλόμενος XIX.

6. ἐκ-βαλεῖν, from ἐκ-βάλλω; on the theme, cf. ἐξ-έβαλεν XIII.; tense here? On the change of ἐξ to ἐκ before consonants, cf. ἐκπεπωκότας XIII.

7. τε, enclitic, both; cf. τε XI., XVI. Note that here τε, immediately following an accent otherwise grave, makes it acute.

8. ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στρατεύμα, quantus erat ei exercitus; object of λαβόντι, taking what army he had; αὐτῷ dat. of possessor, cf. αὐτῷ XIV., XVII.; on ὅσοι = quanti as many as, cf. IV.

9. συν ἀλλαγ-έ-ντ-ι, becoming reconciled; partic., nom. συναλλαγείς for συναλλαγεντι, cf. ἀτιμασθείς VIII.; aor. pass. from συν-αλλάττω, theme ἀλλαγ, as πράττω XIV., theme πραγ. On the pass. suffix θε-, here ε-, cf. ἀτιμασθείς VIII.

10. πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι, toward, with, the [adversaries] at-home. Note the omission of the substantive.

11. ἀπο-πέμψαι (= ἀπο-πεμπ-σ-αι), cf. κατα-λύ-σ-αι XVIII., 1st aor. infia. act. Note ψ = π + σ.

12. ὁ εἶχε στρατεύμα, quem habebat exercitum, obj. of ἀποπέμψαι; ὁ rel. pron. neut. sing.; masc. ὅς.

13. προ-ει-στή-κ-ει, praefuerat, was in command of; pluperf. ind. act. from προϊστημι, cf. κατέστη VI. Note the reduplication ει-, cf. ἀφειστήκεσαν XII.; on the reg. redup. cf. δε-δομένοι XII., ἐκ-πε-πτω-κότας XIII.; on κ (=κα) the perf. suffix cf. ἐκπεπτο-κ-ότ-ας XIII.

14. τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν, the others, excepting, i. e. all, excepting.

15. φυλάττειν from φυλάττω, theme φυλακ; force of ending -ειν!

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. δοκεῖ = it seems, it seems best.
2. The infin. mid. ends in -σθαι.
3. ὥς gives to the participle the idea of a merely possible reality, like the Lat. *tamquam*, Eng. *as*.
4. ἐξ becomes ἐκ before consonants.
5. The 1st aor. infin. act. ends in σ-αι; the 2d aor. infin. act. ends in -εῖν.
6. An enclitic changes a preceding grave accent to an acute.
7. In Greek, as in English, a relative clause may be the object of a verb.
8. θε- is the 1st passive suffix; ε-, the 2d passive suffix.
9. The article, followed by an attributive adjective, or the equivalent of an attributive adjective, may modify an omitted substantive which is easily supplied from the context.
10. Verb stems in -π unite π with σ-α, 1st aor. suffix, forming ψ-α.
11. Verbs in -πτω have their themes ending in -γ or -κ.
12. -κ-α is the perf. act. suffix.
13. ἴστημι reduplicates in the pluperf. by prefixing ει- to the theme, στα.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of λυθείς . . . . .	H. 242.	G. 69 (τιθείς).
2. Infinitives and participles of λύω	H. 313.	G. 95, 1.
3. Reduplication . . . . .	H. 363-65.	G. 101, 1, 2.
4. The 1st perfect stem . . . . .	H. 446.	G. 110, 4 b.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ἡ ἀκρόπολις, citadel.      | 9. ξενικός, mercenary.          |
| 2. ἄνω (cf. ἀνά, up), upward. | 10. ὅσος (quantus), how great.  |
| 3. βαρβαρικός, barbarian.     | 11. παντάπασιν, wholly.         |
| 4. δοκεῖ, it seems.           | 12. πορεύομαι, I advance.       |
| 5. Ἑλληνικός, Grecian.        | 13. προϊστημι, I set in charge. |
| 6. ἐνταῦθα, there.            | 14. συν-αλλάττω, I reconcile.   |
| 7. ἤδη, now, at length.       | 15. φυλάττω, I guard.           |
| 8. ἦκω, I am come.            |                                 |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: αὐτῶ, τούτους, συναλλαγέντι, ἀκρόπολις.
2. Translate: (a) Καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανον καὶ οὗτοι οἱ αὐτοὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ ξένοι ὄντες. (b) Καὶ πιέζων τοὺς οἴκοι ἀντιστασιώτας περιγίγνεται αὐτῶν. (c) Δοκεῖ δὴ τοὺς μὲν ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς δ' ἀποκτείνειν. (d) Ἀνέβαινον εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἔχοντες ὃ ἦν αὐτοῖς στρατεύμα. (e) Ἀπέπεμψε πρὸς Κῦρον ὅσον ἦν αὐτῶ στρατεύμα.
3. Translate: (a) I will now advance upward with my (= the) friends into the province of the satrap. (b) The soldiers were wishing to drive out the conspirators (= the conspiring) wholly from (ἐκ) the kingdom. (c) They were collecting accordingly, as against these men, both the mercenary and the Greek (army). (d) He will come (ἦκω), taking what army he has. (e) All (οἱ ἄλλοι) were slandering the king, except as many as were friends to him.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision.
2. Enclitics.
3. Grave accent before an enclitic.
4. Themes of verbs in -λλω, -πτω.
5. First and second passive suffixes.
6. Formation of the perf. stem.
7. The 1st aor. of liquid verbs.
8. Ὄς with the participle.
9. Reduplication.
10. Uses of the aorist participle.
11. The genitive after προϊστημι.
12. Words in the attributive position.

## LESSON XXII.

## ANABASIS I. II. 2 and 3.

## 1. NOTES.

1. *ἐκάλεσ-ε*: (a) from *καλέω*; on the form, cf. *ἐποίησε* III.; note, final *ε* of the theme does not here change to *η* before a consonant; (b) *ἐκάλεσα* I called, so *ἔλυσα* I loosed; (c) the pres. (*λέω*), fut. (*λυσω*), aor. (*ἔλυσα*), perf. (*λέλυκα*) are the principal parts of the verb in the active voice.

2. *τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκούντας*, the [men] besieging Miletus; note the omission of the substantive.

3. *ὑποσχό-μενο-ς*, promising: (a) from *ὑποσχνέ-μαι* dep; *ὑπέσχε-το*, he promised; tense of the partic. (b) The rest of the sentence gives his promise; stated in his own words it would be: "if I shall succeed in those matters with reference to which I am marching, I will not cease until I bring you back home." This would be called a future condition, vividly stated, with probability of fulfilment; in the conditional clause *εἰάν* with the subjunctive would be used, and the future indicative in the conclusion.

4. *εἰ καλῶς καταπράξ-ειε(ν)*, if well he accomplished, i. e. if he succeeded: (a) *καλ-ῶς* adv., cf. *εὐνοϊκ-ῶς* XI.; (b) *καταπράττω*, I accomplish; theme *πράγ*; here aor. opt. 3d sing.; on *ξ = κς. γς*, cf. *ἀπέδειξε* IV.; note the personal ending *-ειε(ν)*; cf. however *ἐπιβουλεύοι* VI., *λάβοι* XI.; (c) the words of the promise are not stated directly (3 b), but indirectly, i. e. in the *oratio obliqua*; note that *εἰάν* with the subjunctive has accordingly become *εἰ* with the optative.

5. *ἐφ' αἱ*, for *ἐπὶ αἱ*; note that after the loss of *ι* (elision) *π* is brought before a rough breathing; hence changed to *φ*, cf. *ἀφικνοῖτο* IX.

6. *μὴ πρόσθεν παύσε-σθαι*, *se non prius cessurum esse*, that he would not (sooner) cease, stop: (a) *παύω*, I stop; mid. I stop myself, cease; *παύσασθαι* fut. inf. mid.; *-σε-*, fut. suffix; (b) note, the fut. ind. of the direct discourse (3 b) has become fut. infin., and *οὐ* becomes *μὴ*.

7. *πρὶν καταγάγ-οι*: (a) from *κατάγω*; here 2d aor. opt., cf. *λάβοι* XI.; note, the 2d aor. of *ἄγω* has the theme doubled, instead of its simplest form; (b) this subordinate clause also, like *εἰ καταπράξειεν*, has its verb in the optative, where *πρὶν ἄν* with the subjunctive would have been used in the *oratio recta*, cf. *πρὶν ἄν συμβουλεύσῃται* XVIII. Notes 4 d.

8. *οἱ δὲ ἐπίθο-ντο*; cf. *ὁ δὲ πείθε-ται* VII.

9. *παρ-ῆσαν*, were beside, arrived; cf. *παρῶν* III., *παρεῖναι* II., *ῆσαν* XII.; on the accent, cf. *ἀπ-ῆλθε* VIII.

10. *τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβών*, taking the [soldiers] from the cities; note the omission of the substantive *στρατιώτας* after *πόλεων*, cf. 2; (a) *ἐκ τῶν πόλεων*, attrib. posit., as *παρ' ἑαυτῶ* XI.; (b) *ἐκ* for *ἐν* on account of the idea of separation in *λαβών*; cf. *παρὰ βασιλέως* IX. for *παρὰ βασιλεί*.

11. *παρ ἧν*, on the meaning, form, and accent, cf. 9.

12. *τῶν στρατευομένων*, of the being-in-the-army, i. e. of (among) those fighting; note the omission of the substantive; cf. 2, 10.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *καλέω* does not change *ε* to *η* before consonants.

2. The pres., fut., aor., and perf. act. are four of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The substantive is sometimes omitted after words which modify it attributively.

4. The Greek, like the Latin, has a direct and an indirect discourse.

5. A vivid future condition with probability is expressed by *εἰάν* with the subjunctive in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion.

6. *γ* and *κ* unite with *-σα*, 1st aor. suffix, forming *ξα*.

7. *-ειε(ν)* marks the 1st aor. opt. act. 3d sing.

8. *π*, *κ*, or *τ*, brought by elision before a rough breathing, is made rough.

9. *μὴ* takes the place of *οὐ* with infinitives.

10. *ἄγω* has a reduplicated theme in the 2d aor.

11. *γάρ*, like the Lat. *enim*, does not stand first in its sentence.

12. *πιστεύω*, I trust, is followed by the dative case.

13. The accent of a verb does not precede the augment.

14. The partitive genitive exists in Greek as in Latin.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |         |                           |
|---|---------|---------------------------|
| 1. Elision . . . . .                        | H. 82.  | G. 17, 1.                 |
| 2. The variable vowel of the verb . . . . . | H. 310. | G. 113 and <sup>1</sup> . |
| 3. Pres. ind. act. of λύω . . . . .         | H. 314. | G. 96.                    |
| 4. Declension of the relative pron. . . . . | H. 275. | G. 86.                    |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ὁ γυμνῆς, <i>light-armed soldier.</i>  | 10. ὁ πελταστής, <i>targeteer.</i>    |
| 2. ἡδέως, <i>gladly.</i>                  | 11. πιστεύω, <i>I trust.</i>          |
| 3. καλέω, <i>I call.</i>                  | 12. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, <i>I promise.</i>   |
| 4. καλός, <i>beautiful.</i>               | 13. ὡς (with numerals), <i>circa,</i> |
| 5. καλῶς, <i>beautifully, well.</i>       | about.                                |
| 6. κατ-άγω, <i>I lead down, back.</i>     | 14. τριακόσιοι, 300                   |
| 7. τὰ ὄπλα, <i>arms.</i>                  | 15. πεντᾶκόσιοι, 500.                 |
| 8. πάρ-ειμι, <i>I arrive, am present.</i> | 16. χίλιοι, 1,000.                    |
| 9. παύω, <i>I stop; mid. I pause.</i>     | 17. μύριοι, 10,000.                   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Analyze: ἐκάλεσε, πολιορκούντας, φυγάδας, καταπράξειεν, παύσεσθαι, ἐπίστευον.
- Translate: (a) Ἐκάλει δ' οὖν τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὴν πόλιν στρατευομένους. (b) Ἐνόμιζε δὴ εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ τοὺς ἄνδρας συν. λεγε, βασιλεύσειν αὐτ' ἐκείνου. (c) Ἐβουλεύετο ὡς ταύτην τὴν δύναμιν οἴκαδε καταγάγοι. (d) Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐπίστευον τῷ στρατηγῷ καὶ ἡδέως τε καὶ ἐκόντες ἐπέιθοντο. (e) Καὶ αὐτοὺς, τὰ ὄπλα λαβόντας, ἐκέλευεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν παρεῖναι.
- Translate: (a) And the guest-friends came (πάρεμι) unto the king, having money for the support of the soldiers. (b) And 3,000 men in truth were present. (c) In order that he might have 10,000 darics. (d) If the 500 targeteers would be friendly to him. (e) And Socrates was among those fighting in the plain.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- Attributives used substantively.
- The adverbial ending.
- Principal parts of the verb.
- Infinitives and participles of λύω.
- The accent of παρῆν.
- Formation of the perfect stem.
- Theme of verbs ending in -λλω, -ττω.
- First and second pass. suffix.
- Principal parts (act.) of κελεύω, ποιέω.
- Augment and reduplication of αἰ-.
- Principal parts of αἰτέω.
- Declension of πολίτης, πελταστής.
- Ἐάν with the subjunctive in the indirect discourse after secondary tenses.
- Position of γάρ.
- Case with πιστεύω.
- καί . . . καί.
- Declens. of θῆς, γυμνῆς

## LESSON XXIII.

## ANABASIS I. II. 4 and 5.

## 1. NOTES.

- ἀφ-ἴκο-ντο: from ἀφ-ικνέο-μαι, cf. IX.; note, ι augments to ι. Theme and tense of the verb?
  - κατα-νοή-σᾶς, when he perceived: on the form cf. κινδυνεύσᾶς VIII.; principal parts, κατανοέω, κατανοή-σω, κατε-νόη-σα, κατα-νε-νόη-κα.
  - μείζονα ἡγή-σά-μενος, and because he thought . . . to be greater: (a) μείζων, greater; μέγας, great; note the irreg. comparative, and cf. πρεσβύτερος I.: (b) from ἡγέ-ομαι, dep. I lead, think; fut. ἡγή-σο-μαι, aor. ἡγή-σά-μην;<sup>1</sup> note, η here augments without change, as ω in ὠφέλει XVI.
  - ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, by what way he could most quickly: cf. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο XI.; ἢ the rel. pron. dat. sing. fem., sc. ὁδῶ, way; note, the dat. here denotes manner; cf. the Lat. quā viā, by what way or means; how.
  - ἤκου-σε Τισσαφέρνους, heard from Tissaphernes: (a) from ἀκούω, cf. the Eng. acoustics; (b) account for the η and for the σ.
- <sup>1</sup> -μην ending of 1st sing. in the past tenses ind. mid., so ἐλύσάμην, I loosed for myself.

6. οὗς εἶρη-κα, whom I have mentioned: (a) εἶρηκα classed as the perf. of φη-μί, I say, Lat. *fāri*; (b) -κα, the perf. suffix, as in λέλυκα; note the irreg. redup. εἶ-; cf. προειστήκει XXI.

7. ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων, was setting out from Sardis: (a) cf. δρμώμενος XVI.; ᾠ for ᾠ-ε, as in ἐπειράτο XIII.; (b) Σάρδεων, declined like πόλις, plur.

8. σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, three days' journey; acc. plur.; note, the distance or extent of space is expressed by the acc.; cf. the Lat. usage.

9. τὸ εὖρος: subj. of ἦν, was, understood; not 2d decl., but 3d neut., as in Lat. *corp-us*, *corpor-is*, not *corp-i*.

10. ἐπ-ἦν, from ἐπ-εἰμι; cf. παρ-ἦν XXII. N. 11.

11. ἐ-ζευγ-μένη, joined: (a) from the theme ζευγ, ζυγ, Lat. *jug* in *jungo*, I join; (b) perf. partic. mid.; cf. προ-ε-στήκει XXI., and note, the redup. is not as it is in λέλυκα, when the verb begins with a double consonant (ζ = δς) or two consonants; (c) cf. λέλυκα, note, the perf. mid. is formed without the suffix κα-, so λε-λυμένη, λέ-λυ-μαι.

12. πλοί-οις, by means of . . . boats; note, the dat. here denotes means; cf. 4.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The theme of ἀφ-ικνέομαι is *ικ*.
2. *ε* augments to *ι*, *α* to *η*, *ο* to *ω*. *η* remains unchanged.
3. νοέω, ἡγέομαι lengthen *ε* to *η* before consonants, but καλέω XXII. does not.
4. The regular comparative ending is -τερο-; but μέγας forms the comparative μείζων.
5. -μην ending 1st sing., where the 3d sing. is -το; 3d plur. -ντο.
6. The person from whom one hears is denoted by the gen. case.
7. εἶρηκα classed as the perf. of φημί
8.  $\acute{\alpha} \omega = \acute{\omega}$ ,  $\alpha \epsilon = \acute{\alpha}$ ,  $\acute{\alpha} \epsilon = \acute{\alpha}$ .
9. The means and the manner of an action are denoted by the dat.
10. Extent of space is denoted by the accusative.
11. Nouns in -ος are, some 2d decl. masc.; others, 3d decl. neut.
12. Verbs beginning with a double consonant or two consonants reduplicate by omitting the consonant and prefixing *ε* only.<sup>1</sup>
13. κα-, the perf. suffix, does not appear in the middle voice.

<sup>1</sup> The perf. of ἵστημι is ἕστηκα. It is in the pluperf. that εἶ- appears.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of γέφυρᾶ . . . . .	H. 135.	G. 37, 1, end.
2. Declens. of δαίμων . . . . .	H. 184.	G. 50.
3. Declens. of μείζων (G. ἡδίων) . . . . .	H. 236.	G. 72, 2, N. 1
4. Conjug. of λύω in pres., fut., imperf., aor, ind. act. . . . .	H. 314-316.	G. 96.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀκούω, I hear.	14. μέγας, μείζων, great, greater.
2. ἡ γέφυρᾶ, bridge.	15. ἡ παρασάγγη, <sup>2</sup> league.
3. διὰ (with gen.), through.	16. παρα-σκευάζω, <sup>3</sup> I prepare.
4. εἴκοσι(ν), twenty.	17. ἡ παρασκευή, <sup>3</sup> preparation.
5. εἶρηκα (φημί), have said, mentioned.	18. τὸ πλέθρον, <sup>4</sup> plethron.
6. ἐξ-ελαύνω, I march. <sup>1</sup>	19. τὸ πλοῖον, boat, vessel.
7. ἐπ-εἰμι, ἐπ-εἶναι, am upon.	20. ὁ ποταμός, <sup>5</sup> river.
8. ἐπτά, septem, seven.	21. ὁ σταθμός, stopping-place, day's journey.
9. τὸ εὖρος, breadth, width.	22. ὁ στόλος, equipment.
10. ζεύγ-νῦμι, I join.	23. ταχέως, τάχιστα, quickly, most quickly.
11. ἡγέομαι, I lead, think.	24. ὡς, as, in order that, to (preposition).
12. ὁ ἵππεύς, horseman.	
13. κατα-νοέω, I observe.	

Principal parts of λύω: λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι,<sup>6</sup> ἐλύθην.<sup>7</sup>

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἀφίκοντο, κατανόησας, ἤκουσε, ὠρμάτο.
2. Translate: (a) Οἱ μὲν οὖν στρατηγοί, λαβόντες χρήματα εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν, παρήσαν εἰς τὴν πόλιν. (b) Ἐπεμελείτο ὅπως, ὅποσοι στρατηγοὶ εἶσαν, ἑαυτῶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν. (c) Ἦσαν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι

<sup>1</sup> Used with reference to the general, not the soldiers.

<sup>2</sup> Equal to about 5½ kilometers (3 English miles).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. ἀπαρασκευάστον XI.

<sup>4</sup> About 30.8 meters (101 feet).

<sup>5</sup> Cf. the English *hippo-potamus*, river-horse.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Notes 11, c.

<sup>7</sup> Aor. ind. pass. 1st sing.; cf. ἡγάσ-θη XVI.

τῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπιβουλευομένων. (d) Κατανοήσῃς δὴ τοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀνέβη ὡς βασιλέα.

3. Translate: (a) But when those hoplites arrived, the commander thought Cyrus had made (aor. inf.) preparation against him(self). (c) He heard from those (= the) living in the city, [that] Cyrus was marching through the provinces of the king. (c) And he destroyed (καταλύω) that bridge. (d) He desired the same bridge to be destroyed.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of the verb. 2. Quantity of ε in ἀφίκοντο. 3. Quantity of the 3d α in κατανοήσῃς. 4. Different uses of ὡς. 5. Explanation of ἦ in ἦ ἐδύνατο. 6. Case with διά, = through. 7. Extent of space. 8. Formation of perf. stem act.; mid. 9. Declension of οὔτος, ἡγησάμενος, παρασκευή, ἵππεύς, ἔχων, πλοῖον. 10. Uses of the dative. 11. The final vowel in the 1st decl. 12. Nom. sing. of liquid nouns in the 3d decl. 13. The variable vowel of the verb.

## LESSON XXIV.

### ANABASIS I. II. 6 and 7.

#### 1. NOTES.

1. δια-βάς, going through, crossing (this river): δι-έ-βη, he crossed; cf. ἀν-έβη, he went up V., so ἀνα-βάς, going up: (a) from δια-βαίνω, theme βᾶ; (b) βᾶς = βα-ντ-ς, cf. λύσᾶς = λυσαντς; (c) tense here? (d) on the declens., cf. πᾶς XII. Gram. Less.
2. ἐν-α, one; nom. εἷς for ἐν-ς, 3d decl.; -α as in ἄρχοντα V.
3. εὐδαίμων α καὶ μεγάλην, prosperous and large: (a) nom. εὐδαίμων, stem εὐδαίμων; (b) nom. μέγας, fem. μεγάλη; cf. XXIII. Vocab.
4. ἔ-μειν-ε(ν): from μένω, Lat. man-eo, here 1st aor.; on the 1st aor. of liquid verbs cf. παρ-ἡγγειλε XII.
5. ἡμέρᾱς ἐπτά, throughout seven days. Note, duration of time, like extent of space, is denoted by the acc. case; cf. σταθμούς XXIII.
6. ἦκ-ε, arrived; imperf. of ἦκω, cf. XXI. Note, η augments without change; cf. ἡγέομαι XXIII.

7. Κύρῳ βασιλείᾳ ἦν: (a) on the dat. cf. ἦν αὐτῷ XIV.; (b) βασιλείᾳ, royal abodes (not βασιλείᾳ, kingdom); 2d decl. neut. plur.; (c) ἦν, was, sing.; note the subj. is plur.; the verb is regularly sing. when the subject is neut. plur.

8. γυμνά-σαι βούλ-οιτο, whenever (=if) he might wish to take exercise: (a) aor. infin., cf. κατα-λύσαι XVIII.; from γυμνάζω, theme γυμναδ; so ἀτιμάζω VIII., theme ἀτιμαδ; here γυμνάσαι is for γυμναδ-σαι; note, a lingual mute drops out before σ, cf. φηγᾶς for φηγαδς XV.; on a lingual mute before another lingual mute, cf. ἀτιμασθείς VIII.; (b) βούλοιτο. opt. as in ἀφικνοῖτο IX.; -οιτο, ending of the opt. middle, corresponds to the active ending -οι; cf. λάθοι XI.

9. διὰ μέσον τοῦ παραδείσου, through the middle of the park. Note that μέσον stands before the art., i. e. in the pred. position.

10. εἰσιν, sunt, are: like τε an enclitic, throwing its accent (εἰσίν) on the preceding word. Note, a final circumflex is not altered thereby.

11. Κελευῶν: gen. plur. takes the place of an appositive with πόλεως. Cf. City of New York.

### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. βαίνω, theme βα; βᾶς is for βαντς, and is declined like πᾶς.
2. εἷς, one, is for ἐν-ς.
3. Nouns whose stems end in -ον form the nominative by lengthening ο to ω.
4. In the 1st aor. of liquid verbs ε in the theme becomes ει.
5. Duration of time is denoted by the accusative case.
6. Verbs beginning with a long vowel augment without change, except that ᾱ generally becomes η.
7. A neuter plural subject has a singular verb.
8. Verb themes which end in a lingual mute lose it before σ.
9. The optative is used in relative clauses which have the force of a condition, when the main verb denotes past time.
10. -οι-το is the ending opt. middle, corresponding to the active οι; οίμην is the ending, 1st pers., if -οιτο is 3d; cf. Obs. 5, XXIII.
11. μέσος (when it means middle of) takes the predicate position, like ὅδε and ἐκείνος.
12. εἰσίν, like τέ, is an enclitic.
13. A final circumflex is not affected by an enclitic.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |             |         |
|--|-------------|---------|
| 1. Declens. of εὐδαίμων . . . . .  | H. 235.     | G. 66.  |
| 2. Declens. of μέγας . . . . .   | H. 247.     | G. 70.  |
| 3. Conjug. of λύω in the perf. act., perf.<br>mid., aor. pass., indicative . . . . . | H. 317-319. | G. 96.  |
| 4. Duration of time; extent of space . . . . .                                       | H. 720.     | G. 161. |
| 5. The imperfect tense . . . . .   | H. 830.     | G. 200. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἄγριος, <sup>1</sup> wild.              | 10. ὁ ἵππος, <sup>5</sup> horse.       |
| 2. τὰ βασιλεια, <sup>2</sup> royal abodes. | 11. μένω, I remain.                    |
| 3. δια-βαίνω, I go through, cross.         | 12. μέσος, <sup>6</sup> middle.        |
| 4. εἷς, one.                               | 13. οἰκούμενος, <sup>7</sup> populous. |
| 5. εἰσί(ν), sunt, (they) are.              | 14. ὀκτώ, octo, eight.                 |
| 6. εὐδαίμων, <sup>8</sup> prosperous.      | 15. ὁ παράδεισος, <sup>8</sup> park.   |
| 7. ἡ ἡμέρᾱ, <sup>4</sup> day.              | 16. ἡ πηγὴ, source.                    |
| 8. θηρεύω, I hunt.                         | 17. πλήρης, full.                      |
| 9. τὸ θηρίον, wild beast.                  | 18. ῥέω, flow.                         |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Decline: ἐκείνος, ὅς. ἢ ὅ, ἡμέρᾱ, μέσος, πηγὴ.
- Translate: (a) Ἐξελαύνω ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὴν Σάρδεις πόλιν. (b) Ὅποτε ἀτιμάσαι τὸν βασιλεια βούλοιτο, συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ἡ μήτηρ. (c) Διὰ μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μέγας. (d) Τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν διέβη τῇ μεγάλῃ γεφύρᾱ.
- Analyze: διαβάς, ἐξελαύνει, οἰκουμένην, ἔμεινεν, ἦκε, ἔχων.
- Translate: (a) I have said [that] Cyrus has a large force. (b) The army marched<sup>9</sup> through that prosperous country eight days' journey. (c) But this river flows from large springs. (d) I heard [that] the younger brother was marching against the older brother. (e) That city is large and prosperous, and full of both (τέ) gardens and royal abodes.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lat. agr-estis, wild.      <sup>2</sup> Cf. βασιλεύς, βασιλειᾶ, βασιλεύω.  
<sup>3</sup> Having kindly deities: εὖ, well; δαίμων (Eng. demon), spirit, deity.  
<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. eph-emeral.      <sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. hippo-drome.  
<sup>6</sup> Cf. Meso-potamia, between rivers.      <sup>7</sup> Cf. οἶκοι, at home; οἰκέω.  
<sup>8</sup> Cf. Eng. Paradise.      <sup>9</sup> Use πορεύομαι.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- Themes of βαίνω, τυγχάνω, ἀγγέλλω, ἵστημι, βάλλω, ἀλλάττω;
- Review of the conjugation of λύω.
- Formation of the nominative of stems in -αντ, -εντ.
- Lingual mutes before σ; before lingual mutes.
- Principal parts of λύω, κελεύω, αἰτέω.
- The liquids.
- Uses of the pres., imperf., aorist.
- The form ἐθήρευον.
- Declension of πᾶς, διαβάς.
- Position of μέσος.
- Enclitics.

## LESSON XXV.

## ANABASIS I. II. 8 and 9.

## 1. NOTES.

- ἴσ-τι, Lat. es-t, is: (a) subj. βασιλεια; on the sing. verb with a plur. subj., cf. βασιλεια ἦν XXIV.; (b) note the forms met with, — εἰμί, εἰσί(ν), ἦν, ἦσαν, ἴσται, εἴησαν.
  - ὑπό, Lat. sub, under: here with the dat., denoting place where; cf. the dat. with ἐν; on ὑπό with the gen., cf. ὑπὸ ἀντιστασιωτῶν XVII.
  - ἐμ-βάλλει: from ἐμ (= ἐν) βάλλω; on ν before consonants, cf. συλλαμβάνει VII., συμβουλεύεται XVIII.; meaning of δια-βάλλει?
  - ἐστί(ν), enclitic, like εἰσίν XXIV. § 7. Note, its accent is thrown on the ultima of εὖρος; on a final circumflex before an enclitic cf. αὐτοῦ εἰσίν XXIV.
  - εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν, (the breadth was) of twenty-five feet: (a) note the use of the gen. in expressions of measure; cf. the Lat. usage; (b) ποδῶν, nom. ποῦς, Lat. pes, ped-is.
  - ἐκ-δεῖρ-αι, to flay<sup>1</sup> (skin), i. e. (it is said that Apollo) flayed: from ἐκ-δέρω, 1st aor. infin. act.; cf. κατα-λῦ-σαι XVIII. On the formation of the aor. of liquid verbs, cf. ἔμεινεν XXIV., παρήγγειλε XII.
- <sup>1</sup> The aor. infin. with λέγεται here corresponds to the aor. ind. ἐξέδειρε, ἐκρέμασε of direct discourse. The translation of the aor. infin. by the Eng. perf. infin. is



7. νική σῶς ἐρίζοντά οἱ, when he conquered (on conquering) him, Marsyas, who contended with him, Apollo: (a) from νικάω; note, α becomes η before σα; on -σῶς, cf. κινδυνεύσῶς VIII.; (b) ἐρίζοντα, theme ἐριδ; so fut. ἐρίσω, aor. ἔρισα; cf. γυμνάσαι XXIV.; (c) οἱ, for οἶ, sibi, to, with, himself; dat. sing., cf. Τισσαφέρνει XV.; note the loss of accent; οἶ is an enclitic, and throws its accent on ἐρίζοντα, cf. δοθῆναι οἶ XIV., where οἶ keeps its accent for emphasis.

8. κρεμάσαι, to hang: on the form, cf. ἐκ-δεῖρ-αι 6, καταλῦσαι XVIII.; κρεμα, theme of κρεμά-νῦμι, cf. δείκ-νῦμι IV., theme δεικ; ζεύγ-νῦμι XXIII., theme ζευγ, cf. foot-note, page 89.

9. ἡττηθεῖς: from ἡττά-ο-μαι; on -θεῖς cf. ἀτιμασ-θείς VIII.

10. ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους, about (the) 2,000: note, ἀμφὶ has the same force with numerals as ὡς, εἰς XXII.; note the use of the article with approximate round numbers, — unnecessary in translation.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Neuter plural nouns take a singular verb.
2. ὑπό with the dative denotes the place under which, as ἐν denotes the place in which.
3. ν becomes μ before labial mutes.
4. A word which has the circumflex accent on the penult takes an acute on the last syllable when it is followed by an enclitic.
5. Measure may be denoted by the genitive case.
6. A proparoxytone takes an acute on the ultima before an enclitic.
7. The theme of verbs in -νῦμι is found by dropping the -νῦμι.
8. The article is used with approximate round numbers.
9. Verbs in -αω change α to η when it comes before a consonant.
10. The aor. act. infin. is accented on the penult: καταλῦσαι, ἐκδεῖραι, κρεμάσαι.

always to be discouraged; the Eng. perf. infin. should be reserved for the Greek perf. infin. If necessary, let the pupil give a free rendering; thus it is far better to translate "it is said that Apollo flayed and hung up," than "Apollo is said to have flayed," etc. So with aorist circumstantial participles; let the pupil always indicate by his translation what circumstance the participle denotes. Where the participle indicates preliminary action, let him render it by the indicative: e. g. to take men and come, not having taken men, to come.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                  |                   |                      |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Enclitics . . . . .           | H. 113, 115, 116. | G. 27, 28, 1, 2, 3.  |
| 2. Declens. of ποὺς . . . . .    | H. 172.           | G. 46, 4, n. 1, end. |
| 3. Declens. of γένος . . . . .   | H. 190, 191.      | G. 52, 2.            |
| 4. Declens. of νεανίας . . . . . | H. 145.           | G. 37 ταμίᾱς.        |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                              |                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. τὸ ἄντρον, cave.          | 15. ἡ μάχη, battle.                 |
| 2. ἀποχωρέω, I retreat.      | 16. νικάω, I conquer.               |
| 3. ὁ ἀριθμός, number.        | 17. ὅθεν, whence.                   |
| 4. τὸ δέρμα, hide, skin.     | 18. οἰκοδομέω, I build.             |
| 5. ἐκ δέρω, I flay, skin.    | 19. ὀκτακόσιοι, eight hundred.      |
| 6. ἡ Ἑλλάς, Greece.          | 20. ὅτε, ἐπεὶ, when.                |
| 7. ἐμβάλλω, flow into.       | 21. περί, about.                    |
| 8. ἡ ἐξέτασις, examination.  | 22. ὁ ποὺς, foot.                   |
| 9. ἐρίζω, I contend.         | 23. ἡ σοφία, wisdom, musical skill. |
| 10. ἐρυμνός, fortified.      | 24. σύμπας, all together, cunctus.  |
| 11. ἐστί, est, is.           | 25. ὁ τοξότης, bowman.              |
| 12. ἡττάομαι, I am defeated. | 26. τριάκοντα, thirty.              |
| 13. κρεμάννῦμι, I hang.      | 27. ὑπό (with dat.), under.         |
| 14. λέγω, I say.             |                                     |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ῥεῖ, ἐκδεῖραι, ἀπεχώρει, ἡττηθείς.
2. Translate: (a) Ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλη ἀκρόπολις ἐν τῇ πόλει, ὅθεν οἱ τοξόται ὠρμήσαντο. (b) Ὁ Μαρσύας λέγεται τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐρίσαι περὶ σοφίας. (c) Τῶν ἀδρῶν ἐξέτασιν ποιήσω ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῷ μεγάλῳ. (d) That large acropolis is full of all the best men of Greece. (e) Xerxes built a large and beautiful palace over the source of the river Marsyas. (f) The forces of the king assembled in the park whenever he wished to make a review of them. (g) It was said that the skin which Apollo hung up in the cave belonged to Marsyas. (h) He has parks which are full of beautiful animals; these [= which] I believe he hunts whenever he wishes to exercise his horse.
3. Translate: (a) The skin, however, is said to be [that] of Marsyas. (b) Those springs are said to empty into the Maeander, a large river. (c) There the satrap remained twenty-seven days. (d) That large acropolis is full of all the best men of Greece. (e) Xerxes built a large and beautiful palace over the source of the river Marsyas. (f) The forces of the king assembled in the park whenever he wished to make a review of them. (g) It was said that the skin which Apollo hung up in the cave belonged to Marsyas. (h) He has parks which are full of beautiful animals; these [= which] I believe he hunts whenever he wishes to exercise his horse.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Διὰ τοῦτο: διὰ with the gen. 2. Construction of the dat. in ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ. 3. Principal parts of νικάω, ποιέω. 4. Enclitics: enclitics and proclitics contrasted. 5. ὑπό with the gen.; with the dat. 6. Final α, first declension. 7. Theme of ἐρίζω; of κρεμάννμι. 8. Expressions of *measure*. 9. ν before other consonants. 10. Position of the appositive. 11. Construction with verbs of fighting. 12. Declension of τὸ δέρμα.

## LESSON XXVI.

## ANABASIS I. II. 10-14.

## 1. NOTES.

1. ἐν αἰς [ἡμέραις], *in which [days]*. τὰ Λύκαια,<sup>1</sup> *the Lycaean [sacrifices]*: on the attrib. used without its substant. cf. ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII., τὸ βαρβαρικόν XXI. ἔ-θη-κε: aor. ind. from τί-θη-μι, theme θε or θη, cf. δια-τι-θείς IX.; note, κ- irreg. takes the place of σ- (cf. ἔλυσε); fut. θήσω, perf. τέθηκα.

2. ἦσαν: plur., although the subj. ἄθλα is neut. plur.; cf. XXIV. n. 7. The verb here agrees in number with the pred. χρυσαῖ, *golden* (cf. the Eng. *chrys-alis*), from χρυσοῦς.

3. ἐ-θεώρει, *viewed*; cf. the Eng. *theory*; on the form, cf. ἀπ-ε-χώρει XXV. § 9 πρὸς . . . χώρα, *in the direction of*, etc.; for πρὸς with the accus., implying *motion*, cf. πρὸς Κῦρον XII. *ad fin.* Μῦσις: *adj. Mysian*, nom. Μύσιος.

4. ἰ-ό-ντ-ες, e-u-nt-es, *going*: pres. part. from εἶμι, theme ι, Lat. *ire*, nom. sing. ἰών. ἀπ-ήρουν: from ἀπ-αιτέω, cf. ἐξ-αιτησαμένη VII.; ἦ, augment of αἰ, cf. ἦσθάνετο XIV.; -οῦντ- for -ίοντ-, cf. πολεμούντων XV.; on the ending -ον, cf. ἐποίουν XIX., ἐπίστευον XXII.

5. δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος (for ἀνιαόμενος), *was evident being annoyed*, i. e. *was evidently annoyed*. Note, α-ο contracts to ω.

<sup>1</sup> Sacrifices in honor of Zeus, such as those performed on Mount Lycaeus in Arcadia each spring (as expiatory offerings for the sins of the previous year).

6. πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου, *in accord with the character*; μὴ ἀπο-δι-δοῦναι, *not to give*: (a) note the use of μὴ, *not*, cf. μὴ παύσεσθαι XXII., n. 6; (b) pres. infin. of ἀπο-δίδωμι, theme δο; note, the infin. in -ναι, like the aor. infin. in -σαι, is accented on the penult; cf. ἐκ δείραι κρεμάσαι XXV.; verbs in -μι do not have the pres. infin. in -ειν (λύω, λύειν), but in -ναι, so τιθέ-ναι, δεικνύ-ναι, ἰστά-ναι.

7. τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον, *of the king of [the] Cilicians to Cyrus*: (a) note the attrib. position of the gen. Κιλικίων; (b) παρὰ with the acc., denoting *motion to a place beside*; cf. παρὰ with the gen., παρὰ βασιλέως IX.; with the dat., παρ' ἐαυτῶ XI. n. 1.

8. δοῦναι, *dedisse*, *that she gave*: cf. 6 b; 2d aor. infin., so ἀποστή-ναι XIII.; note, the pres. and 2d aor. infin. act. of -μι verbs end in -ναι. ἀπ-έ-δω-κε, *he gave*: on κ for σ in the 1st aor., cf. ἔ-θη-κε 1; fut. δώσω, perf. δέ-δω-κα. χρήματα πολλά, *much money*: πολλά from πολὺς.

9. αὐτήν, *se* (fem.), *herself*; not αὐτήν (nom. αὐτός).

10. ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη, *the so-called [spring] of Midas*: attrib. to κρήνη, note the position; also the position of the gen. Μίδου between ἡ and καλουμένη; cf. Κιλικίων 7. ἐφ' ἣ = ἐπὶ ἣ, *upon which, at which*; cf. ἐφ' ἣ XXII. n. 5.

11. οἶνω κεράσας αὐτήν, *by mixing it with wine*: (a) dat. as in πλοίοις XXIII., μάχῃ XXV.; (b) from κερά-ννμι, theme κερα-.

12. δεη-θῆ-ναι, *that the Cilician (queen) asked*: pass. dep. from δέομαι, cf. δέεται XVIII.; note the accented syllable of infinitives in -ναι (6 b).

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἐν is followed by the dative; παρὰ and πρὸς by the genitive, dative, or accusative.

2. τίθημι, δίδωμι form the 1st aor. stem with κ instead of σ.

3. The verb *to be* sometimes agrees in number with its predicate instead of its subject.

4. εἶμι, *I go*, has the theme ι; εἰμί, *I am*, has the theme ἐς.

5. Greek, *was evident being annoyed*; English, *was evidently annoyed*.

6. μὴ is used with the infin. instead of οὐκ.

7. Verbs in -μι have the pres. and 2d aor. infin. act. in -ναι.

8. The infin. in -ναι is accented on the penult.

9. The gen. which limits a noun is put in the attrib. position.

10. The dat. denotes *means, manner, place where*.  
 11. *ἐαυτοῦ* etc. may contract to *αὐτοῦ* etc.  
 12. Contract adj. in *-ous* for *-ε-ος* have the circumflex on the ultima.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of contract adjective in *-ous* H. 223, 224. G. 65.  
 2. *παρά, πρόσ* . . . . . H. 802, 805. G. 191, 4, 6.  
 3. *λύω*, pres. system, act. . . . . H. 314. G. 96.  
 4. Numerals, 1-10 . . . . . H. 288. G. 76.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἡ ἀγορά, <i>market, market-place</i> .                          | 15. ἡ θύρα, <sup>4</sup> <i>door</i> .                         |
| 2. ὁ ἀγών, <sup>1</sup> <i>game, contest</i> .                     | 16. θύω, <i>I sacrifice</i> .                                  |
| 3. τὸ ἄθλον, <sup>2</sup> <i>prize</i> .                           | 17. κεράννυμι, <i>I mix</i> .                                  |
| 4. ἀνιάω, <i>I trouble</i> .                                       | 18. ἡ κρήνη, <i>spring (of water)</i> .                        |
| 5. ἀπ-αιτέω, <i>I ask as my due, demand</i> .                      | 19. ὁ οἶνος, <sup>5</sup> <i>wine</i> .                        |
| 6. ἀπο-δίδωμι, <i>I give, give away</i> .                          | 20. ὀφείλω, <i>I owe</i> .                                     |
| 7. ἡ γυνή, <i>woman, wife</i> .                                    | 21. πλέον, <sup>7</sup> <i>more</i> .                          |
| 8. δῆλος, <i>evident</i> .   | 22. πολλάκις, <i>often</i> .                                   |
| 9. δι-άγω, <i>I continue</i> .                                     | 23. πολὺς, <sup>8</sup> <i>much</i> .                          |
| 10. εἶμι, <i>I go</i> ; <i>ἵεναι</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>to go</i> . | 24. ἡ στλεγγίς, <i>comb</i> .                                  |
| 11. ἡ ἐλπίς, <i>hope, promise</i> .                                | 25. ἡ στρατιά, <i>army</i> .                                   |
| 12. ἐπι-δείκνυμι, <i>I show</i> .                                  | 26. σνγ-γίγνομαι, <i>have intercourse, acquaintance with</i> . |
| 13. ἔσχατος, <i>remotest</i> .                                     | 27. τέτταρες, <i>four</i> .                                    |
| 14. θεωρέω, <sup>8</sup> <i>I view</i> .                           | 28. τίθημι, <i>I place</i> .                                   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: *ἔθυσσε, ἔθηκε, στλεγγίδες, ἐθεώρει, ὠφείλετο, ἴοντες, ἀπήγονν, διήγε, ἀνιόμενος, ἀποδιδόναι, καλουμένη, θηρεῦσαι, ἐπιδείξαι*.  
 2. Principal parts of *λύω, θύω, κελεύω, αἰτέω*. Inflect each of the principal parts of *θύω*.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. *agony*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. *athletic*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. *theory*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lat. *forex*, Eng. *door*, Ger. *thür*.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Lat. *i-re*.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Lat. *vinum*, Eng. *wine*.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. *pleon-asm*.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Eng. *poly-syllabic*.

3. Translate: (a) Ἦν δὲ ἡ στλεγγίς χρῦσῆ ἦν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐλέγετο τῷ στρατιώτῃ ἀποδοῦναι. (b) Θεωρήσομεν οὖν μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων τὰς ἐξετάσεις, ἃς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ποιήσουσιν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τοῦ σατράπου. (c) Δῆλοι ἦσαν ἀνιόμενοι τὴν τῶν πολεμίων δύναμιν ὀρώντες. (d) Αὕτη δ' ἐστὶ ἡ Σάρδεις καλουμένη πόλις, ἧς ὁ Κύρος τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἀρχων ἦν. (e) Ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἰὼν, μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν ἀπήτει, ὅς αὐτῷ ὠφείλετο.

4. Translate: (a) Each woman was evidently annoyed. (b) The remotest government in the direction of Phrygia (= the government the remotest). (c) He used to make an examination of his soldiers on horseback. (d) Going often to the gates of the king, he used to ask that all those cities be given to him. (e) I have no (= not) means for the support of those large armies.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attributive used without the substantive. 2. Agreement of the verb. 3. Vowel contraction. 4. Accent of *διήγε*. 5. *Means* in Greek. 6. Declension of *στλεγγίς, ἀγών, ἀγορά, ἐλπίς, ἐξετάσις*. 7. *Διά* with the accusative. 8. Formation of the aor. of *τίθημι, δίδωμι*. 9. Greek for "he was evidently." 10. The negative with the infin. 11. Accent of the infin. in *-ναι*. 12. Declension of *Μίδας*.

## LESSON XXVII.

## ANABASIS I. II. 15, 16.

## 1. NOTES.

1. ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, as [was the] custom to them [in entering] into battle: on the dat. cf. Κύρω βασίλεια ἦν XXIV.

2. ταχ-θή-ναι καὶ στή-ναι, to be arranged and to stand: (a) from τάττω, theme ταγ, cf. φυλάττειν, theme φυλακ XXI.; -θῆναι, ending as in λυθῆναι; note γ becomes χ before θ; (b) στήναι, aor. infin. act.; cf. δοῦναι XXVI.; verbs in -μι have the pres. and the aor. infin. act. in -ναι, — διδόναι, δοῦναι, ἰστάναι, στήναι. ἕκαστον, subj. of συν-τάξει. τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, the [men] of himself; cf. τοὺς οἴκοι XXI., the [men] at home.

3. τὸ δεξιόν, the right [wing]: cf. τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, the Greek [army] XXI. οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, the [men] with him. οἱ ἐκείνου, the [men] of, with, that one. Note how readily the substantive is omitted when easily supplied from the sense of the text.

4. οἱ δὲ παρ-ἤλαντον: cf. ὁ δέ, but he VIII.; on ἦ cf. ἀπ-ἦλθε VIII., εἶχε XXI.

5. τε-ταγ-μένοι: from τάττω, perf. pass. partic., theme ταγ, fut. τάξω, aor. ἔταξα, perf. mid. τέ-ταγ-μαι, aor. pass. ἐ-τάχ-θην; on the redup. cf. δεδομένοι XII.

6. κράνη: from κράνος, declined like εὖρος XXIII. χαλκᾶ for χάλκεα: nom. χαλκοῦς, declined like χουσαῖ XXVI.

7. ἐκ-κε-καλυ-μέν-ας: perf. partic.; cf. δεδομένοι XII., τεταγμένοι 5; from ἐκκαλύπτω.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Possession is denoted by the dat. with εἰμί, am.
2. γ coming before θ is changed to χ.
3. τάττω, theme ταγ.

4. The infin. in -ναι is accented on the penult.
5. Substantives are readily omitted when understood from the context, their place being frequently taken by a modifying adjective.
6. ε augments to η or ει.
7. The article with δέ has the force of a demonstrative.
8. The perf. mid. attaches the pers. and partic. ending directly to the reduplicated theme.
9. Contract adjectives like χαλκοῦς; accent the final syllable circumflex throughout.
10. Nouns in -ος are 2d declension masc. or 3d declension neuter.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |                 |                   |
|---|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. The tense systems . . . . .                                  | H. 303.         | G. 92, 4, I.-VII. |
| 2. Principal parts . . . . .                                    | H. 304, c.      | G. 92, 5.         |
| 3. Conjugation of λύω through<br>the fut. act. and aor. act.    | H. 315, 316.    | G. 96.            |
| 4. Augment of diphthongs . . . . .                              | H. 357.         | G. 103.           |
| 5. Reduplication of verbs begin-<br>ning with a vowel . . . . . | H. 367.         | G. 101, 3.        |
| 6. Accent of the verb . . . . .                                 | H. 386.         | G. 26.            |
| 7. Formation of fut. stem . . . . .                             | H. 420, 421, b. | G. 110, II.       |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 τὸ ἄρμα, chariot.                       | 9. εὐώνυμος, left.                       |
| 2. ἡ ἀρμάμαξα, carriage.                  | 10. ἡ ἴλη, troop, company.               |
| 3. ἡ ἀσπίς, shield.                       | 11. ἴστημι, <sup>2</sup> I set, station. |
| 4. δεξιός, dexter, right.                 | 12. ἡ κνημὶς, <sup>3</sup> greave.       |
| 5. εἶτα, then, thereupon.                 | 13. καλύπτω, I cover.                    |
| 6. ἕκαστος, each.                         | 14. τὸ κράνος, helmet.                   |
| 7. ἐκ-καλύπτω, <sup>1</sup> I uncover.    | 15. ὁ νόμος, custom.                     |
| 8. ἐπί (υρον); ἐπὶ τεττάρων,<br>in fours. | 16. παρ-ελαύνω, I march by.              |
|   | 17. πρῶτος, first.                       |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. Apo-calypse, Revelation.

<sup>2</sup> In the 2d aor., I stand, station myself.

<sup>3</sup> Leather leggings. to protect the lower part of the leg in warfare.

18. ἡ τάξις (ταγ-σις),<sup>1</sup> arrange-  
ment, company. 20. φοινικοῦς,<sup>2</sup> purple.  
19. τάττω, I arrange. 21. χαλκοῦς, brazen, of bronze.  
22. ὁ χιτῶν, tunic.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ταχθῆναι, στήναι, συντάξαι, ἐθεώρει, τεταγμένοι, ἐκκεκαλυμμένοι.

2. Decline: Ἕλλην, πόλις, τάξις, σῶμα, ἄρμα, γένος, κράνος, ἀπλοῦς χαλκοῦς, ἐλπίς, ἀσπίς, κνημίς.

3. Translate: (a) The Greeks were ordered to stand in fours. (b) And they (= but the), arranged in companies, were going up into the city, [which was] great and prosperous (pred. position). (c) And all the hoplites had golden helmets and tunics of bronze. (d) And it is said that Cyrus gave pay to all his soldiers. (e) He was uncovering his shield. (f) It was their custom (dat. construction) to fight those [who] dwelt (= dwelling) beyond the so-called Maeander River.

4. Translate: (a) Πολλὰς δ' ἐξετάσεις ποιήσει τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων δυνάμεως, πρὶν ἂν οἱ πολέμοι παραγένωνται. (b) Οὐκ οὖν ἦσθουτο τὸ ἄθλον στλεγγίς χρῦσῃ οὔσα. (c) Ἐκκαλύψουσι τὰς ἀσπίδας, ὅταν τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι δέη. (d) Χαλκᾶ δ' ἦν τὰ κράνη, ἃ αἱ τάξεις αἱ πρῶται ἔφερον. (e) Νόμος δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐστὶν ἀφ' ἵππου θηρεύειν, ὅταν ἑαυτοὺς γυμνάσαι βούλωνται.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. φ in ἐφ' ἄρματος. 2. κατ' ἴλας. 3. Augment of ε. 4. Different uses of παρά. 5. ὑπό with the genitive; with the dative. 6. Construction with ἐν, εἰς, σύν, περί, ἀμφί, ἐπί, πρός, διά. 7. The tense systems. 8. Fut. and aor. of themes ending in κ, γ. 9. Accent of the verb; of ἀπῆλθε. 10. ὡς . . . οὕτω. 11. Classes and orders of mutes. 12. γ before θ. 13. The numerals from 1 to 10.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. syn-tax.

<sup>2</sup> The Phoenicians are said to have discovered the purple dye.

## LESSON XXVIII.

## ANABASIS I. II. 17-20.

## 1. NOTES.

1. παρήλα-σε: 1st aor. from ἐλαύνω, theme ἐλα; cf. βαίνω, theme βα; on the imperf., cf. παρ-ἤλανον XXVII. στήσας: from ἴστημι, 1st aor. partic.; so στήσαι infin., but στήναι 2d aor. infin.; note, ἴστημι has 1st and 2d aor. forms. πέμπσας, = πέμπ-σας; cf. ἀπο-πέμψαι XXI. προ-βαλέ-σθαι: from βάλλω, theme βαλ; cf. ἐξ-έβαλ-εν XIII.; tense here? mid. voice, to throw before one's self. ἐπι-χωρή-σαι, to advance: cf. ἀπ-ε-χώρ-ει XXV., he retreated; on the form, cf. κρεμάσαι XXV.

2. προ-εἶπον, report: from εἶπον, I said; 2d aor. with no pres. form, but classed with λέγω; cf. εἶρηκα XXIII. ἐ-σάλπιγξε, he (the trumpeter) blew the trumpet: from σαλπίζω, theme σαλπιγγ; on γ nasal, cf. παραγγέλλει XXI. ἐπ-ῆε-σαν, they advanced: imperf. ind., irreg. formation, from ἐπι + ἵεναι, Lat. ire; cf. ἰ-όντες XXVI.; -σαν as in ἦ-σαν, e-rant.

3. ἐκ τούτου, from, out of, this; thereupon. θάττον προ-ιόντων, his ocus proeuntibus, [they] advancing more rapidly: (a) gen. abs., στρατιωτῶν being understood; cf. αὐτῶν πολεμούντων XV., παρεχόντων Πισιδῶν XIX.; (b) θάττον, compar. of adv. ταχέως, superl. τάχιστα XXIII. ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, from the spontaneous, spontaneously; note the omission of the substant.; cf. τὸ δεξιόν XXVII. τοῖς στρατιώταις: the dat. as in Κύρω ἦν XXIV.

4. ἔ-φυγ-ε(ν): from φεύγω, theme φυγ; cf. φυγᾶς, fugitive; tense here? why? οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς: read as if ἐκ were ἐν, the men in the market; cf. ἐκ τῶν πόλεων XXII. κατα-λιπ-όντες, leaving: κατα-λείπω, theme λιπ; tense here? ἰδοῦσα: masc. ἰδῶν, from εἶδ-ον, theme ἰδ. Lat. vid-eo; no pres. form, but classed as 2d aor. of ὁράω. ἐθαύμασε for ἐθανμαδ-σε. from θαυμάζω, theme θανμαδ; cf. ἀτιμάζω VIII.; on the loss of δ before σ, cf. φυγᾶς (= φυγαδ-ς). ἦσ-θη for ἦδ-θη, from ἦδ-ομαι dep.; on δ before θ. cf. ἀτιμασθεῖς VIII.

5. τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, the quickest way, straightway: note the adv. use of the accus.; ταχύς, quick; cf. the forms ταχέως, θάττον, τάχιστα ἐν ᾧ, in which [time]; cf. ἐν αἷς, in which [days]. τινα, quemdam, a certain: an enclitic for τινά; note the accent is thrown

upon the ultima of ἕτερον; cf. ἐρίζοντά οἱ XXV., nom. τῖς for τινε. αἰτιᾶ-σά-μενο-ς: from αἰτιάομαι (dep.); note, α does not become η before σ; cf. νικήσας XXV., ἡττηθείς XXV.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The theme of ελαύνω is ελα (aor. ἤλα-σε); so βαίνω, theme βα.
2. The theme of βάλλω is βαλ; of σαλπίζω, σαλπιγγ; of φεύγω, φυγ; of λείπω, λιπ.
3. ἴστημι has a 1st and 2d aor., the first being trans., the second intrans.
4. εἶπον, I said, is classed as the 2d aor. of λέγω; εἶδον, I saw, as the 2d aor. of ὁράω.
5. The accent of a verb does not precede the augment.
6. εἶμι, I go, is conjugated irregularly.
7. ταχέως is compared ταχέως, θάπτων, τάχιστα.
8. A verb containing the idea of separation causes the use of ἐκ for ἐν, even when the preposition has no connection with the verb.
9. θαυμάζω has the theme θαυμαδ, δ dropping before σ (fut. θαυμάσω), and becoming σ before a lingual mute.
10. The accus. is used adverbially.
11. τῖς, a certain, is an enclitic throughout its inflection; a proparoxytone before an enclitic takes an acute on the last syllable.
12. αἰτιάομαι does not change α to η in conjugation.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Labial and palatal mutes before a lingual mute . . . . . H. 51. G. 16, 1.
2. Declens. of σάλπιγξ . . . . . H. 174. G. 50.
3. Conj. of λῶω, fut., and 1st aor. act. H. 315, 316. G. 96.
4. Conj. of λείπω, 2d aor. act. . . . H. 320. G. 96, II.
5. Article with πᾶς and ὅλος . . . H. 672. G. 142, 4, N. 5.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἰτιάομαι, I accuse.
2. ἀρπάζω, I seize.
3. αὐτόματος,<sup>1</sup> spontaneous.
4. ὁ γέλωσ, laughter.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. automat-ic.

5. δι-αρπάζω, I plunder.
6. ὁ δρόμος,<sup>1</sup> a run.
7. ὁ δυνάστης,<sup>2</sup> officer.
8. εἶδον (ὁράω), I saw.
9. εἶπον (λέγω), I said.
10. ἔπ-ειμι, ἐπ-ιέναι, I advance.
11. ἐπι-χωρέω, I advance.
12. ὁ ἐρμηνεύς, interpreter.
13. ἕτερος,<sup>3</sup> other.
14. ἡδομαι, I am pleased.
15. θαυμάζω, I wonder.
16. ἡ κραυγή, shout.
17. ἡ λαμπρότης, brightness.
18. λείπω,<sup>4</sup> I leave.
19. καταλείπω, I leave behind.
20. μετά (with gen.), with.
21. ὅλος, whole.
22. πολέμιος,<sup>5</sup> hostile.
23. προ-βάλλω, I throw before, present (arms).
24. πρό-ειμι, προ-ιέναι, I go forward.
25. σαλπίζω, blow the trumpet.
26. ἡ σκηνή, tent.
27. ταχύς, quick.
28. ταχέως, quickly.
29. τρέπω, I turn.
30. ἐπι-τρέπω, I turn over to.
31. ἡ φάλαγξ, phalanx.
32. φεύγω, I flee.
33. ὁ φόβος,<sup>6</sup> fear.
34. ὁ φοινικιστής,<sup>7</sup> wearer of the purple.
35. τὰ ὄνια, goods for sale.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: παρήλασε, πέμψας, ἐπιχωρήσαι, ἐσάλπιγξε, καταλιπότες.
2. Decline: ἄρμα, κίλισσα, γέλωσ, λαμπρότης, ἐρμηνεύς, δυνάστης.
3. Translate: (a) And he announced to his friend to take (taking) what army he (dat.) had, and come straightway. (b) The guards indeed, becoming reconciled with the (men) in the city, send to the commanders what armies they had. (c) And he (ὁ) ordered those (who were) besieging the enemy (= hostiles) to advance quickly. (d) And they gladly obeyed. (e) They began to run.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The declension of φάλαγξ.
2. Some uses of the optative.
3. Future conditions with probability.
4. Tenses of the participle.
5. Uses of the imperfect indicative.
6. The cases after παρά.
7. Reduplication.
8. Greek for "he was evidently."
9. Future of themes ending in τ, δ, θ.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. hippo-drome, horse-race.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. hetero-dox, having other or wrong beliefs.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. hetero-dox, having other or wrong beliefs.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. ec-lip-se.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. hydro-phobia.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. δύναμαι.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. ec-lip-se.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. φοινικῶν XXVII.

## LESSON XXIX.

## ANABASIS I. II. 21-24.

## 1. NOTES.

1. ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν, they were attempting to enter: (a) cf. ἐπειρῶτο XIII.; (b) theme βαλ; cf. προ-βαλέσθαι XXVIII., ἐξέβαλεν XIII. ἀμαξιτός . . . ἀμήχανος κτέ, a wagon-road, . . . and impracticable for an army to enter. Note the mas. ending, although ὁδός is fem.; in Greek, as in Latin, there are adj. of two terminations, the mas. and fem. forms being alike. εἰσ-ελθεῖν: indic. εἰσ-ἦλθον; cf. ἀπ-ἦλθε VIII.; theme / pres. indic. εἰσ-έρχομαι dep. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, on the following day; sc. ἡμέρᾳ; note that the dat., like the Latin abl., denotes time when. λελοιπ-ὼς εἶη, that Syennesis had left, lit. was having left: (c) perf. opt., for the indic. of the dir. disc., λέλοιπε(ν), "Syennesis has left," cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι VI.; (d) λε-λοιπ-ὼς, perf. partic. act. of λείπω; note the redup., and the ending -ως = -οι-ς cf. ἐκπεπτωκ-ότ-ας XIII.; note the change of the theme λιπ to λοιπ, and that the perf. suffix -κα has been omitted; such perfects are called second perf.; so γράφ-ω γέ-γραφ-α, I have written. καὶ ὅτι . . . ἤκουε, and because he heard Tamōs having (i. e. that T. had) triremes [which were] sailing around, etc.; note the partic. after ἤκουε, and cf. παρὼν ἐτύγγανε III.; such partic., taking the place of an infin., are called supplementary. Οἱ ἤκουε, cf. ἤκουσε XXIII. καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου, and of Cyrus himself; but ὁ αὐτὸς Κῦρος, the same Cyrus; cf. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα XIII.

2. οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, nullo prohibente: οὐδεῖς, no one, accus. οὐδένα; cf. εἶνα XXIV. Does this construction denote time, cause, or condition? δένδρων . . . ἀμπέλων σύμπλεων full of trees . . . and of vines; note the genitives dependent on σύμπλεων; cf. the Eng. usage, full of; σύμπλεως masc., fem.; neut. σύμπλεων.

3. ἐξ-έ-λιπ-ον: on the form, cf. καταλιπόντες XXVIII.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Greek has adjectives of two terminations, the masculine and feminine forms being alike.

2. The dative denotes time when.

3. The perf. opt. act. is made up of the perf. partic. and the optative of the verb to be.

4. 2d perfects differ from 1st perfects in omitting the suffix κα.

5. A supplementary partic. may stand after ἀκούω, as after τυγχάνω.

6. αὐτός is intensive when it modifies a noun, provided it does not stand in the attributive position.

7. Adjectives of fulness are followed by the genitive case.

8. σύμπλεως has ω short as regards accent.

9. ἐπί with the gen. or the dat. denotes rest upon.

10. διά with the gen. = through; with the acc. = on account of.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ὁδός . . . . .	H. 153.	G. 42.
2. Adjectives of two terminations . . .	H. 225, 226.	G. 63.
3. Declension of εὐγενής, mas. and fem.	H. 230.	G. 66.
4. 1st perf. system, active voice . . .	H. 317.	G. 96.
5. 2d perf. system, active voice . . .	H. 321.	G. 96, II.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ὁ ἄγγελος, messenger.	19. μελίμη, millet.
2. τὸ ἄκρον, height, summit.	20. ἡ ὁδός, way.
3. ἀμαξιτός, passable for wagons.	21. ὄρθιος, straight.
4. ἀμήχανος, insurmountable.	22. τὸ ὄρος, mountain.
5. ἡ ἄμπελος, vine.	23. ὅτι (conjunct.), that, because.
6. βάλλω, I throw.	24. οὐ, where.
7. εἰσ-βάλλω, I throw in, make an entrance.	25. οὐδ-εῖς, nobody.
8. ἡ εἰσβολή, entrance.	26. ὄχυρός, fortified.
9. τὸ δένδρον, tree.	27. πάντη, on all sides.
10. διό, wherefore.	28. παντοδαπός, of all kinds.
11. εἴσω, within.	29. περιέχω, surround.
12. ἐκ-λείπω, I leave out.	30. πλέω, I sail; περι-πλέω, sail around.
13. ἐν-οικέω, I dwell in.	31. ὁ πῦρός, wheat.
14. ἐπίρρυτος, watered.	32. τὸ σήσαμον, sesam-e.
15. εἰσ-έρχομαι, εἰσ-ἦλθον, I enter.	33. ἡ τριήρης, tri-reme.
16. ἰσχυρός, mighty; -ὼς, mightily.	34. ὑστεραίος, next (following in time).
17. ἡ κριθή, barley.	35. ὑψηλός, high.
18. κωλύω, I prevent.	

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Principal parts of κωλύω; conjugation of the perf. system act. and mid. of κωλύω; conjugation of the fut., 2d aor., 2d perf. act. of λείπω.

2. Translate: (a) That good king has a large and beautiful park. (b) He was living in a large and well-watered plain. (c) The interpreters announced that those lofty mountains were fortified, and that the enemy were upon them. (d) In that same country there was much wheat. (e) Nobody can enter where the great king dwells. (f) On the following day he died, and the younger of the brothers became king.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Formation of the pluperf. ἐλελύκειν.
2. Different meanings of αὐτός.
3. Case following adverbs of place.
4. Indirect discourse.
5. Conjugation of ἔφυγον, 2d aor. system act.
6. The form ἐπειρώντο.
7. Construction with adj. of fulness.
8. Adj. of two terminations.
9. Compensative lengthening, with examples.

## LESSON XXX.—REVIEW.

## 1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. II. 1—I. II. 24.

## 2. GRAMMAR.

1. Labial and palatal mutes before a lingual mute: H. 51; G. 16, 1. Elision: H. 82; G. 17, 1. Enclitics: H. 113, 115, 116; G. 27, 28, 1, 2, 3.

2. Declension: γέφυρα H. 135; G. 37, 1, end. κωνίαις, H. 145; G. 37 (ταμίαις). ὁδός H. 153; G. 42. πούς, H. 172; G. 46, 4, n. 1, end. σάλπιγξ, H. 174; G. 50. δαίμων, H. 184; G. 50. γένος, H. 190, 191; G. 52, 2. Of Adjectives: contr. in -ους, H. 223, 224; G. 65. Of two terminations, H. 225, 226; G. 63. εὐγενής, H. 230; G. 66. εἰδαιμών, H. 235; G. 66. μείζων, H. 236; G. 72, 2, n. 1 (ἠδίω). λυθείς, H. 242; G. 68 (τιθείς). μέγας, H. 247; G. 70. The Relative: H. 275; G. 86. Numerals: 1-10, H. 288; G. 76.

3. Conjugation: Tense systems, H. 303; G. 92, 4, I-VII. Principal parts, H. 304, c; G. 92, 5. Variable vowel, H. 310; G. 113 and 1. Synopsis of λύω, H. 313; G. 95, 1. λύω, act. voice, H. 314-319; G. 96. λείπω, 2d aor. act., H. 320; G. 96, II.; and 2d perf., H. 321. Augment, H. 357; G. 103. Reduplication, H. 363-365, 367; G. 101, 1, 2, 3. Accent, H. 386; G. 26. Fut. stem, H. 420, 421, b; G. 110, II. 1st perf. stem, H. 446; G. 110, iv. b.

4. Syntax: Article with πᾶς, ὅλος, H. 672; G. 142, 4, n. 5. Time and space, H. 720; G. 161. παρά, πρὸς, H. 802, 805; G. 191, vi. 4, 6. Imperf., H. 830; G. 200.

## 3. VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

- |                  |                   |                    |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ὁ ἄγγελος.    | 24. ὁ ἐρμηνεύς.   | 47. ἡ παρασκευή.   |
| 2. ἡ ἀγορά       | 25. τὸ εὖρος.     | 48. ὁ πελταστής.   |
| 3. ὁ ἀγών.       | 26. ἡ ἡμέρα.      | 49. ἡ πηγὴ.        |
| 4. τὸ ἄθλον.     | 27. τὸ ἐθρίον.    | 50. τὸ πλέθρον.    |
| 5. τὸ ἄκρον.     | 28. ἡ θύρα.       | 51. τὸ πλοῖον.     |
| 6. ἡ ἀκρόπολις.  | 29. ἡ ἴλη.        | 52. ὁ ποταμός.     |
| 7. ἡ ἄμπελος.    | 30. ὁ ἵππεύς.     | 53. ὁ πούς.        |
| 8. τὸ ἄντρον.    | 31. ὁ ἵππος.      | 54. ὁ πῦρός.       |
| 9. ὁ ἀριθμός.    | 32. ἡ κνημίς.     | 55. τὸ σήσαμον.    |
| 10. τὸ ἄρμα.     | 33. τὸ κράνος.    | 56. ἡ σκηνή.       |
| 11. ἡ ἀρμάμαξα.  | 34. ἡ κραυγή.     | 57. ἡ σοφία.       |
| 12. ἡ ἀσπίς.     | 35. ἡ κρήνη.      | 58. ὁ σταθμός.     |
| 13. τὰ βασίλεια. | 36. ἡ κριθὴ.      | 59. ἡ σπλεγγίς.    |
| 14. ὁ γέλως.     | 37. ἡ λαμπρότης.  | 60. ἡ στρατία.     |
| 15. ἡ γέφυρα.    | 38. ἡ μάχη.       | 61. ὁ στολός.      |
| 16. ὁ γυμνής.    | 39. ἡ μελίμη.     | 62. ἡ τάξις.       |
| 17. ἡ γυνή.      | 40. ὁ νόμος.      | 63. ὁ τοξότης.     |
| 18. τὸ δένδρον.  | 41. ἡ ὁδός.       | 64. ἡ τριήρης.     |
| 19. τὸ δέρμα.    | 42. ὁ οἶνος.      | 65. ἡ φάλαγξ.      |
| 20. ὁ δρόμος.    | 43. τὰ ὅπλα.      | 66. ὁ φόβος.       |
| 21. ὁ δυνάστης.  | 44. τὸ ὄρος.      | 67. ὁ φοινικιατὴς. |
| 22. ἡ ἐλπίς.     | 45. ὁ παράδεισος. | 68. ὁ χιτών.       |
| 23. ἡ ἐξέτασις   | 46. ἡ παρασάγγη.  | 69. τὰ ὄνια.       |



## VERBS.

- |                  |                   |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. αἰτιάομαι.    | 26. ἔπ-ειμι.      | 51. νικάω.        |
| 2. ἀκούω.        | 27. ἐπι-δείκνυμι. | 52. οἰκοδομέω.    |
| 3. ἀνιάω.        | 28. ἐπι-τρέπω.    | 53. ὀράω.         |
| 4. ἀπ-αιτέω.     | 29. ἐπι-χωρέω.    | 54. ὀφείλω.       |
| 5. ἀπο-δίδωμι.   | 30. ἐρίζω.        | 55. παρα-σκευάζω. |
| 6. ἀπο-χωρέω.    | 31. ζεύγνυμι.     | 56. πάρ-ειμι.     |
| 7. ἀρπάζω.       | 32. ἡγέομαι.      | 57. παρ-ελαύνω.   |
| 8. βάλλω.        | 33. ἥδομαι.       | 58. παύω.         |
| 9. δια-βαίνω.    | 34. ἤκω.          | 59. περι-έχω.     |
| 10. δι-άγω.      | 35. ἠττάομαι.     | 60. πιστεύω.      |
| 11. δι-αρπάζω.   | 36. θαυμάζω.      | 61. πλέω.         |
| 12. δοκεῖ.       | 37. θεωρέω.       | 62. πορεύομαι.    |
| 13. εἶδον.       | 38. θηρεύω.       | 63. προ-βάλλω.    |
| 14. εἶμι.        | 39. θύω.          | 64. πρό-ειμι.     |
| 15. εἶμι.        | 40. ἴστημι.       | 65. προ-ίστημι.   |
| 16. εἶπον.       | 41. καλέω.        | 66. ῥέω.          |
| 17. εἰσ-βάλλω.   | 42. καλύπτω.      | 67. σαλπίζω.      |
| 18. εἰσ-έρχομαι. | 43. κατ-άγω.      | 68. συγ-γίγνομαι. |
| 19. ἐκ-δέρω.     | 44. κατα-νοέω.    | 69. συν-αλλάττω.  |
| 20. ἐκ-καλύπτω.  | 45. κεράννυμι.    | 70. τάττω.        |
| 21. ἐκ-λείπω.    | 46. κρεμάννυμι.   | 71. τίθημι.       |
| 22. ἐμ-βάλλω.    | 47. κωλύω.        | 72. τρέπω.        |
| 23. ἐν-οικέω.    | 48. λέγω.         | 73. ὑπισχνέομαι.  |
| 24. ἐξ-ελαύνω.   | 49. λείπω.        | 74. φεύγω.        |
| 25. ἔπ-ειμι.     | 50. μένω.         | 75. φυλάττω.      |

## ADJECTIVES.

- |                |               |                 |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. ἄγριος      | 13. εὐδαίμων. | 25. παντοδαπός. |
| 2. ἀμαξιτός.   | 14. εἰώνυμος. | 26. πλήρης.     |
| 3. ἀμήχανος.   | 15. ἰσχυρός.  | 27. πολέμιος.   |
| 4. αὐτόματος.  | 16. μέγας.    | 28. πολὺς.      |
| 5. βαρβαρικός. | 17. μείζων.   | 29. πρῶτος.     |
| 6. δεξιός.     | 18. μέσος.    | 30. σύμπας.     |
| 7. δῆλος.      | 19. ξενικός.  | 31. ταχύς.      |
| 8. Ἑλληνικός.  | 20. ὄλος.     | 32. ὑστεραίος.  |
| 9. ἐπίρρυτος.  | 21. ὀρθιος.   | 33. ὑψηλός.     |
| 10. ἐρμυνός.   | 22. ὅσος.     | 34. φοινικεύς.  |
| 11. ἔσχατος.   | 23. οὐδ-είς.  | 35. χαλκοῦς.    |
| 12. ἔτερος.    | 24. ὀχυρός.   | 36. χρῖσοῦς.    |

## ADVERBS.

- |             |                 |               |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. ἄνω.     | 6. ἤδη.         | 11. πάντη.    |
| 2. διό.     | 7. ἰσχυρῶς.     | 12. πλέον.    |
| 3. εἶτα.    | 8. ὄθεν.        | 13. πολλάκις. |
| 4. εἴσω.    | 9. οὐ.          | 14. ταχέως.   |
| 5. ἐνταῦθα. | 10. παντάπασιν. | 15. τάχιστα.  |

## NUMERALS.

- |                |                 |                    |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. εἴκοσι(ν).  | 4. πεντακόσιοι. | 7. δισχίλιοι.      |
| 2. τριάκοντα.  | 5. ὀκτακόσιοι.  | 8. τετρακισχίλιοι. |
| 3. τριακόσιοι. | 6. χίλιοι.      | 9. μύριοι.         |

## PREPOSITIONS.

- |                |                |                    |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. περί.       | 3. διά (gen.). | 5. ἐπί (τετταρων). |
| 2. ὑπό (dat.). | 4. ὡς.         | 6. μετά.           |

## CONJUNCTIONS.

- |               |         |          |
|---------------|---------|----------|
| 1. ὅτε, ἐπεὶ. | 2. ὅτι. | 3. πρίν. |
|---------------|---------|----------|

## LESSON XXXI.

## ANABASIS I. II. 25-27.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 25. ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνή: cf. XXVI. § 12. προτέρᾳ Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις, *maturius Cyro quinque diebus, earlier (than) Cyrus by five days.* Note, προτέρᾳ agrees with γυνή; on the comparative ending, cf. πρεσβύ-τερο-ς I. Κύρου, genitive case, dependent upon the comparative; cf. the Latin use of the ablative. ἡμέραις, dative, denoting the interval or degree of difference between the queen's arrival and that of Cyrus; cf. the Latin usage. τῇ ὑπερβολῇ . . . τῇ . . . πεδίον: on the order, cf. τοῖς Θραῖξι . . . οἰκοῦσι XVI. ἀπ-όλο-ντο: from ἀπ-όλ-λυ-μι (= ὀλ-νυ-μι, cf. ἀπο-δείκ-νυ-μι), theme ὀλ. Tense here? ἔ-φα-σαν, they said: from φη-μί, Latin *fa-ri*; on -σαν, ending 3d plur., cf. εἶη-

σαν XI., ἀφ-ειστήκε-σαν XII. κατα-κοπ-ῆ-ναι : 2d aor. pass. infin. ; pass. suffix -ε, lengthened to η before the infin. ending ; cf. συναλλαγ-έ-ντι XXI. ὑπο-λειφ-θέντας : from λείπ-ω, theme λιπ ; cf. καταλιπόντες XXVIII. On φ for π before θ, cf. ταχ-θῆναι XXVII. εὐρ-εῖν : from εὐρ-ίσκω, theme εὐρ. Tense here ?

§ 26. οὔτε . . . ἐλθεῖν ἔφη, οὔτε ἰέναι ἤθελε, he said that he had not (lit. neither) come, nor was he willing, etc. ἑαυτοῦ, than himself : on the case, cf. Κύρου, § 25. οὐδενί . . . εἰς χεῖρας, for no one into the hands, = into the hands of no one : cf. sese Caesari ad pedes projecerunt. In both instances the English prefers the genitive construction. Note that the two negatives, οὔτε . . . οὐδενί, do not make an affirmative.

§ 27. ἔδωκε : on the form, cf. ἀπέδωκε XXVI. § 12. χρήματα πολλά : cf. XXVI. § 12. εἰς τὴν στρατιάν : cf. εἰς τὴν τροφήν XVI. Κύρος : subject of an omitted ἔδωκε. παρὰ βασιλεῖ, by the side of the king ; i. e. at the Persian court. καὶ . . . χώρῳ . . . ἀφ-αρπάζεσθαι, and that his country be no longer plundered : object of ἔδωκε ; on the infin., used as a noun, cf. ἀποστήναι XIII., ἀθροίζειν XIV. ἡρπασ-μένα : from ἀρπάζω, theme ἀρπαδ. Note the change of δ to σ before μ ; on the form, cf. δεδομένοι XII.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The genitive, dependent upon a noun, occurs in the attributive position.
2. The genitive follows the comparative when ἤ, than, is omitted.
3. Degree of difference is expressed by the dative.
4. The suffix -τερο- forms comparatives.
5. The attributive order is : article, attributive, substantive ; or (article), substantive, article, attributive.
6. ὄλ is the theme of ὄλλυμι ; εὐρ, of εὐρίσκω.
7. -σαν indicates the 3d plural, as in ἔφα-σαν, εἶη-σαν, ἐλύθη-σαν.
8. The Greek has a 1st aorist passive suffix (θε-) ; also one for the 2d aorist (ε-).
9. The infinitive is used substantively, with or without the article.
10. π and β become φ before θ.
11. Lingual mutes become σ before μ.
12. The dative occurs in the sense of an English possessive genitive.
13. δίδωμι forms its 1st aorist with -κα- for -σα-.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of πολὺς . . . H. 247. G. 70.
2. Accent of infinitives and participles . . . . . H. 389. G. 26, (1), (2), (3).
3. Classes of verbs : 1st and 2d classes . . . . . H. 392-394. G. 107, 108, I., II.
4. Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel . H. 367. G. 101, 3.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ὁ ἀκινάκης, dagger.                    | 16. ἡ πίστις, pledge.                 |
| 2. τὸ ἀνδράποδον, slave.                  | 17. πλανάομαι, <sup>3</sup> I wander. |
| 3. ἀπ-όλλυμι, I destroy.                  | 18. πού, anywhere.                    |
| 4. τὸ δῶρον, <sup>1</sup> gift.           | 19. πῶ, yet.                          |
| 5. ἐθέλω, am willing, wish.               | 20. πρότερος, earlier.                |
| 6. εἰς-ελαύνω, march into.                | 21. ἡ στολή, gown.                    |
| 7. ἑκατόν, hundred.                       | 22. ὁ στρεπτός, necklace.             |
| 8. ἐν-τυγχάνω, happen upon.               | 23. τίμιος, <sup>4</sup> honorable.   |
| 9. εὐρίσκω, I find.                       | 24. τότε, then.                       |
| 10. κόπτω, cut ; κατα-κόπτω, cut          | 25. ἡ ὑπερ-βολή, passage over.        |
| 11. κρείττων, stronger. [down.            | 26. ὑπο-λείπω, I leave.               |
| 12. ὁ λόχος, company.                     | 27. φη-μί, <sup>5</sup> I say.        |
| 13. ὁ ὄλ-εθρος, <sup>2</sup> destruction. | 28. ἡ χεῖρ, <sup>6</sup> hand.        |
| 14. ὀργίζομαι, am angry.                  | 29. χρῦσο-χάλινος, golden bridle.     |
| 15. οὐδεῖς, nobody, no one.               | 30. τὸ ψέλιον, bracelet.              |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (a) Οὐχ<sup>7</sup> εὐρεῖν τὸν καλὸν ἀκινάκην δύναμαι. ἐν ὁ φύλαξ ἐν τῇ σκημῇ ὑπέλειπεν. (b) Εἶδον τὴν τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως χεῖρα ἔχουσαν πολλὰ ψέλια ἐφ' αὐτῇ. (c) Οὐδεῖς ἐστι κρείττων τοῦ μεγάλου

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. Theo-dore, divine gift.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. ὄλ-λυμι.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. plan-et, wanderer among fixed stars.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. ἀ-τιμάζω, I dishonor.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. eu-phem-ism, blas-pheme.

<sup>6</sup> Eng. chir-ography.

<sup>7</sup> Note the change of κ (οὐκ) to χ before the following rough breathing.

βασιλέως. (d) Οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἦν τότε τοῦ Κύρου πρεσβύτερος ἑκατὸν ἡμέραις ὅτε τὰ στρατεύματα ἀπόλετο.

2. Analyze: διήρπασαν, μετεπέμπετο, ἔδωκε, ἐντυγχάνωσιν.

3. Translate: (a) But Parysatis, the wife of Darius, arrives in the city six days before he [does]. (b) The passage of those mountains is exceedingly difficult (ἀμήχανος). (c) I am not willing to fall into the hands of any one stronger than myself. (d) Many gifts are considered honorable at court.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. παρά. 2. Use of the infinitive. 3. Declension of ὄς; of μείζων, κρείττων. 4. Degree of difference. 5. Case with comparatives. 6. Labial and palatal mutes before τ, δ, θ. 7. Accent of the verb. 8. Declension of χρῦσοῦς. 9. Accent in declension. 10. Formation of the perfect stem. 11. Reduplication. 12. Accent in οὐδενί πω, ἦν που. 13. Quantity of ι in ἀφίκετο. 14. Adverbial accusative.

## LESSON XXXII.

### ANABASIS I. III. 1-3.

#### 1. NOTES.

§ 1. ἔμεινε: note, the singular, although two subjects follow. οὐκ ἔφασαν κτέ,<sup>1</sup> refused (lit. said not) to go forward. On ἔφασαν, cf. XXXI. § 25; on ἰέναι, cf. ἰόντες XXVI. § 11; τοῦ πρόσω, of the forward, i. e. any part of the [journey] forward. ὑπ-ώπτευν . . . ἰέναι, sc. αὐτόν, they suspected him to be going. μισθω-θῆ-ναι κτέ, they said [themselves, sc. ἑαυτοῦς] to be hired not for that [purpose]. Note, after φημί, the infinitive is used in the indirect discourse; not ὅτι with a finite mode. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος, primus autem Clearchus, Clearchus was the first to, etc. αὐτοῦ: on the attributive position, cf. τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρῃ XIX. ἐβιάζετο, was forcing, i. e. was trying to force; ἔβαλλον, they kept throwing. Note the two different uses of the imperfect. ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιτο, whenever they might begin, whenever they began; aor. opt.,

<sup>1</sup> καὶ τὰ ἕτερα, and the rest, and so forth.

from ἄρχω. On the mode, cf. ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX.; ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιο XXIV.

§ 2. μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε κτέ, escaped little [so as] not to be stoned, i. e. narrowly escaped being, etc. Note the redundant use of the negative. μικρὸν: adv. acc.; cf. τὴν ταχίστην ὁδὸν XXVIII. § 20. ὕστερον, afterwards: cf. preceding note. ἔγνων, he knew: from γι-γνώ-σκω, Lat. gnō-sco, Eng. kno-w. Theme? tense? Note, there is no personal ending; cf. κατ-έστη VI., ἀν-έβη V. συν-ήγαγ-ε(ν): on the form, cf. κατ-αγάγ-οι XXII. § 2. ἐ-στ-ώς: 2d pers. partic., from ἴ-στη-μι; cf. λε-λοιπ-ώς XXIX. § 21. On the ending -οι, cf. ἐκ-πεπτω-κ-ότ-ας XIII.

§ 3. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, O men soldiers, i. e. fellow-soldiers: ἄνδρες used for politeness, as in English, "gentlemen of the jury." χαλεπὸς φέρω, aegre fero, am troubled, grieved. τῶν παροῦσι πράγμασιν, because of the present affairs. Note that the dative, like the Latin ablative, may express cause. ἐγένετο, became: cf. δρόμος ἐγένετο XXVIII. τὰ τε ἄλλα κτέ, he both honored me in other matters, and gave me, etc., i. e., he gave me ten thousand darics, besides honoring me in other ways. εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατ-ε-θέ-μην, laid aside for the (= my) private [use]. θε, theme of what verb? tense here? note the voice. Note the omission of the substantive after ἴδιον; cf. τὸ δεξιόν XXVII. ἐμοί, mihi; nom. ἐγώ, ego.

#### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A verb with two subjects may agree in number with the nearest only.
2. οὐ φημι, signifies I refuse.
3. εἶμι, eo, ire, has the theme ι.
4. After φημί the main verb of the indirect discourse is in the infinitive.
5. ἑαυτοῦ takes the attributive position.
6. πρῶτος Κλέαρχος means Clearchus was the first, etc.
7. An attempted act is denoted by the imperfect.
8. A continued past act is denoted by the imperfect.
9. ἐπεὶ with the optative forms a conditional relative sentence, referring to no particular, but to a general, occasion.
10. The neuter accusative is used with an adverbial force.
11. γινώσκω, theme γνο; τίθημι, theme θε.
12. ἀνὴρ is used in addresses for politeness or respect.
13. The dative may express cause.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                 |             |                  |
|---------------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Present system of λύω . . .  | H. 314.     | G. 96.           |
| 2. Classes of verbs . . . . .   | H. 392-400. | G. 108, I.-IV.   |
| 3. Position of ἐαυτοῦ . . . . . | H. 673, b.  | G. 142, 4, N. 3. |
| 4. τὰ ἄλλα . . . . .            | H. 704.     | G. 142, 2, N. 3. |
| 5. Attempted action . . . . .   | H. 832.     | G. 200, N. 2.    |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ἄρχω, <sup>1</sup> I begin.                        | 14. δράω, <sup>10</sup> I see.              |
| 2. βιάζομαι, I force.                                 | 15. οὐ φημι, I refuse, deny.                |
| 3. γινώσκω, <sup>2</sup> I know.                      | 16. ἡ πατρίς, fatherland.                   |
| 4. δακρύω, <sup>3</sup> I weep.                       | 17. πρόσω, forward.                         |
| 5. δαπανάω, I expend.                                 | 18. πρῶτος, <sup>11</sup> first.            |
| 6. ἡ ἐκκλησιᾶ, <sup>4</sup> assembly.                 | 19. σιωπάω. I am silent.                    |
| 7. ἐκφεύγω, <sup>5</sup> I flee, aor. escape.         | 20. συνάγω, <sup>12</sup> I bring together. |
| 8. ἐπὶ τούτῳ, for that (purpose).                     | 21. τιμάω, I honor.                         |
| 9. ὁ ἴδιος, <sup>6</sup> private.                     | 22. ὑμεῖς, ye; σύ, thou.                    |
| 10. καταπετρόω, <sup>7</sup> I stone down (to death). | 23. τὸ ὑποζύγιον, pack animal.              |
| 11. καθ-ηδυπαθέω, I waste in lux-                     | 24. ὕστερον, <sup>13</sup> later.           |
| 12. μικρός, <sup>8</sup> small. [ury.                 | 25. φέρω, <sup>14</sup> I bear.             |
| 13. μισθώω, <sup>9</sup> I hire.                      | 26. χαλεπῶς, grievously.                    |
|   | 27. ὁ χρόνος, <sup>15</sup> time.           |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Analyze: μισθωθῆναι, ἵεναι, ἄρξαιντο, δυνήσεται, συνήγαγον, ἐδαπάνων.
- Difference between ἔβαλλον and ἔβαλον, ἐξέφυγε and ἐξέφευγε.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <sup>1</sup> Cf. arch-aic, ancient.                                      | <sup>2</sup> Cf. a-gno-stic.                       |
| <sup>3</sup> Lat. lacru-ma, tear.  | <sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. ecclesia-stical; Fr. église. |
| <sup>5</sup> Lit. flee away.   | <sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. idio-synecrasy.              |
| <sup>7</sup> Cf. Lat. petra, rock; petr-oleum, rock-oil.                 | <sup>8</sup> Cf. Eng. micro-scope.                 |
| <sup>9</sup> Cf. μισθός, pay.  | <sup>10</sup> Cf. Eng. pan-orama.                  |
| <sup>11</sup> Cf. Eng. proto-plasm.                                      | <sup>12</sup> Cf. Eng. synagogue.                  |
| <sup>13</sup> Note the comparative ending -τερο-.                        | <sup>14</sup> Cf. Lat fero, Eng. bear.             |
| <sup>15</sup> Cf. Eng. chronic, chron-icle, chron-ometer, ana-chron-ism. |  |

3. Principal parts of δακρύω, τιμάω, σιωπάω, δαπανάω. Translate βιάσομαι, ἐβιασάμην, βεβίασμαι, ἐβιάσθην. Conjugate φεύγω, 2d aorist active system: H. 320; G. 96, II.

4. Translate: (a) He remained in the city many days. (b) Messengers said (εἶπον) that the enemy (hostiles) broke down (καταλύω) the bridge on the following day. (c) The width of that river is twenty feet. (d) I give the soldiers pay for (= of) six months, besides honoring them in other respects.

5. Classify: ὑποπτεύω, μισθώω, βιάζομαι, βάλλω, ἄγω, σιωπάω.

6. Translate: (a) Πολὺν δὲ χρόνον ἐστῶς, ἐσιώπᾳ. (b) Μικρὸν ἐκφεύγει τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα μὴ κατακοπῆναι. (c) Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προΐεναι οὐκ ἐδύνατο τὴν ὁδὸν εὐρεῖν. (d) Οὐκ ἔφασαν ἐν Ἴσσοις μένειν (e) Ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ οὐκ ἔφη χρήματα ἀποδιδόναι.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- The prepositions πρὸς, παρά, ἐπί, διά, μετά, σύν, ἐν, εἰς, κατά.
- τὰ ἄλλα ἐτίμησε.
- Indirect discourse after φημί.
- Supplementary participle.
- Verb accent.
- Verb followed by two subjects.
- ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο.
- Uses of the imperfect.
- Cause.
- Second aorist of ἄγω.
- Conditional relative sentences (subjunctive, optative, ἄν, general time; discuss under each head).
- Comparison of adjectives.
- Special Greek uses of the genitive case.
- Future conditions with probability.

## LESSON XXXIII.

## ANABASIS I. III. 4, 5.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 4. πρῶτον: on the construction, cf. μικρὸν XXXII. § 2. μεθ' ὑμῶν, with you: cf. ἐφ' ᾧ XXII. § 2. Meaning of μετά with the accusative? αὐτοὺς . . . βουλομένους, them wishing, i. e. because they wished. Note that the participle here marks the circumstances under which Clearchus fought. ἀφ-αιρείσθαι . . . Ἑλληνας . . . γῆν, to deprive the Greeks of their land. Note, both nouns are accusative after the

verb; cf. αἰτεῖ κτέ XVII. δέ-οιτο: indirect middle; optative, because the verb on which it depends is optative. ὠφελ-οίην, I might aid: from ὠφελέω; cf. ὠφέλει XVI.; same as ὠφελέ-οιμι (= ὠφελοῖμι), cf. λύ-οιμι. On the mode, cf. ἔχουεν, εἶσαν XI. ἀνθ' ὧν κτέ, in return for what I suffered well by him, i. e. in return for the favors I enjoyed at his hand. ἀνθ' ὧν: for ἀντὶ ὧν, cf. μεθ' ὑμῶν above. ἔπαθ-ον, I suffered: from πάσχω (for παθ-σκω), theme παθ. Tense here? ἵπ' ἐκείνου, ab eo: cf. ὑπὸ ἀντιστασιωτῶν XVII.

§ 5. ἀνάγκη, sc. ἐστί, it is necessity, necessary. ὑμᾶς προδόντα, betraying, i. e. to betray you and: nom. προδούς, = προ-δο-(ντ)-ς φιλία χρῆσθαι; from χράομαι, dep. The dat. is like the Latin abl. with utor. ψευ-σά-μενο-ν deceiving, i. e. to deceive, be false, and, etc.: from ψεύδω. Note the loss of δ before σ in the aor. δίκαια just things, right: neut. plur. ὅτι ἂν δέη, whatsoever (= if anything) may be necessary: conditional relative sentence. Note that the subjunctive stands after a primary tense; on the optative in a conditional relative sentence, cf. ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX. Note that when the subjunctive is used, ἂν follows the relative. δέ-η: on the form, cf. λύ-η (pres. subj.). πείσο-μαι: from πάσχω; fut. πείσο-μαι (note, loss of θ), 2d aor. ἔπαθον. καὶ οὔποτε κτέ, and never shall nobody (= anybody) say that, etc.: the redundant negative as in XXXI. § 26. ἐρεῖ: classed as fut. of φημί. ὡς: conj. like ὅτι, = that. ἀγαγών: on the form, cf. συν-ήγαγον XXXII. § 2. εἰλόμην, I took for myself, I chose: from the theme εἰλ, pres. αἰρέω; on the augment, cf. εἶχε XXI.; classed as 2d aor. of αἰρέω; fut. αἰρήσω, aor. εἶλον.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter accusative of the adjective is used adverbially.
2. μετά becomes μεθ' in losing its final vowel before a vowel with the rough breathing.
3. μετά with the genitive = with. This is more frequent in Attic prose than σύν with the dative.
4. A circumstantial participle marks the circumstances under which an act occurs: cause, condition, time, etc.
5. ἀφ-αιρέω is followed by the accusative of the thing taken and of the person from whom it is taken.
6. A verb depending upon an optative may itself be in the optative.

7. The optative is regularly used in purpose clauses when the main verb is in a past tense.

8. πάσχω is for παθσκω; the theme is παθ; fut. πείσομαι for πενθ-σομαι.

9. ὑπό with the genitive denotes agency; with the dative, = under.

10. -οίην as an optative ending has the same force as -οιμι.

11. αἰρέω has the theme εἰλ in the 2d aorist.

12. δίδο-ντ, δο-ντ, form the nominative δίδούς, δούς.

13. χράομαι is followed by the dative, as the Latin utor is followed by the ablative. χρά-εσθαι contracts ἀ-ε to ἦ, becoming χρῆσθαι.

14. μοί is an enclitic, but ἐμοί is not.

15. ε augments to ει in εἶλον, theme εἰλ, as in ἔχω, εἶχον (imperfect).

16. πάσχω and αἰρέω have irregular principal parts.

17. Redundant negatives do not annul but intensify one another when the second is a compound negative.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Future and 1st aorist system of λύω . . .	H. 315, 316.	G. 96.
2. Verb endings . . .	H. 375-376, 379.	G. 112, 114, 115.
3. First five classes of verbs . . . . .	H. 392-402.	G. 108, I.-V.
4. Declension of δίδούς	H. 242.	G. 68 (δεικνύς).
5. Principal parts of πάσχω, αἰρέω . . .	H. 533, 11; 539, 1.	G. pages 330, 351.
6. Verbs of depriving . . .	H. 724.	G. 164.
7. Case with χράομαι . . .	H. 777.	G. 188, n. 2.
8. Purpose clauses . . .	H. 881.	G. 216, 1, 3.
9. Participles . . . . .	H. 968, 980.	G. 275, 277, 279.
10. Contr. of α-ε in χράομαι . . . . .	H. 412.	G. 98, n. 2.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. αἰρέω, I take.                   | 4. ἀφ-αιρέω, I take away.             |
| 2. ἀντί, instead of, in return for. | 5. δέω, I want; δεῖ, it is necessary. |
| 3. ἡ ἀνάγκη, necessity.             |                                       |

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 6. δίκαιος, just, right.              | 12. πάσχω, <sup>3</sup> I suffer.           |
| 7. ἐξ-ελαύνω, I drive out, march.     | 13. προ-δίδωμι, <sup>4</sup> I betray.      |
| 8. ἐρῶ (future of φημί), I shall say. | 14. τιμωρέω, I punish.                      |
| 9. εὖ, <sup>1</sup> well.             | 15. ὑπέρ, <sup>5</sup> above, in behalf of. |
| 10. μετά (with gen.), with.           | 16. χράσμαι (deponent), I use.              |
| 11. οἶδα, <sup>2</sup> I know.        | 17. ψεύδω, <sup>6</sup> I deceive.          |
|                                       | 18. ὡς, ὅτι (conj.), that.                  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

- Analyze: ἐτιμωρούμεν, ἀφαιρείσθαι, ἐκάλει, ψευδάμενον.
- Decline: Θράξ, Ἑλλάς, ἐνοικῶν, γῆ, ὄς, φιλιᾶ.
- Explain: ἐκ τῆς for ἐξ τῆς; the accent in εἶ τι, δὴ μοι.
- Principal parts of ἀφελέω, πολεμέω, πορεύομαι.
- Translate: (a) Ἄνθ' ὃν εὖ ἔπαθε ὑπ' ἐμοῦ, ἐπιβουλεύει δὴ τῇ ἀρχῇ. (b) Πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς πολεμήσουσι καὶ πειράσουσι ὑμᾶς τὴν βασιλείαν ἀφαιρεῖν. (c) ἠθέλον τῇ φιλιᾷ τῇ Κύρου χρῆσθαι. (d) Εἶλον, εἰδόμην.
- Translate: (a) We do not wish to fall into the hands of the great king. (b) I know that I shall not be able to force you. (c) I do not know if I am acting rightly; but I chose to be with you, and to suffer whatever might be necessary.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- Circumstantial participle.
- Supplementary participle.
- Special Greek uses of the accusative; of the genitive.
- Accent of participles and infinitives.
- ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιτο.
- ἀντί, ὑπέρ, μετά.
- Not, with imperative.
- The correlative of μὲν; of μὲν, beginning § 4.
- Words in the attributive position.
- Ending -οίην.
- Elision.
- Accent in the case of enclitics.
- Redundant negatives.
- The subjunctive and the optative in conditional relative sentences.
- Uses of the imperfect.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. εὖ-δαίμων, having the gods well-disposed; fortunate.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. wit, wot, wis-dom.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lat. pro-do.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. pseudo-nym.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. path-etic, sorrowful.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. over; Lat. super.

## LESSON XXXIV.

## ANABASIS I. III. 6-8.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 6. ἐπεὶ, since. ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι: cf. ἐπίστευον αὐτῶν XXII. § 2; cf. the similar use of the dative in Latin, mihi parēre, credere. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν . . . ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, and with you, on the one hand, I think I would be (puto me futurum esse), etc. Note the condition in σὺν ὑμῖν, if I were to be with you, — εἰ σὺν ὑμῖν εἶην. The conclusion might be τίμιος ἂν εἶην. οἶμαι shows the modesty of the speaker. In ἂν οἶμαι τίμιος, ἂν is construed with the inf. εἶναι and shows that the inf. is here equivalent to the opt. Note the form of statement in modest fut. cond.: εἰ with the optative in the condition, ἂν with the optative in the conclusion. On confident fut. cond., with probability (εἰάν with subjunctive in the condition, future indicative, or some form expressing futurity, in the conclusion), cf. XXII. N. 4, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ὅπου ἂν ᾧ: on the subjunct. ᾧ, Lat. sim, cf. ὅτι ἂν δέη, § 5. ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος . . . εἶναι, but if I should be, etc. . . . I would not be, methinks, etc. οὐτ' ἂν . . . οὐτ' ἂν: note the redundant negatives, the repeated ἂν, and the consequent emphasis. ὡς ἐμοῦ . . . ἰόντος . . . καὶ ὑμεῖς (sc. ἴητε, eatis) κτέ, so make up your minds as if, i.e. on the understanding that, I am going, etc.; cf. ὡς παρεχόντων XIX.

§ 7. οἱ τε . . . καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, both those of that one himself and the rest. Note the partitive apposition. αὐτοῦ, cf. αὐτοῦ Κύρου XXIX.

§ 21. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ὅτι οὐ φαίη, hearing this, that he refused. What they heard was Κλέαρχος οὐ φησι (indic.). But Xenophon puts this in the indirect discourse; hence the optative. On the form, cf. ε-ἴη XXIX. § 21; on οὐ φημι, cf. οὐκ ἔφασαν XXXII. πλείους, plūres, contracted form, = πλείονες; irregular comparative of πολὺς; cf. πλέον XXVI. § 11. Significations of παρά in this section?

§ 8. τοῖσι: on the case, cf. πράγμασι XXXII. λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, secretly (= without the knowledge) of the soldiers. The genitive as in εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων XXIX. θαρρεῖν, be of good cheer. Note the infinitive for the imperative of the direct discourse. ὡς καταστησομένων κτέ as these matters being about to (= would) settle themselves into

the necessity; would turn out all right. Cf. κατέστη VI. δέον: pres. part. neut., from δέω, I need. Note the substantive use, and cf. ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII. μεταπέμπεσθαι κτέ, and he bade him send for [him, i. e. Clearchus]; but he (ipse, Clearchus) refused, etc.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἐπεὶ, = since, or when.
2. πείθομαι is followed by the dative of the person persuaded.
3. A preposition with its noun may have the force of a condition.
4. εἰ, with the optative in the condition and ἄν in the conclusion, expresses a future condition modestly, or with less probability.
5. εἰάν, with the subjunctive in the condition and the future indicative in the conclusion, expresses a future condition confidently or with probability.
6. ἄν and the subjunctive are used in conditional relative sentences after primary tenses.
7. Adjectives of want are followed by the genitive.
8. A noun may be followed by words in partitive apposition with it.
9. The infinitive with ἄν may stand in the indirect discourse for the optative with ἄν in direct discourse.
10. The optative may stand for the indicative of the direct discourse after a secondary tense.
11. πολὺς is compared: πολὺς, πλείων, πλείστος.
12. παρά is followed by the genitive, dative, and accusative, with a difference of meaning.
13. Adverbs are followed by the genitive: e. g. εἴσω, λάθρᾳ.
14. The infinitive in the indirect discourse may represent the imperative.
15. The neuter participle, like the neuter adjective, is used substantively.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Perfect system of  
λύω . . . . H. 317, 318. G. 96.
2. Seven classes of  
verbs . . . . H. 392-404. G. 108, I.-VII.

3. Conjugation of  
εἶμι, subjunct.,  
opt., inf., partic. H. 478. G. 127.
4. Declension of ἐγώ,  
σύ . . . . H. 261. G. 79.
5. Conditions . . . H. 889, 890, 898, G. 220, II., 223, 224.  
900.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀλέξω, <sup>1</sup> ward off, protect.    | 12. οἶμαι, I think.                          |
| 2. ἀπορέω, <sup>2</sup> am perplexed.        | 13. πῆ, in some way; ὅπη, what-<br>ever way. |
| 3. ἡ γνώμη, <sup>3</sup> opinion.            | 14. πού, somewhere; ὅπου wher-<br>ever.      |
| 4. ἐπαινέω, I applaud.                       | 15. πολὺς, much, many; πλείων,<br>more.      |
| 5. ἐπεὶ, when, since.                        | 16. τὰ σκευοφόρα, <sup>6</sup> baggage.      |
| 6. ἔπομαι, I follow.                         | 17. στρατοπεδεύω, <sup>7</sup> I encamp.     |
| 7. ἔρημος, <sup>4</sup> barren, deprived of. | 18. ὁ σύμμαχος, <sup>8</sup> ally.           |
| 8. ὁ ἐχθρός, enemy.                          | 19. τίμιος, <sup>9</sup> honored.            |
| 9. θαρρέω am of good cheer.                  |  |
| 10. λάθρᾳ, <sup>5</sup> secretly.            |  |
| 11. λυπέω, am distressed.                    |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἔψομαι, ἰόντος. ἐπήνεσαν, καταστησομένων.
2. Decline: πατρίς, γνώμη. ἀκούσῃς, βασιλεύς.
3. Translate: (a) Ὁ δὲ ἐνόμισε ἡμᾶς αὐτῷ φίλους εἶναι. (b) Τοὺς ἐμοῦ κρείττονας φιλήσω ἀνθ' ὧν εὐ πείσομαι ὑπ' αὐτῶν. (c) Οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ὡς Κύρου τῷ ἀδελφῷ ἐπιβουλεύσαντος. (d) Ὅπη ἂν ἔρχηται, αἰλήσομαι σὺν αὐτῷ εἶναι τε καὶ πάσχειν. (e) Χαλεπῶς ἐφέρομεν τῷ στρατηγῷ ὅτι ἡμᾶς οὐκ ἐκόντας προΐεναι ἐβιάζετο. (f) Καὶ δὴ ἐσιωπῶμεν ὁρῶντες τὸν ἄνδρα ἐστῶτα καὶ δακρύνοντα. (g) Εἶλοντο δὲ μετ' αὐτῶν ὅτι δέοι πάσχειν.

<sup>1</sup> Alex-ander, protector of men.  
<sup>2</sup> From πόρος (Eng. pore). ἀ- is negative; hence ἀπορέω, = am without a way.  
<sup>3</sup> Cf. γι-γνώ-σκω. <sup>4</sup> Eng. hermit. <sup>5</sup> From λαθ, in λανθάνω; cf. Lat. lat-ēo.  
<sup>6</sup> From σκεῦος, baggage (cf. παρασκευάζω), and φέρω, I bear.  
<sup>7</sup> στρατόπεδον, a camp. <sup>8</sup> σὺν + μάχ-ομαι (cf. μάχη XXV.)  
<sup>9</sup> Cf. τιμή, ἀ-τιμάζω.

4. Translate: (a) And first they waged war (aor. partic.) against the inhabitants (partic.) of the city, and punished them mightily. (b) He cannot deprive the soldiers of their pay. (c) I came to aid them if there might be any (πού, enclitic) need. (d) He led (partic.) the army into the large and prosperous city, and went away to his own (ἐαυτοῦ) country. (e) Not being able to find the rest of the army, he was left behind, and then was cut down by the enemy. (f) It is said (that) those beautiful plains, which we see, bear much sesame and wheat. (g) Wherefore we remained a day in the city, but when on the following (day) messengers came, saying that the enemy were coming, we fled as quickly as possible.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Case with πείθομαι. 2. Future conditions. 3. Conditional relative sentences. 4. Construction with adjectives of want. 5. Partitive apposition. 6. αὐτός. 7. Optative in indirect discourse. 8. Declension of comparatives. 9. Comparison of πολὺς. 10. Παρά. 11. Case with certain adverbs. 12. Imperative in indirect discourse. 13. The substantive use of the participle. 14. Classification of five verbs in the text of the lesson. 15. Principal parts of the verbs belonging to the first two classes (except δέω, ἀκούω). 16. Special Greek uses of the dative.

## LESSON XXXV.

### ANABASIS I. III. 9-11.

#### 1. NOTES.

§ 9. μετὰ ταῦτα, after these [things], after this: cf. μεθ' ὑμῶν XXXIII. προσ-ελθόντας: note the force of the aor. partic., those who came, i. e. had come. καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κτε, and, of the others, the one wishing, i. e. any one who wished. τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου κτε, the [interests] of Cyrus (clearly (δὴ)) evidently have thus (i. e. are in the same relation) to us as our [interests] to him. τὰ Κύρου is here nearly equiv. to Κύρος. Note,

μὲν is used here without a following δέ: cf. τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν XXI.; cf. εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν XI. ἡμεῖς: sc. ἔσμεν, we are. συν-επόμθε αὐτῷ: cf. συνέπρωττεν αὐτῷ XIV. ἐκεῖνος: sc. ἐστίν, is.

§ 10. ἀδικεῖσθαι: sc. ἐαυτὸν as the subject. καὶ μεταπεμπομένον αὐτοῦ, even though he sends after me. Note this force of κα', even, with the gen. abs. τὸ μὲν μέγιστον κτε, most greatly, i. e. chiefly, indeed being ashamed (i. e. because I am ashamed). μὲν correlative with the following ἔπειτα μέγιστον: cf. μικρόν XXXII. αἰσχυρόμενος: cf. βουλομένου XXXIII. § 4, N. σύν οὐδα ἑμαυτῷ . . . αὐτόν, I am conscious to myself having deceived (= that I have deceived) him in all respects. Cf. αὐτῷ § 9. Note the supplementary use of the participle; cf. παρὼν ἐτύγχανε III. ἐ-ψευσ-μένος: perf. partic. Note the reduplication before the double consonant; it is identical in form with the syllabic augment. On σ (for δ) before μ, cf. ἤρπασ-μένα XXXI. end. δε-δι-ώς: 2d perf. partic., from δειδω; cf. λελοιπώς XXIX. ἐπιθῆ: subjunct. 3d sing., from ἐπι-τίθημι. Tense here! Note the usage after verbs of fearing. ὧν (= τούτων ᾧ), on account of those [things] which (= wherein) he, etc. Note the genitive of cause after the legal expression δίκην ἐπιθῆ; cf., however, πράγμασιν XXXII. The ᾧ included in ὧν would be obj. of ἀδικεῖσθαι, called a cognate acc.; so πάντα (ἐψευσμένος).

§ 11. οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι: note the change in οὐκ before a rough breathing. ὥρᾱ, if subject of εἶναι, should be acc. (ὥρᾱν). ἀμελεῖν, κτε, to be careless of ourselves. Note the genitive; cf. ἐπεμελείτο XI. σκεπ-τίον εἶναι, videndum esse, we must see. ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, how we shall remain most safely: from ἀσφαλέ-ως, comp. ἀσφαλέσ-τερον. μενοῦμεν: fut. ind. of μένω for μεν-έσω. Note, σ does not appear in the future of liquid verbs, and that ε- contracts with the following vowel: μενοῦμεν for μενέομεν. ἀπ-ι-μεν, ab-i-mus, we [shall] go away. ἔξομεν: from ἔχω. Note the rough breathing.

#### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. μετὰ with the genitive means with; with the accusative, after.
2. The aorist participle sometimes refers to an act previous to that of the main verb.
3. μὲν is used occasionally without a following δέ.



4. ἔχω modified by an adverb = εἰμί with predicate adjective.
5. Compounds in συν- are followed by the dative.
6. καί is often used where a participle denotes concession, and may be translated *even, although*.
7. The circumstantial participle gives the circumstances under which an act occurs.
8. Σύνοιδα is followed by the supplementary participle.
9. Verbs beginning with a double consonant reduplicate with ε-, so that their reduplication has the same form as a syllabic augment.
10. A lingual mute (τ, δ, θ) becomes σ before μ.
11. δίδω forms the 2d perfect δέδια, δεδιώς.
12. Verbs of *fearing* in primary tenses are followed by μή with the subjunctive.
13. The genitive of *cause* follows verbs of legal or judicial action.
14. The neuter adjective or pronoun may be used as a cognate accusative.
15. Verbs of *caring* are followed by the genitive case.
16. The form of the verb in -τέον denotes *duty* or *necessity*.
17. The superlative of adverbs ends in -τατα.
18. The future of liquid verbs omits -σ, and shows contracted forms.
19. ἔχω has the rough breathing in the future.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of μέγας . . . . .	H. 253.	G. 73, 4.
2. Declension of ἑμᾶντοῦ, σεῦντοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ . . . . .	H. 266.	G. 80.
3. λύω, 1st passive system . . . . .	H. 319.	G. 96.
4. Participle in -τέος . . . . .	H. 475, 2.	G. 281, 1, 2.
5. Verbs denoting <i>action of senses</i> or <i>mind</i> . . . . .	H. 742.	G. 171, 2.
6. Verbs of <i>judicial action</i> . . . . .	H. 745.	G. 173, 2.
7. Circumstantial participle . . . . .	H. 969, 979.	G. 277, 1-6.
8. Supplementary participle . . . . .	H. 982.	G. 279, 280.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ἀδικέω, <sup>1</sup> <i>I injure, wrong.</i>                | 14. ἐπι-τίθημι, <i>I place upon, inflict.</i>           |
| 2. αἰσχύνω, <i>I shame.</i>                                    | 15. ἕως, <i>as long as.</i>                             |
| 3. ἀμελέω, <sup>2</sup> <i>I neglect.</i>                      | 16. ἡμέτερος, <i>noster, our.</i>                       |
| 4. ἄνευ, <i>without.</i>                                       | 17. ὁ ἰδιώτης, <sup>3</sup> <i>a private (soldier).</i> |
| 5. ἄπ-εἰμι (-ιέναι), <i>I go away.</i>                         | 18. καθεύδω, <i>I sleep.</i>                            |
| 6. αὐτοῦ, <i>here.</i>   | 19. μετά (with acc), <i>after.</i>                      |
| 7. ἀσφαλής, <i>safe.</i>                                       | 20. ὁ μισθοδότης, <sup>4</sup> <i>paymaster.</i>        |
| 8. ἀ·φαλέως, <i>safely.</i>                                    | 21. τὸ ὄφελος, <sup>5</sup> <i>use, profit.</i>         |
| 9. δαίδω, <i>I fear.</i>                                       | 22. προσ-έρχομαι (ἦλθον), <i>I come to, join.</i>       |
| 10. δῆλος, <i>evident.</i>                                     | 23. σκέπτομαι, <sup>6</sup> <i>I examine.</i>           |
| 11. δῆλον ὅτι, <i>it is evident that,</i><br><i>evidently.</i> | 24. χρῆ, <i>it is necessary.</i>                        |
| 12. ἡ δίκη, <i>justice.</i>                                    | 25. ὥρα, <i>hora,</i> <sup>7</sup> <i>season, time.</i> |
| 13. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, <i>provisions.</i>                           | 26. ὥσπερ, <i>just as.</i>                              |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Συνάξω τε τοὺς ἑμᾶντοῦ φίλους καὶ ἀποδώσω, αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια εἰς τὴν τοῦ βίου τροφήν. (b) Σκεπτέον δ' ἐστὶν ὅπως τούτους τοὺς μεγάλους ποταμοὺς διαβαίνειν δύναμαι. (c) Δίκην ἐπιθήσω ὧν νομίζω ὑπ' ἐχθρῶν ἠδικῆσθαι. (d) Ἐὰν δὲ ἑμᾶντοῦ τι κρείττονι εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθω, βασιλείῳ οὐκ ἔτι δυνήσομαι ἔχειν. (e) Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο τέτταρες ὧν δὲ δύο ἐλεξάτην ἂ ἐγινωσκέτην. (f) Δύο δὲ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκελεύσω ἦτην.

2. Translate: (a) The boys are not willing to obey me. (b) I cannot indeed follow with my friends, but will suffer whatever may be necessary. (c) He thought we were (as good as) a fatherland to him. (d) Without you I do not think I should be honored wherever I might be. (e) Thus make up your minds, that I follow whithersoever you also may go.

<sup>1</sup> δίκη, *justice*; ἀ-, negative, as in ἀ-τιμασθεῖς.

<sup>2</sup> ἀ-, as in ἀδικέω. Cf. ἐπι-μελέομαι.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. *idiot*.

<sup>4</sup> From μισθός and the theme δο (δίδωμι).

<sup>5</sup> Cf. ὄφελος.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. *scep-tic*.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. *hour*.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Cause. 2. Expressions of duty, necessity. 3. Uses of the genitive. 4. *θ' ἑαυτοῦ*. 5. Position of *ἑαυτοῦ*. 6. Tenses of the participle; time denoted by them. 7. *ἡσχυῖνα*; *αἰσχυνῶ*. 8. Declension of *ιδιώτης*. 9. *τέ . . . τέ*. 10. Comparison of adverbs; of adjectives. 11. *ἔξω*. 12. Cognate accusative. 13. Lingual mutes before *μ*. 14. *οὕτως ἔχει*. 15. Construction with verbs of fearing. 16. Classification of twelve verbs in this Lesson. 17. *ἡδικῆσθαι*; also principal parts of *ἀδικέω*.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## ANABASIS I. III. 12-14.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 12. *ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ κτί, but the man [= Cyrus] is (sc. ἐστὶ) worthy of much (i. e. valuable) to whomsoever he may be a friend: cf. ὅπου ἂν ᾧ XXXIV. δύναμιν: modified by the following three adjectives. Note, καὶ . . . καὶ . . . καὶ, both . . . and . . . and. καὶ γάρ, etenim, and [I say we see and know] for: cf. XII. πόρρω . . . αὐτοῦ, apart from him: cf. εἶσω τῶν ὀρέων XXIX. καθ-ῆ-σθαι: (from κάθ-η μαι, dep.; perf., with no pres. form; cf. οἶδα, Lat. meminī. ὠρᾶ, sc. ἐστίν.*

§ 13. *ἐκ τούτου ἀν-ίστα-ντο κτί, some from this (= thereupon) kept rising. Tense and theme of the verb? ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου: cf. XXVIII. § 17. ἡ ἀπορίᾳ, the difficulty both to remain; i. e. as regarded remaining. Note the dependence of the infinitive on the noun.*

§ 14. *ὡς τάχιστα, quam celerrime: cf. ὡς μάλιστα XI. εἶπε . . . εἰλέσθαι, told them to choose: cf. εἰλόμην XXXIII. § 5. His direct words were, εἰλώμεθα, let us choose, or ἔλεσθε, choose ye. Note the change of the imperative to the infinitive in the indirect discourse; cf. θαρρεῖν XXXIV. § 8. So also the following infinitives—ἀγοράζεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθαι, αἰτεῖν (twice), συντάττεσθαι, πέμψαι—depend upon εἶπε. εἰλόπτας . . . αἰτεῖν, to go and ask: cf. διαβᾶς ἐξελαύνει XXIV.,*

*καταβᾶς ἤλασε XXIX. § 23. Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα: cf. αἰτεῖ XVII. ὡς ἀπο-πλέ-οιεν, in order that they might, etc. On the form, cf. ἔχ-οιεν XI.; on the mode, cf. λάβοι XI., ἵνα ὀφελοίην XXXIII. Note, the main verb (εἶπε) is in a past tense. ὅστις . . . ἀπ-άξει, who (whoever he is) will, etc. Note the predicate position of φιλιᾶς, — not through a friendly country. διδῶ: subjunct., 3d sing. of δίδωμι. Tense? τὴν ταχίστην [ὁδόν]: cf. XXVIII. § 20. πέμψαι: cf. πέμψας XXVIII.*

*προ-κατα-ληψομένους, [men] who should take, with the purpose of taking: fut. partic. (dep.) of λαμβάνω, theme λαβ, here strengthened to ληβ. On the fut. partic. denoting purpose, cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν VII.*

*ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι, in order that they may anticipate. Note the subjunctive for the optative, the secondary tense εἶπε having for the moment lost its force. On the form, cf. λύ-σωσι. Note the plural form, the speaker having others besides Cyrus in mind. ἀν-ηρακ-ότες: cf. ἡρασμένα XXXI. end; ἐκπεπτώκοντας XIII.*

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives signifying *worthy* are followed by the genitive.
2. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive: *πόρρω, εἶσω, πλήν*.
3. *ἦμαι* is a defective perfect.
4. The infinitive may depend upon a noun, like the Latin gerund.
5. The imperative becomes infinitive in the indirect discourse.
6. *ὡς, ὅτι, that*, do not introduce the infinitive.
7. The first of two consecutive acts is often expressed by the aorist participle.
8. Verbs of *asking, begging*, are followed by two accusatives.
9. The future participle expresses purpose.
10. *ὅπως μὴ* expresses negative purpose.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                     |               |                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. φιλέω, present system . . . .    | H. 324.       | G. 98.          |
| 2. Conjugation of εἶμι . . . .      | H. 478.       | G. 127.         |
| 3. Genitive with certain adjectives | H. 753, c, f. | G. 180, 1.      |
| 4. Conditional sentences . . . .    | H. 889-891.   | G. 220, I., II. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀγοράζω, <i>buy.</i>                            | 11. οἶος, <i>qualis, what, of what</i>         |
| 2. ἀνίστημι, <i>raise up; mid. stand up, rise.</i> | 12. ὁμοίως, <i>equally, alike. [sort.]</i>     |
| 3. ἄξιος, <i>worth, worthy.</i>                    | 13. πόρρω, <i>far from, away from.</i>         |
| 4. ἀπο-πλέω, <i>sail away.</i>                     | 14. προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, <i>seize in advance.</i> |
| 5. ἡ ἀπορία, <sup>1</sup> <i>perplexity.</i>       | 15. προσ-ποιέομαι, <i>pretend.</i>             |
| 6. ἄριστος, <sup>2</sup> <i>best.</i>              | 16. σπεύδω, <i>hasten.</i>                     |
| 7. ἐγ-κέλευστος, <sup>3</sup> <i>instructed.</i>   | 17. συ-σκενάζομαι, <i>pack up.</i>             |
| 8. ἐπίσταμαι, <i>know.</i>                         | 18. φθάνω, <i>anticipate.</i>                  |
| 9. ὁ ἡγεμών, <i>leader.</i>                        | 19. φίλιος, <sup>4</sup> <i>friendly.</i>      |
| 10. κάθ-ημαι, <i>sit down, am encamped.</i>        | 20. χαλεπός, <i>hard, violent.</i>             |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline : φίλιος, ἄξιος, ὥρᾱ, δύναμις, οὗτος, ἡγεμών ; present system of δοκέω.

2. Translate : (a) Αὕτη ἡ ἱππικὴ δύναμις οὐ πολλοῦ ἀξία ἐστίν. (b) Πάντες ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἷς ἂν φίλιος ἢ ἰσχυρῶς τετίμηκε. (c) Ὁρᾶ ἐστὶν ταῦτα γινώσκειν ἂ ἄριστά ἐστιν. (d) Εἰς δὲ δὴ ἀνίσταται ὡς λέξων ὅτι ἡ τοῦ ἀγοντος ἀπορία μεγάλη ἐστίν. (e) Ἐντεῦθεν οὖν ἐπειράτο ἐξελαύνειν διὰ πολεμίας τῆς χώρᾱς. (f) Δεδιότες μὴ αὐτοὺς λαβὼν δίκην ἐπιθεῖν ἀντὶ τούτων ἂ ἠδικήθη, ἀπέφευγον. (g) Αὐτὸν δὲ ἐπῆνον, ὅτι ἔλεγεν ἂ ἔγνω ἄριστα εἶναι.

3. Translate : (a) After this he collected his soldiers and crossed the river. (b) If it is necessary, I will follow and suffer with you. (c) I will obey the king, wherever he may lead me. (d) O fellow-generals, our commander is no longer (οὐκέτι) our paymaster if we do not obey him. (e) The soldiers crossed the river without the knowledge of the generals. (f) It seems to me that we must see what opinion our soldiers have. (g) They were pretending to be willing to follow wherever he might go.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. ἀπορῶν (= ἀπορίων) XXXIV.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. aristo-crazy, best rule.

<sup>3</sup> From ἐν + κελεύω, I order.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. φιλέω, φιλία.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Negative purpose. 2. ὡς, ὅτι, in introducing the indirect discourse. 3. The imperative in the indirect discourse. 4. Construction with αἰτίω, αἰρέω. 5. Case following ἐξ, ἐν, ἀνευ, εἰς, ἀπό, ἀντί, σύν. 6. Comparison. 7. General conditions. 8. Contraction of ε- with following vowels. 9. Use of the future participle. 10. Future conditions. 11. Subjunctives and optatives in the Lesson. 12. Genitive and dative singular endings of 1st declension. 13. Middle and passive deponents. 14. Mutes before σ ; σ before other consonants.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## ANABASIS I. III. 15-17.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 15. ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα κτέ, *let no one of you speak on the supposition that I am (as I being) about to general (i. e. to hold) this generalship, i. e. to hold this office, to lead this army.* Note μηδεῖς = nobody, with the imperative. δι' ἃ . . . ποιητέον [ἐστίν], *on account of which this is not to be done by me, i. e. why I must not do this.* Cf. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο XXV. § 8. Note the dative of the agent with the verbal adjective; but cf. ὑφ' ἡμῶν XXXV. § 10; also the Latin usage with the participle in -dus. Cf. σκεπτόν XXXV. § 11. ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ κτέ, [but let each say or think, sc. ἀλλὰ ἕκαστος λεγέτω, from the preceding μηδεῖς λεγέτω] that I will obey, etc. ὡς, as in ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς XXXIII. πείσομαι, for πείσομαι : from πείθω ; cf. φυγάς, φυγᾶς. ἢ δυνατὸν [ἐστίν] μάλιστα : cf. ἢ ἐδύνατο XXIII. ἵνα εἰδ-ῆτε κτέ, that you may know, etc.: subjunct., from οἶδα. On the mode, cf. ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι XXXVI. ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος, as much as possible as also any one else of men (i. e. as well as or better than any other man).

§ 16. τοῦ κελεύοντος, of him who urged that they ask, etc. ὥσπερ κτέ, as if Cyrus were on the home trip : ὡς Πισιδῶν XIX. ὡς . . . εἴη, that it was foolish : cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι VI. ; εἴη XXXVI. § 13 ;

XXIX. § 21. τί κωλύει, quid obstat. Note that the interrogative does not change its acute to a grave (τί). ἡμῖν, for us, to our disadvantage.

§ 17. ὀκν-οίην ἄν, I should be reluctant. Note, the reluctance is not stated as a fact ("I am reluctant"), but as a possibility, potentially. On the form, cf. ὀφελ-οίην. Compare this potential optative with the conclusion of future conditions with less probability. ἄ δοίη, which he might give. Theme? Note, ἄν is not used in conditional relative sentences where the verb is optative. μή . . . καταδύ-σῃ κτέ, lest he sink us with the . . . themselves. Note, the dative denotes accompaniment even without σύν: so ἡγεμόνι ἔπεισθαι; but cf. ἔψομαι XXXIV. ὅθ' ἄν δοίη, for ὄν δοίη; cf. τῶν πόλεων ὧν XV. ὅθεν . . . ἐξ-ελθεῖν, [to a place] whence it will not be [possible] to, etc. ἄκοιτος . . . Κύρου, Cyro nolente: connect with the intervening ἀπ-ιών. λαθ-εῖν . . . ἀπ-ελθών, to escape him. (in) going away: λαθ, theme of what verb?

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The participle modified by ὡς indicates a merely supposed or possible fact, and does not necessarily convey the idea of reality.
2. μηδείς, = nobody, with the imperative.
3. διά, with the genitive, = through; with the accusative, = on account of.
4. With the verbal adjective in -τέος, the dative expresses the agent.
5. ὡς serves the same purpose as ὅτε in introducing the indirect discourse.
6. The interrogative τίς retains its acute accent in connected discourse.
7. The Greek dative, like the Latin dative, expresses advantage or disadvantage.
8. A fact is stated doubtfully or potentially by the optative with ἄν.
9. The potential optative resembles in form the conclusion of future conditions with less probability.
10. Occasionally the relative pronoun agrees in case with its antecedent.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of εὐγενής . . . H. 230. G. 66 (ἀληθής).
2. Declension of τίς (interrogative and relative) H. 277 and a. G. 84 and n. 2.
3. τελέω, καλέω, λύω, αἰνέω H. 503, I. 14; 504, 3-5.<sup>1</sup>
4. Verbal adjectives in -τέος H. 988, 991. G. 281, I. and note.
5. Potential optative . . . H. 872. G. 226, 2 b.
6. Genitive absolute . . . H. 970, 971. G. 183, 278, 1.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ἄκων, <sup>2</sup> unwilling         | 11. μηδείς, οὐδείς, nobody.                                     |
| 2. ἄρχω, I rule, begin.                 | 12. ὅθεν, whence.   |
| 3. δυνατός <sup>3</sup> possible, able. | 13. ὀκνέω, hesitate.  |
| 4. δύω, enter, cause to enter.          | 14. ἡ πράξις, <sup>5</sup> business.                            |
| 5. καταδύω, sink.                       | 15. στρατηγέω, am general, command.                             |
| 6. ἐμβαίνω, <sup>4</sup> go in, embark. | 16. ἡ στρατηγία, military plan.                                 |
| 7. ἐν-οράω, see into, discover.         | 17. φοβέω, <sup>6</sup> frighten; pass., I am frightened, fear. |
| 8. εὐήθης, simple, foolish.             | 18. ἡ φλυαρία, nonsense.  |
| 9. ἡ εὐήθεια, simplicity, folly.        |   |
| 10. λυμαίνω, spoil, ruin.               |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: στρατηγήσοντα, ἔλησθε, ἐπιδεικνύς, καταδύσῃ. Decline πράξις.
2. Translate: (a) Ὡς δὴ φοβούμενον με τοῦτον μηδείς αὐτῶν λεγέτω. (b) Ὁρῶ γὰρ πολλὰ ὄρη δι' ὧν ἡμῖν ὁδοὶ ποιηταί εἰσίν. (c) Εὐηθέστατόν ἐστι τὴν τοῦ ἡγεμόνος πρᾶξιν λυμαίνειν. (d) Πείσομαι τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἄν ἔλησθε. (e) Ἐπείθοντο ὃν ἡμεῖς ἔλοισθε. (f) Ἡρώτων δὴ τί κωλύσειν τὰ ὄρη αὐτοῖς προκαταληφθῆναι. εἰ τοῦτοις τοῖς ἡγεμόσι πιστεύοιεν, οἷς βασιλεὺς δοίη

<sup>1</sup> The teacher will be obliged to pick out these verbs, if he is using Goodwin's Grammar, from the Catalogue of Verbs, pp. 329 ff.

<sup>2</sup> From ἀ = not (called a- privative), and ἐκόν, willing.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. δύναμαι, δύναμις.

<sup>4</sup> ἐμ for ἐν, cf. συμ-πράττω XIV., Vocabulary.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. πρᾶττω.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. hydro-phobia.

3. Translate: (a) The army will follow wherever the guides may lead. (b) He said that (εἶπε ὅτι) the army would follow wherever the guides might lead. (c) I should hesitate to follow where the foolish go in (ἦλθον with prefix εἰς). (d) Going away without his permission, they would desire to elude him in going away. ( ) But that would be impossible. (f) The barbarians began to rush with a shout, as was their custom. (g) They did not wait at the gates, for great fear had seized them. (h) There are many large and strong bridges over the full rivers which flow through the well-watered gardens of the king's wife.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The long and short forms, μου ἐμοῦ, etc., of ἐγώ. 2. Lingual mutes before lingual mutes; before σ. 3. Labial mutes before μ. 4. Uses of the participle. 5. Conditional sentences. 6. Conditional relative sentences. 7. General conditions. 8. Agreement of the relative. 9. Some uses of ἄν. 10. Parts of αἰτέω. πιστεύω, ὀκνέω. 11. Classification of six additional verbs in this Lesson. 12. Declension of liquid stems. 13. Conjugation of the present system of ὀκνέω. 14. Relative clauses introduced by πρίν (until).

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## ANABASIS I. III. 18-21.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 18. οἱ-τινες ἐπιτήδευοι [εἰσίν], *whoever (i. e. such persons as) are suitable*: cf. ὅστις ἀπάξει XXXVI. 14. ἐρωτᾶν: cf. δαπανᾶν XV. τί . . . ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι, *what use he wishes to make of us*: cf. τί κωλύει XXXVII.; cf. φιλίῃ χρῆσθαι XXXIII. χρῆσθαι, for κρά-εσθαι: note, α-ε here contracts to η instead of ᾱ 11. εἰ μὲν: note the following εἰ δέ. παραπλησιᾶ . . . ξένους, *like to what, i. e. the business [in which]*. ἔπασθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς, *that we too follow*: dependent upon δοκεῖ. κακίους: cf. πλείους XXXIV. τῶν . . . συνα-βάντων, *those who went up with*. On the case, cf. Κύρου XXXI. 25.

§ 19. Note the form of conditional statement: δοκεῖ with its dependent infinitive (referring to a future line of action) takes the place of the future indicative in the conclusion.<sup>1</sup> ἀξιούν, sc. δοκεῖ: cf. ἡξίου XIV. πείσαντα . . . πεισθέντα: from πείθω. Note the euphonic changes. πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφ-ιέ-ναι, *to-let-go in a friendly manner* (lit. with a view to friendship). ἀφ (λη-μι, *I release*, theme ε, not to be confused with εἶμι, εἶμι. οὕτω ἐπόμενοι . . . ἂν ἐποίμεθα, *if we should thus follow . . . we should follow*. Note the form of conditional statement; cf. ἔρημος ὦν XXXIV. 6. ἂν ἀγγεῖλαι: cf. παρ ἡγγεῖλαι XII.

§ 20. ἡρώτων: from ἐρωτάω. On the two accusatives, cf. αἰτεῖ XVII., ἀφ αἰρείσθαι XXXIII. 4. τὰ δόξαντα: on the tense, cf. συνα-βάντων, § 18. δοκέω: aor. ἔδοξε, not ἐδόκησα. κᾶν: contracted from καὶ ἄν (= εἰάν). ἐπιθεῖ-ναι: on the long form of the theme vowel in the 2d aorist οἱ -μι verbs before -ναι, cf. ἀποσθῆναι XIII., δοῦναι XXVI. 12. ἦν (= εἰάν, cf. ἦν VIII.): note the form of conditional statement.

§ 21. ὑπ-ισχνεῖται: cf. ὑπο-σχόμενος XXII. τοῦ μηνός, *of the month,*<sup>2</sup> *each month*. Cf. this with the use of the accusative, throughout the month. τῷ στρατιώτῃ, *to each soldier*.

Compare the *indirect discourses* in this section.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ὅστις is used with reference to persons *indefinite* in the mind of the writer or speaker.
2. ἄ-ειν (infinitive) contracts to ἄν.
3. α-ε contracts to η in κράομαι
4. Adjectives of *likeness*, as in Latin, are followed by the dative.
5. The aorist participle occasionally has the use of the aorist indicative in denoting an act as brought to pass in *some* past time.
6. The genitive follows adjectives of the comparative degree.
7. Conditions and conclusions are very frequently expressed in mixed forms.
8. ἴημι, *I send, let*, has the theme ε.

<sup>1</sup> Thus, *it seems best that we demand*, is equivalent to saying, *we shall wisely demand*, or *let us demand*.

<sup>2</sup> So in English, "he goes to church *of* a Sunday," — which has become the less idiomatic, — "on Sunday," *each* Sunday."

9. The 1st aorist of liquid verbs is formed without the suffix *-σα*; but, instead, the theme vowel is strengthened.

10. Verbs of *asking* are followed by one accusative of the *person* and another accusative of the *thing*.

11. *-μι* verbs strengthen the final vowel of the theme in the 2d aorist before the ending *-ναι*.

12. The genitive denotes time in such expressions as *by day*, *per month*, *each year*.

13. The indirect discourse has the main verb in the infinitive; or in a finite mode, introduced by *ὡς* or *ὅτι*.

### 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Crasis . . . . .	H. 76.	G. 11.
2. Conjugation of present system of <i>δίδωμι</i> . . . . .	H. 330, 414.	G. 121, 123
3. Conjugation of <i>εἶμι</i> . . . . .	H. 477.	G. 127, II.
4. Adjectives of <i>likeness</i> . . . . .	H. 773.	G. 186.

### 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀν-αγγέλλω, <sup>1</sup> <i>I report, bring back word.</i>	13. κακός, <i>bad.</i>
2. ἀπ-έχω, <i>hold off, am distant.</i>	14. κακίων, <i>worse.</i>
3. ἀπο-κρίνομαι, <i>I reply.</i>	15. ὅμως, <i>nevertheless.</i>
4. ἀφ' ἡμι, <i>send away, dismiss.</i>	16. ὅστις, <i>whoever; ὅτι, whatever.</i>
5. δεῦρο, <i>hither.</i>	17. παραπλήσιος, <i>like.</i>
6. δώδεκα, <sup>2</sup> <i>twelve.</i>	18. πρόθυμος, <i>eager; warm friend.</i>
7. ἐκεῖ, <sup>3</sup> <i>there.</i>	19. προσ-αιτέω, <i>ask besides.</i>
8. ἐπικίνδυνος, <sup>4</sup> <i>dangerous.</i>	20. ἡ ὑποψία <sup>6</sup> <i>suspicion.</i>
9. ἐπίπονος <i>laborious.</i>	21. φαίνω, <sup>7</sup> <i>I show.</i>
10. ἐπιτήδειος, <i>suitable.</i>	22. φαίνομαι, <i>show myself, appear.</i>
11. ἐρωτάω, <i>I ask.</i>	23. φανερός, <sup>8</sup> <i>evident.</i>
12. ἡμι-όλιος, <sup>5</sup> <i>one and a half.</i>	24. χρῆζω, <i>I desire.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. παρ-αγγέλλω XII.

<sup>2</sup> From δύο (two) + δέκα (ten), as *twelve* has *two* as one of its elements.

<sup>3</sup> So ἐκεῖνος, *he yonder*; cf. Ger. *jen-er*. <sup>4</sup> Cf. κινδυνεύω.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. ἡμι =  $\frac{1}{2}$ , Lat. *semi*; ὅλιος, from ὅλος, *the entire*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. ὑποπτεύω.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. *pheno-menon*.

<sup>8</sup> From φαν, the theme of φαίνω.

### 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἐὰν ἡ πράξις μείζων ἢ τῆς πρόσθεν οὐχ ἔψονται. (b) Στρατηγοί, οἵτινες ἄριστοι ἦσαν, προσῆκον εἰς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως σκηνήν. (c) Καὶ ἐμοὶ ἔδοξε ἡμᾶς πλείους εἶναι τῶν οἴκαδε πρόσθεν ἀπελθόντων. (d) Καὶ δὴ μοι ἐπιβουλεύσῃ, χρῆζω δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ. (e) Αὕτη ἡ πόλις τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέχει χιλίους σταδίου.

2. Translate: (a) I come in order that you may know that I am a friend to you. (b) If he will give us a guide, I will follow him as a zealous friend. (c) There were many suspicions that the commander was marching against the king. (d) Cyrus was evidently wishing to become king. (e) They called (partic.) an assembly, and chose men to tell the king those things which seemed best to the army. (f) They indeed had suspicions that, if he had been there, the mercenaries would have punished him.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν, πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, εἰς τὴν πόλιν. 2. Uses of the aorist participle. 3. Declension of comparatives in *-ων*. 4. Case after comparatives. 5. Potential optatives. 6. Case after *χράσμαι*. 7. Words for *if*. 8. τοῖς στρατιώταις ὑποψία ἦν. 9. Principal parts of δίδωμι, δοκέω, πείθω, λείπω, παύω, κελεύω, ἀκούω. 10. Declension of ἀσφαλής. 11. Classification of six verbs in the Lesson. 12. Enclitic forms of the personal pronouns. 13. ἀπεκρίνατο; quantity of *ι*; ὅτι ἀκούοι; the mode. 14. Accent and enclitics.

## LESSON XXXIX. — REVIEW.

[In preparing this Review Lesson, follow closely the directions given with Lesson X.]

## 1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. II. 25, through Chap. III.

## 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Crisis**: H. 76; G. 11.

2. **Declension**: (a) *εὐγενής*, H. 230; G. 66 (*ἀληθής*). (b) *διδούς*, H. 242; G. 68 (*δεικνυς*). (c) *πολύς*, H. 247; G. 70. (d) *μέγας* (comparison), H. 253; G. 73, 1, 4. (e) *ἐγώ, σύ*, H. 261; G. 79. (f) *ἐμαντοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἐαυτοῦ*, H. 266; G. 80. (g) *τίς, τις*, H. 277 and *a*; G. 84.

3. **The Verb**: (a) *λύω*, present, future, 1st aorist, perfect, and 1st passive systems, H. 314-319; G. 96. (b) *φιλέω*, present system, H. 324; G. 98. (c) *δίδωμι*, present system, H. 330, 414; G. 121, 123. (d) Verbal endings, H. 375, 376, 379; G. 112, 114, 115. (e) Accent of the infinitive and participle, H. 389; G. 26, (1), (2), (3). (f) Classes of verbs, H. 392-404; G. 108, I.-VII. (g) Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel, H. 367; G. 101, 3. (h) Participles in *-τός*, H. 475, 2; G. 281, 1, 2. (i) *εἶμι*, H. 477; G. 127, II. (j) *εἶμι*, H. 478; G. 127, I. (k) Principal parts of *πάσχω, αἰρέω*, H. 533, 11, 539, 1; G. pp. 330, 351.

4. **Syntax**: (a) Position of *ἐαυτοῦ*, H. 673, b; G. 142, 4, n. 3. (b) *τὰ ἄλλα*, H. 704; G. 142, 2, n. 3. (c) Verbs of *depriving*, H. 724; G. 164; (d) of *action of the senses or mind*, H. 742; G. 171, 2; (e) of *judicial action*, H. 745; G. 173, 2. (f) Genitive with certain adjectives, H. 753, c, f; G. 180, 1. (g) Case with adjectives of *likeness*, H. 773; G. 186. (h) Attempted action, H. 832; G. 200, n. 2. (i) Potential optative, H. 872; G. 226, 2 b. (j) Purpose clauses, H. 881; G. 216, 1, 3. (k) Conditions, H. 889-891, 898, 900; G. 220, I., II., 223, 224. (l) Participles, circumstantial, H. 968, 969; G. 275, 277, 1-6. (m) Genitive absolute, H. 970, 971; G. 278, 1. (n) Participles, supplementary, H. 980-982; G. 279, 280. (o) Verbal adjectives in *-τός* (syntax), H. 988, 991; G. 281.

## 3. VOCABULARY.

## VERBS.

1. ἀγοράζω.	27. ἐκ-φεύγω.	53. ὀργίζω.
2. ἀδικέω.	28. ἐμ-βαίνω.	54. πάσχω.
3. αἰρέω αἰρέομαι.	29. ἐν-οράω.	55. πλανάομαι.
4. αἰσχύνω.	30. ἐν τυγχάνω.	56. προ-δίδωμι.
5. ἀλέξω.	31. ἐξ-ελαύνω.	57. προσ-αιτέω.
6. ἀμελέω.	32. ἐπ-αινέω.	58. προσ-έρχομαι.
7. ἀν-αγγέλλω.	33. ἐπίσταμαι.	59. προσ-ποιέω.
8. ἀν-ίστημι.	34. ἐρῶ (φημί).	60. σιωπάω.
9. ἄπ-ειμι	35. ἐρωτάω.	61. σκέπτομαι.
10. ἀπ-έχω.	36. ἐπι-τίθημι.	62. σπεύδω.
11. ἀπο-κρύνομαι.	37. ἔπομαι.	63. στρατηγέω.
12. ἀπ-όλλυμι.	38. εὐρίσκω.	64. στρατοπεδεύω.
13. ἀπο-πλέω.	39. θαρρέω.	65. συν-άγω.
14. ἀπορέω.	40. καθεύδω.	66. συ-σκευάζομαι.
15. ἄρχω.	41. καθ-ηδυπαθέω.	67. τιμάω.
16. ἀφ-αιρέω.	42. κάθ-ημι.	68. τιμωρέω.
17. ἀφ-ίημι.	43. κατα-δύω.	69. ὑπο-λείπω.
18. βιάζομαι.	44. κατα-πετρόω.	70. φαίνω, φαίνομαι.
19. γινώσκω.	45. κόπτω, κατα-κόπτω.	71. φέρω.
20. δακρυώ.	46. λῦμαινω.	72. φημί.
21. δαπανάω.	47. λυπέω.	73. φθάνω.
22. δαίδω.	48. μισθῶ.	74. φοβέω.
23. δέω.	49. οἶδα.	75. χράομαι.
24. δύω.	50. οἶμαι.	76. χρῆ.
25. ἐθέλω.	51. ὀκνέω.	77. χριζέω.
26. εἰσ-ελαύνω.	52. ὀράω.	78. ψεύδω.

## NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀκινάκης.	12. ὁ ἡγεμών.	23. ἡ στρατηγία.
2. ἡ ἀνάγκη.	13. ὁ ἰδιώτης.	24. ὁ στρεπτός.
3. τὸ ἀνδράποδον.	14. ὁ λόχος.	25. ὁ σύμμαχος.
4. ἡ ἀπορία.	15. ὁ μισθοδότης.	26. ἡ ὑπερβολή.
5. ἡ γνώμη.	16. ὁ ὄλεθρος.	27. τὸ ὑποζύγιον.
6. ἡ δίκη.	17. τὸ ὄφελος.	28. ἡ ὑποψία.
7. τὸ δῶρον.	18. ἡ πατρίς.	29. ἡ φλυαρία.
8. ἡ ἐκκλησιᾶ.	19. ἡ πίστις.	30. ἡ χεῖρ.
9. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.	20. ἡ πράξις.	31. ὁ χρόνος.
10. ἡ εἰρήθεια.	21. τὰ σκευοφόρα.	32. τὰ ψέλιον.
11. ὁ ἐχθρός.	22. ἡ στολή.	33. ἡ ὥρα.

## ADVERBS.

1. αὐτοῦ.	8. λάθρᾳ.	15. πού, ὅπου.
2. ἀσφαλῶς.	9. ὅθεν.	16. πρόσω.
3. δεῦρο.	10. ὁμοίως.	17. πώ.
4. δῆλον ὅτι.	11. ὁμως.	18. τότε.
5. ἐκεῖ.	12. οὔποτε.	19. ὕστερον.
6. ἔπειτα.	13. πῆ, ὅπη.	20. χαλεπῶς.
7. εὖ.	14. πόρρω.	21. ὡσπερ.

## ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄκων.	11. ἐπιτήδειος.	20. παραπλήσιος.
2. ἄξιος.	12. ἔρημος.	21. πολὺς, πλείων.
3. ἄριστος.	13. εὐήθης.	22. πρόθυμος.
4. ἀσφαλής.	14. ἡμέτερος.	23. πρότερος.
5. δῆλος.	15. ἡμιόλιος.	24. πρώτος.
6. δίκαιος.	16. κα ὅς, κακίων.	25. τιμιος.
7. δυνατός.	17. κρείττων.	26. φανερός.
8. ἐγκέλευστος.	18. μικρός.	27. φίλιος.
9. ἐπικίνδυνος.	19. οἴος.	28. χαλεπός.
10. ἐπίπονος.		29. χρυσοχάλινος.

## PRONOUNS.

1. μηδείς, οὐδείς.	2. ὅστις.	3. σύ, ὑμεῖς.
--------------------	-----------	---------------

## PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀνευ.	3. μετά.
2. ἀντί.	4. ὑπέρ.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

ἕως, ἵνα.

## 4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Οὐκ ἐδυνάμεθα πολλοὺς δικαίους ἐν τῇ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν πόλει εὐρίσκειν. (b) Ἡ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ τῶν συμμάχων δῆλη ἂν εἶη ἀνευ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ὧν παρείχομεν. (c) Ἐγκέλευστος ἦν ὁ ἰδιώτης ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι μικρὸς εἶη ἂν ὁ μισθός. (d) Οἱ μὲν ἡγεμόνες πρότεροι ἀφίκνουντο τοῦ στρατεύματος. (e) Ὁ χρόνος λιμαίνει πάντα τὰ καλά.

2. Translate: (a) And the passage of the mountains was hard for the beasts of burden. (b) This necklace is in truth small, but I have many others which are larger. (c) If ye go away, I will follow with you; but I know this well, that it will not be possible to protect ourselves from our enemies. (d) My fatherland is dearer to me, methinks, than life itself and much honor. (e) It was the opinion of all the company that the slaves should be honored in return for what they had done.

## LESSON XL.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 1-4.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 1. τρία, Lat. *tria*, from *τρεις*, *tres*.

§ 2. νῆ-ες: from *ναῦ-s*. *navis*. Number and case? *ναύ-αρχος*, *ship-commander*. Composition of this word? *ἡγείτο δ' αὐταῖς κτέ*, *commanded them*, lit. *for them*. On the genitive with verbs of commanding, cf. *ἄρχειν αὐτῶν* XIV. *ναῦς ἐτέρᾱς*, *other ships*; acc. plur. Note the form *ναῦς*. *συνεπολέμει κτέ*, and [with which] *he was conducting the war together with Cyrus against him* [Tissaphernes].

§ 3. ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, *upon the ships*: from *ναῦς*. Case and number? *ὧν ἐστρατήγει*, *which he commanded*: cf. *ἡγείτο*, N. § 2. *οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμᾳ κτέ*, *the mercenaries beside* (lit. *from beside*) *Abrocomas* (gen. sing.) *revolted and*, etc. Note the gen. sing. form *Ἀβροκόμ-ᾱ* for -ου. This genitive takes the place of the dative through the influence of the verb of separation, *ἀπο-στάντες*: cf. *οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς* XXVIII.

§ 4. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα, *but these* [the gates] *were two walls*: *ταῦτα* for *αὐταῖ*, consequently the plur. *ἦσαν* *τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν . . . τὸ δὲ ἔξω*, *the within (inner) wall, the one towards Cilicia, . . . the without (outer)*, etc. Of course, the first wall was to the west and northwest of the second. *διὰ μέσου τούτων*: note the substantive use of *μέσος*.

*τὸ μέσον ἦσαν στάδιοι*: note the influence of the predicate upon the number of the verb; Eng., *the entire distance between was*. *οὐκ ἦν* [= *δύνατον ἦν*], *was not possible*; cf. *οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν* XXXVII.

*ἐφ-ειστή-κεσαν*, *stood upon*; *were set at*; *built*: from *ἐφ-ίστημι*; cf. *ἀφ-ειστή-κεσαν* XII.,—here pluperf., the meaning passing from the trans. (*sisto*) to the intrans. (*sto, stare*). Note that stems beginning with two consonants do not reduplicate regularly.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbs, genitives, appositives, prepositional phrases, may occupy the attributive position.

2. *ναῦς, στάδιον* (plur. *στάδιοι*), are irregularly declined.



3. *πάρ-ειμι* is followed by the dative (of persons), or *εἰς* with the accusative (of places).

4. Verbs of *commanding* are followed by the genitive, but *ἡγέομαι* is followed by the dative also.

5. Prepositional constructions dependent upon a noun are readily affected and changed by a verb in the sentence.

6. Some proper nouns in *-ās* (1st declension) have a gen. sing. in *-ā*, for *-ou*.

7. The verb *εἰμί* may agree in number with its predicate; sometimes it is plural when the subject is a neuter plural pronoun and refers to masculine or feminine plural nouns.

8. *μέσος* (in the neuter) may be used substantively.

9. *ἔστι*, *ἦν*, and *ἔσται* sometimes have the meaning of *it is* (etc.) possible.

10. Verbs beginning with two consonants do not take the regular reduplication.

11. Some of the forms of *ἵστημι* (*sisto*) are intransitive; e. g. 2d aorist *ἔστην*, perfect, pluperfect, *εἰστήκειν*.

### 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |                               |                            |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Declension of <i>ναῦς</i> . . . .                    | H. 206, 207.                  | G. 54.                     |
| 2. Declension of <i>εἰς</i> , <i>δύο</i> <i>τρεις</i> . | H. 290.                       | G. 77.                     |
| 3. Gender of nouns . . . .                              | H. 125, a, b, c.              | G. 33, 2, notes.           |
| 4. <i>ἵστημι</i> (present system) . . . .               | { H. 331, 414, 415, 534. 5. } | { G. 123, 121, 1, 2 (d). } |

### 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>ἡ βία</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>force, violence</i> . | 7. <i>ἡλί-βατος</i> , <i>steep, inaccessible</i> .                    |
| 2. <i>ἔξω</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>without, outer</i> .    | 8. <i>καθ-ήκω</i> , <i>come down, extend down (to)</i> .              |
| 3. <i>ἔσωθεν</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>within, inner</i> .  | 9. <i>μετά-πεμπτος</i> , <i>sent after</i> .                          |
| 4. <i>ἕτερος</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>other</i> .          | 10. <i>ὁ μισθο-φόρος</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>paybearer, mercenary</i> . |
| 5. <i>ἐφ-ίστημι</i> , <i>I place upon, build at</i> .   |   |
| 6. <i>ἡγέομαι</i> , <i>I lead</i> .                     |   |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *ἐβιάσθη* XXXII.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *ἐκ*, *from*; *εἰς*, *to*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. *hetero-dox*.

<sup>4</sup> *μισθός*, *pay*; *φέρω*, *I carry*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 11. <i>ἡ ναῦς</i> , <i>ship</i> .                  | 19. <i>ἡ πύλη</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>gate</i> .         |
| 12. <i>ὁ ναύ-αρχος</i> , <i>admiral, captain</i> . | 20. <i>τὸ στάδιον</i> , <i>a stade</i> (192 meters). |
| 13. <i>τὸ ὄνομα</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>name</i> .   | 21. <i>στένος</i> , <i>narrow</i> . <sup>4</sup>     |
| 14. <i>ὀρμέω</i> , <i>lie at anchor</i> .          | 22. <i>στρατηγέω</i> , <i>I command</i> .            |
| 15. <i>παρ-έρχομαι</i> , <i>come or go by</i> .    | 23. <i>τὸ τεῖχος</i> , <i>wall</i> .                 |
| 16. <i>παρ-ἦλθον</i> , <i>came or went by</i> .    | 24. <i>ὑπέρθεν</i> , <i>above</i> (adv.).            |
| 17. <i>ἡ πάρ-οδος</i> , <i>way past, pass</i> .    | 25. <i>φίλος</i> , <i>friend, friendly</i> .         |
| 18. <i>ἡ πέτρᾱ</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>rock</i> .    |  |

### 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) 'Ο δὲ Ψάρος ποταμὸς ἐστὶ μέγας. ἀλλ' ἐξευγμένους ἔστιν ἐπὶ πλοίοις. (b) Τὸ μὲν οὖν εὐρὸς ἐστὶ δέκα πλέθρων. (c) Οὐκ ἦν διελθεῖν διὰ ταύτης τῆς μεγάλης τε καὶ εὐδαίμονος πόλεως. (d) Αἱ δὲ πύλαι πᾶσι ἰσχυρῶς μεγάλαι εἰσίν. (e) Συμπολεμήσω δὴ τῷ Κύρῳ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα

2. Translate: (a) The chosen admirals arrived (= were present) for Cyrus. (b) We have asked what he wishes to do with that money. (c) It is necessary [for] us not to be worse than those who formerly fought-with the younger brother, Cyrus. (d) If we should thus follow, we should be friends worthy of much. (e) They announce to the king whatever we do in this city.

3. Prepare a list containing the translation of each word in the Voc. of Lesson X.; with this list in hand in the class-room, be prepared to give rapidly and distinctly each corresponding Greek word.<sup>5</sup>

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

- Accent in the 3d declension.
- The attributive position.
- Words in the attributive position.
- The dative in *συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ*.
- Extent of space and duration of time.
- Cases for expressing *means, measure, specification*.
- The neuter plural subject.
- Agreement of the verb with two subjects.
- ἐπί* in §§ 1 and 3.
- Accent of *παρήσαν, παρήν*.
- ν* in *εἴκοσι*.
- παρά* in § 3.
- Construction with verbs of *commanding*.
- Classification of the verbs in the Lesson.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. *pseud-onym*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. *petr-oleum, rock-oil*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Thermo-pylae, Hot-gates*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. *steno-graphy*.

<sup>5</sup> Preserve this list for following exercises.

## LESSON XLI.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 5-7.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 5. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου, on account of this, etc. ἕνεκα, adv., used as a prep. with the genitive case. Cf. the use of the Latin adv. *clam* as a prep.; e. g. *clam uxōrem*. Note the position.<sup>1</sup> ἀποβιβάσει(ν) κτέ, he might land his hoplites within and without the walls, i. e. on both sides of the east or Syrian wall. On the form of the verb, cf. καταπράξειεν XXII.; on the mode, cf. λάβοι XI. τῶν πυλῶν: cf. εἶσω τῶν ὀρέων XXIX. § 21. βια-σ-ο-μένους: from βιάζομαι; euphonic change l. Note the tense, cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν VII. 4. ᾤετο: from οἶμαι; cf. XXXIV. Note how οἶ- augments. ᾤετο ποιήσειν: Lat. *putābat* [*Abrocomān*] *factūrum esse*. ἤκουσε Κύρον ὄντα, heard that Cyrus was, etc. On the supplementary participle after ἀκούω, cf. ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα XXIX.

§ 7. ἔμεινα: theme *μεν*, Lat. *man-ēo*; fut. *μεν-έσω*, but in actual use *-σ-* drops away and *έω = ὦ*; hence the actual future is *μενῶ*, (*μενέ-εις*) *μενέις*, (*μενέ-ει*) *μενεῖ*, etc. Explain the form here. ἐμβά-ντες, . . . ἐν-θ-έ-μενοι. . . ἀπέπλευσεν: the aor. partic. used as in ἐλθόντας . . . ἐρωτᾷ XXXVIII. βα and θε, themes of what verbs.

τὰ πλείστον ἄξια: cf. πολλοῦ ἄξιος XXXVI. ὡς . . . ἐδόκουν, φιλοτιμηθέντες: being piqued, as they seemed or appeared. The Greek says "as they seemed," where the English says "as it seemed." Like the Latin, the Greek prefers the personal construction; cf. λέγεται Ἀπόλλων XXV. ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας κτέ, because Cyrus was permitting (*εἶα* contracted from *εἶα-ε*, from *εἶαω*) Clearchus to have their soldiers, who had left [their generals, Xenias and Pasion,] on the understanding that they were going back to Greece again, etc. Cf. XXXIV. 7.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἕνεκα μὲν δέ, οὖν, put after one or more words in their sentences, are called *post-positive*.

<sup>1</sup> Words which do not stand at the beginning of phrases, clauses, or sentences in which they appear are called *post-positive*; e. g. *μὲν, δέ, οὖν, γάρ*.

2. The 1st aor. opt. act. 3d sing. ends in *-αι* or *-ει(ν)*.
3. *οἶ-* augments to *ᾤ*; *έ-* to *εἶ-* in *εἶαω, ἔχω*.
4. The supplementary participle follows *ἀκούω*, with nearly the value of an English infinitive.
5. Liquid verbs form their future without *-σ-*, contracting the endings with a preceding original *ε* to *-ῶ, -εῖς, -εῖ*, etc.
6. The aorist participle, denoting a preliminary act, is rendered as co-ordinate with the verb upon which it depends.
7. ἄξιος, an adjective of *value*, is followed by the genitive.
8. In using *δοκεῖ (vidētur)*, *λέγεται (dicitur)*, the Greek prefers the personal construction.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The mutes when coming before *μ* . . . . . H. 53. G. 16, 3.
2. Conjugation of the present system of *δείκνυμι* . . . . . H. 332. G. 123.
3. Formation of the future of liquid verbs . . . . . H. 422. G. 110, II. 2.
4. The perfect with aspiration. H. 452. G. 110, IV. b.
5. Principal parts of *πέμπω*<sup>1</sup> . . . . . H. 508, 21. G. page 351.
6. Principal parts of *φυλάττω* . . . . . H. 514, 11. G. page 359.
7. The future in the indirect discourse . . . . . H. 855. G. 203.
8. The infinitive in the indirect discourse . . . . . H. 930, 2; 946. G. 246 and Note.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀνα-στρέφω, turn around, back.
2. ἀπ-ελαύνω, march away.
3. ἀπ-έρχομαι, go away.
4. ἀπο-βιβάζω,<sup>2</sup> I land.
5. ἀπο-πλέω,<sup>3</sup> sail away.
6. ἀντόθι, here, there.
7. εἶαω, permit.
8. ἐμ-βαίνω go on board, embark.
9. τὸ ἐμπόριον,<sup>4</sup> port, place of trade.
10. ἐν-τίθημι, place in, on (board).

<sup>1</sup> Note that the perfect middle, *πέ-πεμ-μαι*, loses final *π* of the theme between the two *μ*'s.

<sup>2</sup> Strictly, *cause to go off*. Verbs in *-αζω* are regularly transitive, and many are causative.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *πλοῖον, boat*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. *emporium*.

11. ἔνεκα (with gen.), on account of. 14. ἡ δλκάς, freight ship.  
 12. ἔξω, without, outside of. 15. ὅσ-περ, ὅ-περ, who or which really, just who or which.  
 13. ἡ μύριάς,<sup>1</sup> number or crowd of 10,000. 16. φιλοτιμίομαι,<sup>2</sup> am piqued or jealous.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: ναῦς, ὅσ-περ, ἀναστρέψās.  
 2. Synopsis of λύω, active voice. Master § 313 Hadley (G., pages 86, 87) until all the forms can be given and written correctly, discriminated from one another, and readily translated.  
 3. Translate: (a) Τούτου ἔνεκα τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὐκ ἦν ἐξελεῖν ἐκ τῶν ὀρῶν. (b) Τυγχάνει δ' ἐπιμελούμενος ὅπως αἱ νῆες αὐτόθι πάρωσιν. (c) Εἰ δὴ ὑμεῖς πολεμοῖτε τῷ Συρίῳ βασιλεῖ οὐκ ἂν πολὺ στράτευμα καταγάγοιτε. (d) Ἐνόμισεν οὖν ὅτι τοῦτο ποιήσοι ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῷ ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ πέπονθε. (e) Καὶ γὰρ ἔγωγέ φημι τὸν ἄνδρα πέμψειν πολ' ἄς δλκάδας εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον.  
 4. Translate: (a) Thence I was marching five days' journey, twenty (and) five parasangs, to a large river of Syria. (b) The width of these rivers is about two plethra. (c) Issus (plural) is the last city of Cilicia, built by the sea-side, and large and prosperous. (d) I will remain in this city thirty days. (e) Now the commanders of the ships revolted (partic.), and sailed away again to Greece. (f) I am afraid (ὀκνέω) to go on board those ships (= what ships) he may give us.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Classification of the verbs in this Lesson. 2. Post-positive words.  
 3. π between two μ's. 4. Tenses in the indirect discourse. 5. Modes in main clauses, indirect discourse. 6. Peculiarities of -μι verbs.  
 7. Formation of the future and 1st aorist stems, liquid verbs. 8. The aspirated perfect. 9. The participle with ἀκούω. 10. Regular meaning of verbs in -άζω. 11. Personal endings, 1st aorist optative active.  
 12. Conjugation of the present and imperfect indicative active of ἐάω.  
 13. Three prepositions which govern the genitive only; two which govern the dative only. 14. Classification of the consonants.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. myriad.<sup>2</sup> φίλος and τιμή, to hold honor dear.

## LESSON XLII.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 7-9.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 7. ἦσαν ἀφανείς, were out of sight, gone. On the declension, cf. εὐήθης XXXVII. δι-ἦλθε, i. e. through the army. ὅτι διώκοι: cf. ὅτι ἄγοι XXXVIII. τριήρεσι: on the case, cf. πλοίοις XXIII. ἤρχοντο: impf., from εὔχομαι, dep. Note the augment. ὡς . . . ὄντας . . . ληφ-θῆ-ναι: ὡς construed with the participle, = on the ground that. It does not introduce the infinitive; neither ὡς nor ὅτι, nor any conjunction, ever does that. ληφ-θῆ-ναι: aor. pass. inf. of λαμβάνω, theme λαβ; cf. λάβ-οι XI. On φ for β, cf. ἵπολει φ-θέντας XXXI. ᾗ κτεIRON: from οἰκτεῖρω; cf. ᾗ ετο XLI. εἰ ἀλώ-σο-ι-ντο, should they be taken: from ἀλ-ίσκομαι (ἀλ-, ἀλο-), used as passive to αἰρέω.  
 § 8. συγ-καλίσās, called together . . . and, etc. On συν- changed to συ-, cf. συγγενέσθαι XXVI. ἐπιστά-σθων, let them know: cf. λυέ-σθων; from ἐπίσταμαι, dep. ἀπο-δε-δρά-κα-σι, have eluded: from δι-δρά-σκω (δρα); cf. γι-γνώ-σκω (γνω). ὥστε ελεῖν, so that I am able to take. Note the manner of expressing result in Greek. On the theme ελ, cf. εἰλόμην XXXIII. μᾶ τοὺς θεούς, by the gods! μᾶ used in negative oaths; hence probably allied with μή. Note the accusative following it. ἐρεῖ: classed as future of φημί; cf. the perf. εἴρηκα XXIII.; see οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς XXXIII. ἕως ἂν παρ-ῆ τις, as long as any one may be with me, = if any one, etc.: conditional relative sentence; but note, the subjunctive with ἂν is used when the present is alluded to; cf. ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX. ἐπειδὴν δέ, = ἐπειδὴ ἂν δέ. Note the contrast indicated by μέν . . . δέ i-όντων, let them go. So λυ-όντων, imperative 3d plural. εἰδ-ότ-ες: 'cf. εἰδ-ῆτε XXXVII. κακίους: comparative of κακός; cf. πλείους XXXIV. § 7. φρουρούμενα (cf. φρούραρχος XII.): neuter plural, the women being possibly classed as vaguely as the children, — as mere things or creatures. ἔνεκα: cf. § 5.  
 § 9. ἡδ-ιον, more gladly: comparative of the adverb ἡδ-έως; strictly the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective, similarly with προθυμότερον.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb of the indirect discourse may be put in the optative when dependent upon a verb denoting definitely past time.
2. Adjectives whose stem ends in *-εε* lose *ε* between vowels, and contract *ε-ε* to *ει*, *ε-ο* to *ου*, and *ε-α* to *η*.
3. *Means* is expressed by the dative case.
4. *εὖ* augments to *ηὺ*.
5. The infinitive in the indirect discourse is never introduced by a conjunction.
6. *λαβ* becomes *ληβ* in the future and in the aorist passive.
7. *Result* is denoted by *ὥστε* with the infinitive.
8. A number of verbs form the present stem by reduplicating the theme and adding *-σκ*.
9. The object or person *by whom* one swears negatively is indicated by the accusative case following *μᾶ*.
10. Conditional relative sentences of present time have the verb in the subjunctive, with *ἄν* following the relative adverb or pronoun.
11. Adverbs form their comparative by using the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *γυνή* . . . . . H. 216, 4. G. 60, 5, 7.
2. Conjugation of *τιμάω*, present system H. 323. G. 98.
3. Principal parts of *φεύγω* . . . . . H. 511, 15. G. Appendix.
4. Principal parts of *λαμβάνω* . . . . . H. 523, 5. G. Appendix.
5. Principal parts of *ἔρχομαι* . . . . . H. 539, 2. G. Appendix.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ἄθῦμος, <sup>1</sup> <i>dispirited</i> .                        | 5. ἀπο-λείπω, <i>forsake, desert</i> .              |
| 2. ἀλίσκομαι, <i>am taken, captured</i> .                          | 6. ἀπο σῦλλάω, <i>steal, rob</i> .                  |
| 3. ἡ ἀνάβασις, <i>upward march</i> .                               | 7. ἀπο-φεύγω, <i>flee away, escape</i> .            |
| 4. ἀπο-διδράσκω, <sup>2</sup> <i>run off (by stealth), elude</i> . | 8. ἡ ἀρετή, <i>goodness, good service</i> .         |
|  | 9. ἀφανής, <sup>3</sup> <i>out of sight, gone</i> . |

<sup>1</sup> *ἀ-* privative (like the English suffix *-less* in *spirit-less*), *θῦμος*, mind, courage. Cf. Lat. *a-mens*.

<sup>2</sup> Theme, *δρα*; cf. *δρῶ-μος*.

<sup>3</sup> *ἀ-* privative, *φαίνομαι*, appear.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 10. δειλός, <i>timid, cowardly</i> .                                | 20. ὁ λόγος, <sup>2</sup> <i>word, rumor</i> . |
| 11. δι-έρχομαι, <i>go through</i> ; (of rumor) <i>spread</i> .      | 21. μᾶ, <i>nay!</i> by (adv. of swearing).     |
| 12. διώκω, <i>I pursue</i> .  | 22. οὐδέ, <i>neither, not even</i> .           |
| 13. ἔγωγε, <i>equidem, I at least</i> .                             | 23. οἰκτείρω, <i>I pity</i> .                  |
| 14. ἐπειδὴ, <sup>1</sup> <i>when indeed, after</i> (with subjunc.). | 24. οἴχομαι, <i>am gone, departed</i> .        |
| 15. εὔχομαι, <i>I pray, wish</i> .                                  | 25. προθύμως, <i>with spirit, zealously</i> .  |
| 16. ὁ θεός, <sup>2</sup> <i>god</i> .                               | 26. στερέω, <i>I deprive</i> .                 |
| 17. κακός, <i>bad, base</i> .                                       | 27. συγ-καλέω, <i>I call together</i> .        |
| 18. κακῶς, <i>badly</i> .   | 28. τὸ τέκνον, <i>child</i> .                  |
| 19. κακῶς ποίω, <i>I injure, wrong</i> .                            | 29. φρουρέω, <sup>3</sup> <i>I guard</i> .     |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Αἱ γυναῖκες οὐκ ἀπολείψουσι τὰ ἐαυτῶν τέκνα, μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν μετὰ Κύρου πορευομένων ἀλώσιν. (b) Τὸ ἐαυτῆς δῶρόν ἐστιν ἡ ἀρετή. (c) Οἱ δειλοὶ τε καὶ κακοὶ πειρῶνται ἀπὸ τῆς μάχης ἀποδιδράσκειν.

2. Translate: (a) I indeed pursued the enemy, but I was not able to take them. (b) When indeed you wish (fut. cond. *with probability*) to call together (partic.) the generals, and pursue with triremes and boats those who have (partic.) fled away, many friends will follow with you. (c) And beautiful gates were-built (= set upon) in the royal abodes. (d) Chersiphos arrives upon the ship which the admiral Pythagoras was commanding. (e) On account of the good-service of these men, their enemies did not injure their wives and children.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Present and imperfect of *εἰμί*.
2. Declension of *ἀφανής, τριήρης*.
3. Augment of diphthongs.
4. Future conditions.
5. Result clauses.
6. Negative oaths.
7. Formation of adverbs; of the comparative.
8. The second accent in *κακίους εἰσὶ*, § 8.
9. Contractions in the present system of *τιμάω*.
10. Classification of the verbs in § 8.
11. Accent of *διήλθε*.
12. *ἀ-* privative illustrated.
13. Peculiarities in the declension of *γυνή*.
14. *αἰρέω* and *ἀλίσκομαι*: theme of the latter; relation of meaning.

<sup>1</sup> *ἐπεὶ* + *δέ* + *ἄν*, followed by the *subjunctive*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. *theo-logy*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *φρουράρχους* XII.

## LESSON XLIII.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 9-12.

9, Μετὰ ταῦτα, through τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρου, 12.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 9. ὄντα . . . πλέθρον, being, in respect to width, of a plethrum: cf. εὐρος δύο πλέθρων XXIX. § 23, Lat. *via tridui*. πλήρη ἰχθύων: cf. πλήρης θηρίων XXIV. Why genitive? καὶ . . . εἶον, and they did not permit any one, etc.: cf. εἶα XLI. Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν δεδομένοι: <sup>1</sup> cf. καὶ . . . ἦσαν . . . δεδομένοι XII.

§ 10. οὐ . . . πλέθρον, of which the width [was] (of) a plethrum. Συρίας ἄρξασαντος, (of) the former ruler of Syria. Note the tense; also that the participle, like a noun, is here followed by the objective genitive, — so *amans patriae*, patriot. πάντα ὅσα all things which: cf. πάντων ὅσοι IV.

§ 11. ὄντα . . . σταδίων: cf. ὄντα πλέθρον, § 9. ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἔσοιτο, he said that the journey would be; dir. disc., "the journey will be" (ἔσται): cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι VI.

§ 12. ἐχάλεπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, were angry at the generals. II. 764, 2 Ex. εἰδότης, theme ἰδ (Lat. *vid-ēo*, Eng. *wit*); perf. partic.: cf. ἐκπεπτωκ ὄτας XIII., εἰδότες XLII. οὐκ ἔφασαν: cf. XXXII. εἰ μὴ, nisi, unless. Note the use of μὴ rather than οὐ. τοῖς μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβάσι, those who went up with Cyrus: nom. ἀναβάς (2d aor. partic. of ἀναβαίνω); cf. διαβάς XXIV.; cf. the use of the tense with that of ἄρξαντος, § 10. καὶ ταῦτα κτε, and that too, though. Note the concessive force of the genitive absolute; this is heightened by καὶ ταῦτα.

<sup>1</sup> "Given for her girdle" is somewhat like the English "given for pin money," since the beauty of the girdle was a matter of pride with Persian ladies. Other cities were assigned to furnish the queen-mother with sandals and head-dresses. The Persian king assigned to the exiled Themistocles one city to furnish bread, and another to furnish meat.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. "A river four feet wide" is in Greek "a river of four feet, respecting width."

2. "The cities belong to Parysatis" is in Greek "the cities are of Parysatis."

3. Participles of transitive verbs may be used as nouns, and be followed by an objective genitive.

4. ὁ ἄρχων, = ruler; ὁ ἄρξας, = he who (once or formerly) ruled, the ruler.

5. The future optative, introduced by ὡς, ὅτι, indirect discourse, after a secondary tense, represents the future indicative.

6. οἰδ-, of οἶδα, becomes εἰδ- in the subjunctive and in the participle.<sup>1</sup>

7. In conditional sentences μὴ is the negative of the condition (protasis), οὐ that of the conclusion (apodosis).

8. καὶ ταῦτα preceding a concessive participle intensifies its force as such.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ἰχθύς . . . . .	H. 201.	G. 53, 2.
2. The ordinals (1-20) . . . . .	H. 288.	G. 76.
3. Conjugation of οἶδα . . . . .	H. 491.	G. 127, VII.
4. Accusative of specification . . . .	H. 718.	G. 160, 1.
5. The genitive with substantives . .	H. 729, a-g.	G. 167, 1-6.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀδικέω, <sup>2</sup> I harm, injure.	4. ἐκ-κόπτω, <sup>3</sup> I cut out, destroy utterly.
2. ἀνα-πέιθω, I persuade, i.e. change me's mind, induce.	5. ἡ ζώνη, <sup>4</sup> belt, girdle.
3. εἰ μὴ (with subjunct.), unless.	6. ὁ ἰχθύς, <sup>5</sup> fish.

<sup>1</sup> It does the same elsewhere, as will presently be learned.

<sup>2</sup> From ἀδικος, = ἀ-privative, and δίκη, justice.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. κατα-κοπήναι XXXI.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. zone.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. ichthy-ology.

7. καὶ ταῦτα, *and that too; although.*  
 8. κατα-καίω,<sup>1</sup> *I burn down, destroy by fire.*  
 9. κρύπτω,<sup>2</sup> *I hide, conceal.*  
 10. ἡ κώμη, *village.*  
 11. πάλαι,<sup>3</sup> *long before, previously.*  
 12. ὁ πατήρ,<sup>4</sup> *father.*  
 13. πρᾶος<sup>5</sup> *mild, tame.*  
 14. σκηνέω,<sup>6</sup> *I encamp.*  
 15. φύω,<sup>7</sup> *produce, yield, bring forth.*  
 16. χαλεπαίνω,<sup>8</sup> *am angry.*  
 17. ἡ ὥρα,<sup>9</sup> *season (of the year).*

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Principal parts of πείθω. κόπτω. κρύπτω.<sup>10</sup>  
 2. Translate: (a) Ἐπεὶ δ' αὐτόθι πολλοὶ ἦσαν φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἐμείναμεν τρισκαίδεκα ἡμέρας. (b) Χαλεπανούσιν αὐτῷ εἰ μὴ ταύτας τὰς πολεμίας κώμας ἐκκόψῃ. (c) Πάλαι δὲ ἀνέπεισα αὐτὸν ταῦτα κρύπτειν, καὶ ταῦτ' οὐκ ἐθέλοντα. (d) Πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι κώμαι τῇ Παρυσάτιδι δεδομέναι εἰς τὴν ζώνην, ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀλώσονται. (e) Οἱ ἐρμηνεῖς ταῦτα τῷ φρουράρχῳ ἀπήγγειλαν· ὁ δὲ ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ χρήματα πολλὰ ἐπειδὴν εἰς Ἴσσοὺς ἤκωσι καὶ μισθὸν μέχρι (until) ἂν καταγάγῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πάλιν εἰς Ἰωνίαν. (f) Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέειθοντο καὶ οὐ διεζήσαν πρὶν ἂν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποκρίνωνται.  
 3. Translate: (a) They said that those rivers were full of many (and) tame fishes; but the inhabitants of the country do not permit any-one to harm them. (b) They encamped (aor.) in the gardens and palace of the former-king of the country, and then (είτα) burned down the palace. (c) He will call (partic.) an assembly of his soldiers, and endeavor to persuade them. (d) He said that all things which the seasons produce would be theirs (dat. poss.) if they should be able to take these gardens.

4. Review the noun list in Lesson X., giving the gender, genitive, and declension of each word.

<sup>1</sup> καίω, fut. καύ-σω; Eng. caustic.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος XI.; Eng. crypt.  
<sup>3</sup> Lat. pater.  
<sup>4</sup> Very irregularly declined. The study of its declension is omitted for the present.  
<sup>5</sup> Cf. σκηνή, tent.  
<sup>6</sup> Whence φύσις, nature, Eng. physics, physician, metaphysics.  
<sup>7</sup> From χαλεπός, hard, difficult.  
<sup>8</sup> Cf. Lat. hora, Eng. hour.  
<sup>9</sup> Consult the verb-indices in the grammars.  
<sup>10</sup>

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. μετά with the genitive; with the accusative. 2. Accusative of specification. 3. Genitive of measure. 4. Declension of πλήρης. 5. Inflection<sup>1</sup> of εἶων. 6. εἰς ζώνην. 7. The genitive with ἄρξαντος. 8. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 9. Inflection of μέγας. 10. Principal parts and classification of the verbs of § 10. 11. Analysis of φέκετο; why not pluperfect? 12. Future conditions in the indirect discourse. 13. Correlative pronouns used with πᾶς.

## LESSON XLIV.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 13-15.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 13. ὑπέσχετο: cf. ὑπο-σχόμενος XXII. Note the present and aorist stems. δώ-σειν . . . Ἰωνίαν πάλιν (dir. disc.), "I will give you . . . when you reach Babylon, and full pay until I set you Greeks down again," etc. Note the form of indirect discourse after this verb.

ἐπήν . . . ἤκωσι: cf. ἕως ἂν χρώμαι, ἐπειδὴν βούληται XLII.; conditional relative clauses. On the optative (without ἂν) in such clauses, referring to time past, cf. ἀφικνοῖτο IX., βούλοιο XXIV. Note that with the subjunctive, ἂν is used: ἐπήν = ἐπεὶ ἂν. μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ, until he (shall) set down, (shall) bring back: cf. preceding note. Ἑλληνικοῦ: sc. στρατεύματος πρὶν . . . εἶναι, before it was evident: cf. πρὶν συμβουλευσθαι XVIII.; noting, however, that the verb upon which the subjunctive depends is negative. τί ποιήσουσιν: note that this interrogative maintains its acute accent. οὐ: accented, because at the end of a clause. χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων: cf. λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν XXXIV.; each is a gen. of separation.

§ 14. τῶν ἄλλων πλέον, more [than] the others, etc. Note the genitive dependent upon the comparative πλέον; οὐ πλέον, cf. XXVI., πλέον ἢ . . . μηνῶν. δέεται: cf. XVIII., δέεται αὐτοῦ μή. χρήναι:

<sup>1</sup> That is, give all the persons and numbers of the verb in this mode, voice, and tense.

infinitive of *χρή*: cf. *χρή* XXXV. *διαβῆναι*: the form is analogous with *στήναι* XXVII. *ἀπο-κρινοῦνται*: cf. *ἔμειναν* XLI., Notes, § 7.

§ 15. *ἦν μὲν*: note *ἦν* δέ below, — *ἦν*, = *εἰάν*, *εἰ ἂν*; cf. *ἦν δύνηται* VIII. Kind of conditional sentences in this section! *δόξετε*: fut., from *δοκέω*. Note the change of theme. *ἄρξαντες κτε*, since you began the crossing (lit. to cross): cf. *ἄρξαντος* XLIII. § 10. Note the case, and cf. *ἄρχειν αὐτῶν* XIV. *χάριν εἴσεται* (first, will know, recognize, the favor, and then), will be grateful, will requite. *ἐπίσταται κτε*, and he knows how, if anybody else also (does). *ὑμῖν χρήσεται*: cf. *ἡμῖν χρήσθαι* XXXVIII. *καὶ ἄλλον οὕτως . . . Κυρου*, and if you stand-in-need of anything else . . . as friends, you will happen upon (get) it from Cyrus. *τεύξεσθε*: fut. (deponent), from the theme *τυχ*, *τυγχάνω*. Note the dependent genitive.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *ὑπισχνέομαι* is followed by the infinitive construction, like the Latin *polliceor*.
2. Conditional relative clauses, referring to the present or future, have their verbs in the subjunctive; and *ἄν* stands after the relative adverb or pronoun introducing them.
3. The 1st aorist of *ἵστημι*, like the present, is causative, = *set*.
4. *πρὶν* is followed by the infinitive; but generally by the subjunctive when the leading verb is negative.
5. *τίς*, interrogative, always retains its acute accent. *οὐ* becomes *οὐ* at the end of a sentence.
6. Indirect questions may retain the mode of the direct discourse.
7. The comparative is followed by the genitive when *ἢ* (*than*) is omitted.
8. *χρή*, it is necessary, has an irregular present infinitive *χρήναι*.
9. *δοκέω* assumes the theme *δοκ-* in the future.
10. *τυγχάνω*, I meet with, happen upon, obtain, is construed with the genitive of the source whence the thing obtained comes.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *μῆ* . . . H. 144. G. 38.
2. Declension of *πατήρ* . . . H. 188, 189. G. 57, 1.
3. Second aorist system of *τίθημι* and *δίδωμι* . . . H. 333, 334. G. 123, pages 161, 164.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>αἴτιος</i> , responsible for, charge-able with. | 11. <i>πότερον . . . ἢ</i> , whether . . . or.                 |
| 2. <i>ἀπ-αγγέλλω</i> , I report.                      | 12. <i>προ-τιμάω</i> , I honor above others, prefer.           |
| 3. <i>τὸ ἀργύριον</i> , silver, money.                | 13. <i>τοῦμπαλιν</i> (= <i>τὸ ἔμπαλιν</i> ), back, back again. |
| 4. <i>ἄρχω</i> , I begin, rule.                       | 14. <i>τυγχάνω</i> , I happen upon, meet with, obtain.         |
| 5. <i>ἐντελής</i> , full, complete.                   | 15. <i>τὸ φρούριον</i> , <sup>4</sup> a garrison.              |
| 6. <i>ἐπὶν</i> (with subjunct.), when.                | 16. <i>χωρίς</i> apart from.                                   |
| 7. <i>ἡ λοχᾶγιά</i> , captaincy.                      | 17. <i>ψηφίζομαι</i> , I vote, decide.                         |
| 8. <i>μόνος</i> , <sup>1</sup> alone.                 | 18. <i>ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι</i> , I vote off, reject.                 |
| 9. <i>ἡ μνᾶ</i> , <sup>2</sup> mina.                  |  |
| 10. <i>πονέω</i> , <sup>3</sup> I labor, toil.        |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) *Τὸ δὲ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἀπεψηφίσαστο τοῦμπαλιν ἀπιέναι.* (b) *Σὺ δὲ οὐκ οἶσθα πότερον χωρὶς τῶν βαρβάρων ἐκινδυνεύσαν ἢ οὐ.* (c) *Ὁ ἐντελής μισθὸς ὠφείλετο τοῖς ἀναβάσι μετὰ Κυρου.* (d) *Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέειπον καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι.* (e) *Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι τὸν ἐρμηναῖ ἐπεμψεν λέξοντα ὅτι Κύρος αὐτῷ χάριν οἶδεν.*

2. Translate: (a) They began the flight (= to flee) before it was plain what the enemy were doing. (b) And if they need money or anything else, they know that they will obtain it from me, their best friend. (c) We recognize the favor, and that too although they are our enemies. (d) But he says that this (= these things) is nonsense, and to him it seems best that men, such as (= whoever) are suitable, should go to Cyrus with the captain-of-the-garrison and ask what use he wishes to make of the Greek mercenaries.

3. In the List of Words of Book I. arranged in the order of *first* occurrence, prepare the first fifty words carefully for rapid oral recitation.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the Eng. *mono-syllable*, *mono-tone*, *mono-gram*.

<sup>2</sup> The sixth part of a talent, = 100 drachmae, about \$18.75.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *ἐπι-πονωτέρᾳ* XXXVIII. § 19.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *φρουράρχοις* XII., *φρουρούμενα* XLII.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional sentences. 2. The use of *πρίν*. 3. The genitive with comparatives. 4. Synopsis of *λύω*, *πέμπω*, and *ἀγγέλλω* in the present and future active. 5. Principal parts of *δίδωμι*, *ἴστημι*, *πείθω*, *βαίνω*. 6. The genitive with *δέομαι*; with *χωρίς*; with *ἄρχω*. 7. Crasis: *τοῦμπαλιν*. 8. *ἄν* in conditional relative sentences. 9. The proclitics; *οὐ* and *οὐδ*. 10. The aspirated perfect. 11. Post-positives. 12. Peculiarities of *-μι* verbs. 13. Analyze: *ἔψονται*, *πεισθήτε*, *ψηφίσονται*, *πνήσαντες*.

## LESSON XLV.

## ANABASIS I. IV. 16-19.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 16. *ἦσθετο διαβεβηκότας*, perceived, learned, that they had crossed. Had the participle been aorist (*διαβάντας*), the sense would have been "... that they crossed," not had crossed: cf. *λελοιπὼς εἶη* XXIX. Cf. *ἦσθετο* XXIX. On the use of the participle (supplementary), cf. *ἦκουε Τάμων ἔχοντα* XXIX. *ἦσθη κτέ*, was both pleased and, etc.: cf. *Κῦρος δε ἦσθη* XXVIII. *ὅπως ἐπαιέσσετε κτέ*, it will be my concern that you praise (fut.) me: cf. *ὅπως ἔσται* VIII. Cf. *ἐπήνεσαν* XXXIV.; final *ε* of the theme is not here changed to *η* as is usual before consonants, as in *φιλέω*, *φιλήσω*. *μηκέτι νομίζετε*, no longer consider, etc.: cf. *μη θανμάζετε* XXXII.

§ 17. *συν-εἶπετο*: from *συν-έπομαι*: cf. *ἔχω*, *εἶχον*; *εἶώ*, *εἶων*. *ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν*, above (lit. higher up than) the breast: cf. *ἄνω* XXI. and *τῶν ἄλλων πλέων* XLIV. *ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ*: cf. *ὑπὸ τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν* XVII. Note, the river is represented as acting like a personal agent.

§ 18. *εἰ μὴ τότε*, unless then, i. e. excepting then: cf. *εἰ μὴ* XLIII.  
§ 12. *ὡς βασιλεύσονται*: note the tense.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *αἰσθάνομαι* (theme *αἰσθ*) is followed by the supplementary participle, or by *ὅτι* with a finite mode.
2. *ἦσθη*, was pleased, is for *ἦδ-θη*.
3. *ὅπως* with the future indicative follows verbs of *striving* or *attention*.
4. *μή* and its compounds are the negatives used with the imperative.
5. *ἔπομαι*, like *ἔχω*, *εἶώ*, augments by changing *ε* to *ει*.
6. Agency is denoted by *ὑπό* with the genitive; *means*, by the dative, or occasionally by *ὑπό* with the genitive, when the means is viewed as agent.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Present and aorist systems of *τίθημι* H. 329, 333. G. 123.
2. Conjugation of *φημί* . . . . . H. 481. G. 127, IV.
3. The cognate accusative . . . . . { H. 715, a, b; } G. 159, REM.,  
716, a, b. { NOTES 2, 4.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ἀνωτέρω, higher up.                                   | 9. μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, <sup>4</sup> magnificently. |
| 2. βρέχω, moisten, wet.                                  | 10. μέλει, refers, it concerns.               |
| 3. δια-βατός, fordable, passable.                        | 11. μηκέτι, οὐκέτι, no longer.                |
| 4. ἐπι-σῆζομαι, <sup>1</sup> lay in provisions.          | 12. οὐπόποτε, never yet, never before.        |
| 5. εὐτυχέω, <sup>2</sup> be fortunate, successful.       | 13. πεζῇ, <sup>5</sup> on foot.               |
| 6. Θαψακηνός, inhabitant of Thapsacus.                   | 14. πρό-εμι, go before, in advance.           |
| 7. θεῖος, <sup>3</sup> divine, supernatural, miraculous. | 15. σαφῶς, clearly.                           |
| 8. ὁ μαστός, breast.                                     | 16. τὸ σίτον, food.                           |
|  | 17. ὑπο-χωρέω, retreat, give way.             |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. σίτον, food.

<sup>2</sup> εὖ, well; τύχη, fortune. τυγχάνω has the same theme.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. θεός, a god.

<sup>4</sup> The first element is μέγας; so in the translation the first element is magnus.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. πούς, foot; Lat. pes.



## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Give the principal parts and the classification of (a) ἀκούω; (b) βρέχω; (c) νομίζω; (d) αἰσθάνομαι. Decline βασιλεύσων.
2. Translate: (a) Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρον ἑνός. (b) Ἐὰν δ' ἀποψηφίζομεθα ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω, βασιλεὺς ἡμῖν χάριν εἴσεται καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. (c) Ἄλλ' ἐνόμισε ὅτι ἄλλον οὕτως δεοίμεθα ὡς φίλου τευξοίμεθα Κύρου. (d) Ἐμελεν αὐτῷ ὅπως ἀκούσῃς τὴν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀρετὴν ἠέως καὶ οὐκ ἀθυμῶς συμπορεύσεται.
3. Translate: (a) They praised him as often as (ὁπότε) he was fortunate. (b) But when they received the pay for (= οἱ) more than three months, which was due (= owed) them, they were pleased, and willingly (= willing) followed Cyrus to battle. (c) Because the river was not large, it did not wet the soldiers above the breast as they crossed. (d) Now when he learned that they had voted to cross the river, and that too before it was evident whether the others would follow them or not, he recognized the favor in a magnificent manner. (e) As-long-as (ἕως) they obey their leader gladly, they know well that they will find him a true (ἀληθής) and faithful friend.
4. Review carefully the Vocab. of Lesson X. until, by means of hearing the English equivalents, the Greek may be given without hesitation.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Complete synopses of ἴστημι, τίθημι, δίδωμι, in the present, future, and aorist systems.
2. The imperfect indicative of εἶμι.
3. The declension of ἀνήρ.
4. Formation of adverbs.
5. The labial and palatal mutes before τ, δ, θ.
6. The disappearance of ζ (of verbs in -ίζω) in the future, aorist, and perfect systems.
7. The uses of the accusative.
8. Translation of aorist and perfect participles.
9. Some verbs which are followed by the supplementary participle.

## LESSON XLVI.

## ANABASIS I. v. 1-3.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 1. ἐν δεξιᾷ, on the right (hand): sc. χειρ-ί (from χεῖρ, hand). ἅπαντα ἦσαν, all [the bits of wood and brush] were. Note the plural verb with a neuter subject; cf. ἄθλα ἦσαν XXVI.

§ 2. θηρία δὲ κτέ, and there were many kinds, etc. πολὺ θᾶπτον, much swifter [than]. πολὺ, neut. sing., used adverbially, modifies ἔαττον; cf. τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII. θᾶπτον (for ταχ-ιον), comparative of ταχέως: the aspirate χ being lost in the comparative, τ is aspirated to θ as a compensation; cf. θᾶπτον προϊόντων XXVIII. ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν: cf. ὁπότε βούλοιο XXIV. § 7. ταῦτόν, = τὸ αὐτόν: cf. τοῦμπαλιν XLIV. § 15. οὐκ ἦν: cf. οὐκ ἔσται XXXVII. § 17. εἰ μὴ διαστάντες κτέ, unless standing apart (i. e. at intervals) they chase, taking their turn in line, i. e. relieving one another. παραπλήσια: cf. XXXVIII. § 18.

§ 3. τοῖς ποσὶ δρόμῳ . . . χρωμένη κτέ, using its feet in running, and its wings like a sail by raising them up. ἂν τις, if any one: ἂν = ἔάν, ἦν. ἔστι λαμβάνειν, it is possible to capture. Note the accent of ἔστι meaning it is possible.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter singular accusative of an adjective is readily used as an adverb. This is so even when the adverb itself exists; e. g. ταχύ, ταχέως.
2. ταχύς, ταχέως, roughen τ to θ in the comparative, the rough χ being lost.
3. The optative is used in general conditions which refer to past time; in the conclusion a past tense of the indicative is used.
4. The subjunctive with ἂν is used in general conditions which refer to present time; in the conclusion the present indicative is used.
5. ἔστι, in the sense it is possible, is accented upon the penult.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Transfer of aspiration . . . . . H. 74, b. G. 17, 2, N.
2. Comparison by -ίων, -ιστος . . . . . H. 253. G. 72, 1.
3. Contract verbs in -όω . . . . . H. 325. G. 98.
4. Declension of γέρας . . . . . H. 191. G. 56.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. αἶρω, raise.  | 16. εὐώδης. <sup>8</sup> -ες, fragrant.           |
| 2. ἀν-ίστημι stir up.  | 17. ἡδύς. <sup>9</sup> -εἶα. -ύ, sweet.           |
| 3. ἀπ-αγορεύω, desist, fail, give out.   | 18. ὁ κάλαμος, <sup>10</sup> reed, brush-wood.    |
| 4. ἀπαλός, tender.   | 19. τὸ κρέας flesh, meat. <sup>11</sup>           |
| 5. ἀπο-σπάω, <sup>1</sup> draw off, withdraw.  | 20. ὀμαλῆς. <sup>12</sup> -ές, even, level.       |
| 6. τὸ ἄρωμα, <sup>2</sup> spice.   | 21. ὁ ὄνος, ass, donkey.                          |
| 7. τὸ ἀψίν <sup>3</sup> ιον, <sup>3</sup> wormwood.  | 22. παντοῖος, <sup>13</sup> varied, of all kinds. |
| 8. βραχύς. <sup>4</sup> -εἶα, -ύ, short.   | 23. παύω, <sup>14</sup> stop; mid., cease.        |
| 9. δια-δέχομαι, <sup>5</sup> receive in turn, succeed, relieve.                                      | 24. ἡ πέρδιξ, partridge.                          |
| 10. δι-ίστημι, set apart; intrans., stand apart.   | 25. πέτομαι, <sup>15</sup> fly.                   |
| 11. ἡ δορκάς, <sup>6</sup> gazelle.  | 26. πλησιάζω, <sup>16</sup> approach.             |
| 12. ἐλάφειος, belonging to a deer; κρέας ἐλάφειον, venison.  | 27. προ-διδράσκω, <sup>17</sup> run ahead.        |
| 13. ἔν-εμι, am in a place, am  | 28. ἡ πτέρυξ, wing.                               |
| 14. ἐνίστε, at times. [there.  | 29. ἡ στρουθός, <sup>18</sup> ostrich.            |
| 15. ἔρημος. <sup>7</sup> deserted, desolate; σταθμὸς ἔρημος, a day's march through a desert country. | 30. ὁ τόπος, <sup>19</sup> place, locality.       |
|  | 31. ἡ ὕλη, <sup>20</sup> wood.                    |
|  | 32. ἡ ὄπις, <sup>21</sup> bustard.                |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. *spasm*.<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. *aromatic*.<sup>3</sup> Cf. French *absinthe*, brandy flavored with wormwood.<sup>4</sup> Hence Eng. *tri-brach*, *brachy*-logy.<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. *take*.<sup>6</sup> Hence the name *Dorcas*.<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. *eremite*, *hermit*; cf. XXXIV.<sup>8</sup> εὖ, well, cf. Eng. *eu*-logy; ὠδ, from the theme οδ (Lat. *od-or*), smell.<sup>9</sup> Cf. ἡδομαι, *am pleased*; ἡδέως, *gladly*.<sup>10</sup> Hence Lat. *calamus*.<sup>11</sup> Cf. Eng. *crea*-sote.<sup>12</sup> Cf. Eng. *an-omalous*.<sup>13</sup> From παντ, theme of πᾶς.<sup>14</sup> Cf. Eng. *pause*.<sup>15</sup> Theme πετ; Lat. *pen-na*, wing, for *pet-na*<sup>16</sup> Cf. παραπήσιος, *like*.<sup>17</sup> Theme δρα, cf. δρό-μος.<sup>18</sup> Cf. Eng. *o-strich*.<sup>19</sup> Cf. Eng. *topo*-graphy.<sup>20</sup> Cf. Lat. *silva*.<sup>21</sup> A large bird, which like the ostrich runs with great swiftness.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἐπορεύθη παρὰ ποταμὸν ἰχθύων πραέων πλήρη. ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων πεδῖον μέγα καὶ ἐπίρρυτον. (b) Τοὺς δὲ ὄνους διαστάντες διώξομεν διαδεχόμενοι, ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσμεν οὐκ ἔσεσθαι αὐτοὺς λαβεῖν, ἐπεὶ πολὺ ἀποσπῶσιν. (c) Καὶ πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ὀμαλῆς ἦν ὥσπερ πεδῖον μέγα. (d) Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις ἐποιήθησαν καλοὶ παράδεισοι ὑπὸ τοῦ τότε ἄρχαντος.

2. Translate: (a) Sometimes indeed they obeyed, but (use μέν . . . δέ) then they refused to go farther. (b) If they shall cross this river now, they will not be wet above the middle. (c) The flesh of the animals caught (attrib. posit.) by the Greeks is found to be more tender than venison. (d) It was said that they ran much swifter than the horses. (e) But proceeding through this country, they arrive at (= upon) a river, the width of which was a plethrum; there was a large city there, of which (dat. poss.) the name was Issus; they remained there three days, and took-in-provisions; thence they marched thirteen days' journey through a-desert-country (use ἔρημος), with the Euphrates river on the right; in these journeys many of the beasts-of-burden perished.

3. Parts and classification of ἴστημι, διδράσκω, διώκω, δέχομαι, λαμβάνω, παύω, σπάω, φεύγω. Declension of κρέας.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of nouns and adjectives whose stems end in -ες; the manner of contraction. 2. Accent of ἐνήν, inerat; why? 3. Uses of the imperfect indicative. 4. Conditional relative sentences. 5. The case after comparatives when ἦ is omitted. 6. The aspiration in θᾶπτον. 7. Crasis, coronis. 8. ω in ἀπαλώτερα. 9. ἔστι, ἐστί. 10. Formation of comparatives and superlatives. 11. The present system of ἀποσπᾶω. 12. The first aorist and future of liquid verbs. 13. Synopsis of ἀξιόω, present system, 1st and 2d person singular.

## LESSON XLVII.

## ANABASIS I. v. 4-7.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 4. περι-εργεῖτο : impf. ind. from περι-ρ-ρέω, and contracted from περι-εργέ-ετο. Note the doubling of ρ, and cf. ἐπίρρυτον XXIX., from ἐπί and ῥέω. Initial ρ is usually doubled when a vowel is brought before it by composition or inflection. ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκᾶ : cf. ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ XLV. On the form, cf. Ἀβροκόμᾶ XL. § 3. κύκλω, in a circle.

§ 5. ἀπ-ώλετο : cf. ἀπ-ώλοντο XXXI. καὶ ποιοῦντες κτί, and manufacturing them (into the proper form), they used to take them, etc.

ἔζων κτί, and they lived by buying bread in turn. ἔζων, contracted from ἐ-ζα-ον, impf. ind.

§ 6. τεττάρων σίγλων, for four shekels; paying four shekels. Note the use of the genitive to indicate the price of a purchase; cf. the Latin usage. δύναται κτί, is worth seven and a half Attic obols. Cf. this use of δύναται with that of the Latin valet. ἐσθιοντες . . . διαγιγνοντο, continued eating, i. e. continued to eat. This use of διαγιγνομαι with the participle is a more vivid way of expressing what might be denoted by the imperfect (ἔσθιον) alone. What kind of participle?

§ 7. ἦν σταθμῶν, there were (some) of, etc. . . . which he made (lit. marched) very long. ἦν singular; being used without reference to any definite subject. οὗς : cognate accusative. ἐπ-έστη, stood by, halted : cf. ἐφ-ειστήκεσαν XL. § 4. λαβόντας τοῦ . . . στρατοῦ, taking [a part] of the, etc. Note this free use of the partitive genitive, the limited word being omitted.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ρ at the beginning of a word is doubled when a vowel is brought before it.

2. A few proper names of the first declension ending in -ās, have the genitive singular ending in -ā.

3. Manner is denoted by the dative case.
4. Price is denoted by the genitive case.
5. δύναται, = is able, is worth, and in the latter sense governs an accusative.
6. Verbs, like nouns, are often followed by the partitive genitive.
7. The relative pronoun may stand as a cognate accusative wherever a noun could stand in the same construction.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. ἴστημι in the 2d aorist and 2d perfect active systems . . . . . H. 335, 336. G. 123.
2. The partitive genitive with verbs . H. 736. G. 170.
3. The genitive with verbs of buying . H. 746. G. 178.
4. Instrument, means, cause, manner . H. 776. G. 188, 1.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. τὸ ἄλευρον (usually plur.),<br>meal, flour.                | 10. ζᾶω, <sup>4</sup> live.                             |
| 2. τὸ ἄλφιτον (usually plur.),<br>barley grits.               | 11. ἡμι-ωβόλιον, <sup>5</sup> half-obol,<br>1½ cents.   |
| 3. ἀντ-αγοράζω, <sup>1</sup> buy in exchange.                 | 12. ἡ καπίθη, <sup>6</sup> kapithe.                     |
| 4. Ἀττικὸς, Attic, Athenian.                                  | 13. ὁ κύκλος, <sup>7</sup> circle                       |
| 5. δια-τελέω, <sup>2</sup> bring through to an end, complete. | 14. ὁ λιμός, hunger.                                    |
| 6. δύναμαι, am able; worth.                                   | 15. μακρός, long.                                       |
| 7. δυσ-πόρευτος, <sup>3</sup> difficult of travel.            | 16. ὁ ὀβολός, <sup>8</sup> obol.                        |
| 8. ἐνενήκοντα, ninety.  | 17. ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης, grinding-jack,<br>(hand) mill-stone. |
| 9. ἐπι-λείπω, give out, fail.                                 | 18. ὀρύττω, dig, quarry.                                |
|   | 19. πανν, <sup>9</sup> wholly, exceedingly.             |
|   | 20. περι-ρ-ρευω, flow about, encompass.                 |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. ἀγορά, market.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. τελευτάω, finish.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. πορευομαι, απορία, απορευω. δυσ- has the sense of difficult, cf. Eng. dys-pepsia.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. zoology.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. ημι-όλιον, = 1½.

<sup>6</sup> A Persian dry measure, = 2.3 litres.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. cycle.

<sup>8</sup> An Attic coin, the sixth part of a drachma, about 3½ cents.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. πᾶς, all.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 21. ὁ πηλός, <i>mud</i> .                                    | 27. συν-εκ-βιβάζω, <sup>4</sup> <i>help pull out</i> .    |
| 22. πλεθριαῖος, <i>of a plethrum</i> (in extent).            | 28. τὸ ὕδωρ, <sup>5</sup> <i>water</i> .                  |
| 23. πρίαμαι, <i>buy</i> .                                    | 29. ὁ χιλός, <i>grass, fodder</i> .                       |
| 24. πωλέω, <sup>1</sup> <i>sell</i> .                        | 30. ἡ χοϊνίξ, <sup>6</sup> <i>choeniz</i> .               |
| 25. ὁ σίγλος, <sup>2</sup> <i>shekel</i> .                   | 31. ὁ χορτός, <i>grass, fodder</i> .                      |
| 26. ἡ στε οχωριά, <sup>3</sup> <i>a narrow place, pass</i> . | 32. χωρέω, <sup>7</sup> <i>give room; hold, contain</i> . |
|  | 33. ψιλός, <i>bare</i> .                                  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὁ μὲν δᾶρειακὸς δύναται πολλοὺς ὀβολοὺς Ἄττικούς. (b) Τοῦτον τὸν ὄνον ἀλέτην ἐπρίατο ἐννέα σίγλων. (c) Ἐλεξαν ὅτι ὀρύξαντες εὐροίην πολλοὺς ὀβολοὺς ἐν τῷ πηλῷ. (d) Ὅτι δὲ πολλοὶ τῶν ἐνοικούντων ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπόλοιτο. εὐ ἦδειτε (e) Ὅταν βούλησθε πρὸς πόλιν διατελέσαι οἱ σταθμοὶ οὓς ἐλαύνετε ἰσχυρῶς μακροὶ εἰσιν. (f) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ οὐ ταχέως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ἀχθόμενος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς βελτίστους συμπρᾶξαι αὐτῷ. ἔνθα δὴ τι τῆς καλῆς τάξεως ἦν θεασασθαι. (g) Δῆλος δὲ ἦν Κύρος ὡς ὅτι τάχιστα πορευόμενος πᾶσαν τὴν ἰσθμὸν, νομίζων, εἰ θάπτον ἔλθοι, ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι. (h) Ὑπὲρ δὲ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πλοίοις διαβαίνοντες.

2. Translate: (a) He was exceedingly pleased because you crossed before the rest replied whether they would do so or not. (b) But when Socrates learned that he had gone up with Cyrus against the king, he was not at all (adverb. acc.) pleased. (c) We know that the breasts of the soldiers were not made-wet as they crossed (= crossing) the Euphrates. (d) Pray that Cyrus may be fortunate in the matters for which (ἐφ' ᾧ) he is marching.

3. (a) Decline: ὕδωρ, H. 182, α; G. 60, 5, 29. δυσπόμενος, H. 225; G. 63. (b) Learn the Vocabulary of Lesson XX., (a) pronouncing carefully each word, observing its translation, and dwelling upon it

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. mono-poly.

<sup>2</sup> A Persian coin, equal to about 24 cents.

<sup>3</sup> στενός, narrow; χώρᾱ, place.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. hydrant, hydro-phobia.

<sup>5</sup> A grain measure, equal to about 1.1 litres or quarts.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. ἀπο-βιβάζω XI.I.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. χώρᾱ.

until it is fixed in the mind, (b) copying on a slip of paper the English translations, and then from the English giving the Greek, and vice versa.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meanings of διά; constructions after it. 2. Analysis and synopsis of ἀφικνούνται. 3. Declension of εὐρος. 4. The doubling of ρ. 5. The form Μάσκᾱ. 6. Manner. 7. Future and aorist formation in liquid verbs. 8. Future and aorist of verbs in -άζω, -ίζω. 9. Theme and principal parts of ὀρύττω and ἐπέλιπε. 10. Value of the obol, the shekel. 11. Participle with διαγίγνομαι. 12. Declension of compound adjectives. 13. Principal parts and classification of ἐπίσθημι; ἔταξε. 14. Cognate accusative.

## LESSON XLVIII.

## ANABASIS I. v. 8, 9.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 8. ὥσπερ ὀργῆ: on the construction, cf. κύκλω, § 4. συν-επισπεύσαι κτέ, to help in hastening forward. σύν has here the same force (that of helping) as in συν-εκ-βιβάζειν, § 7. ἔε-ντο, they sent themselves, rushed: from ἔη-μι, send, let go; not to be confused with εἶμι or εἰμί. ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι κτέ, just as any one would run for a victory, even down a very, etc. Note the optative, and cf. δκνοίην ἂν XXXVIII. § 17. ἢ ὡς τις ἂν φέτο, than [omit ὡς, as] any one might think, i. e. if he were observing them. The past indicative thus used in a conclusion is called the hypothetical indicative. Without ἂν, what would φέτο mean? μετεώρους . . . ἀμάξᾱς, i. e. they lifted them up, and brought them out of the mud.

§ 9. τὸ δὲ σύμπᾱν, upon the whole, adverbial accusative: cf. οὐδὲν ἤχθετο XV. δηλος ἦν σπεύδων: cf. δηλος ἦν ἀνιόμενος XXVI. § 11.

ὅπου μὴ καθίζετο, where he did not halt, i. e. except (εἰ μὴ) where he halted. On account of the conditional idea in the sentence, the negative is μὴ, not οὐ. ὅσῳ . . . τοσούτῳ, quanto, . . . tanto (degree of difference; cf. ἡμέραις XXXI.), the more swiftly he proceeded, the more unprepared the king would be. μαχεῖσθαι: fut. of μάχομαι. συν-ιδεῖν δ' ἦν . . . οὐσα, and for one lending his attention (animum adhibenti), the government of the king was to see into as being strong (i. e. it was possible to see that the government was strong). ἀρχή, subject of ἦν, the Greek, as usual, preferring the personal construction, cf. δηλὸς ἦν σπεύδων above, and XXIV., XXV. συν-ιδεῖν, 2 aor. inf. (from συν-οράω), is loosely attached to ἦν. πλήθει . . . μήκεσι . . . τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι: datives of cause. τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι, the scattered condition of his forces: perf. inf., from δια-σπᾶω. Note the reduplication ε-; why not σε-? On the infinitive used as a noun, cf. τοῦ ἀθροίζεω XIV. δυνάμεις: subject of διεσπᾶσθαι. διὰ ταχέων, through swift means; quickly, rapidly.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. σύν, prefixed to a verb, frequently has the idea of aiding in the act denoted by the simple verb.

2. ἴστημι has a 1st and 2d perfect participle (ἴστηκώς, ἴστώς) without difference of meaning.

3. The Greek prefers the personal construction (δηλὸς ἦν, he was evident) to the impersonal (δηλὸν ἦν). Occasionally it is impossible to render a personal construction literally and in good English; e. g. συν-ιδεῖν ἦν ἢ ἀρχὴ ἰσχυρὰ οὐσα, the government was to perceive as being strong, i. e. it was possible to perceive that the government was strong.

4. The infinitive, even when used as a noun, may take a subject.

5. The English, they lifted up and brought out the wagons, may become they brought out the uplifted wagons, in being put into Greek.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of ἀγαθός . . . . . H. 254, 1. G. 73, 1.
2. The genitive with substantives . . . H. 729, a-g. G. 167.
3. The present system of ἴημι . . . . H. 476. G. 127, III.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀναγκαῖος, necessary; neut., a necessity.
2. αἱ ἀναξυρίδες, Persian trow-
3. ὁ γή-λοφος,<sup>1</sup> hill. [sers.
4. δια-σπᾶω,<sup>2</sup> draw apart, separate.
5. δ α-τριβῶ,<sup>3</sup> wear away; delay.
6. εἰς-πηδάω, jump into.
7. ἐκ-κομίζω, bring out.
8. ἔνιοι, some.
9. ἐπιτιτισμός, provisioning, taking supplies.
10. εὐθύς, immediately.
11. ἡ εὐταξία,<sup>4</sup> good order.
12. ἴημι,<sup>5</sup> send, hurl.
13. καθέζομαι sit down, rest.
14. ὁ κἀνδύς, cañan (a Persian vest).
15. κράτιστος, most powerful, best.
16. μάλα, very, exceedingly.
17. μάχομαι,<sup>6</sup> fight, contend with.
18. τὸ μέρος, part, portion.
19. μετέωρος,<sup>7</sup> lifted, raised (in mid air).
20. τὸ μήκος,<sup>8</sup> length.
21. ἡ νίκη,<sup>9</sup> victory.
22. ὁ νόος (νοῦς), mind, attention.
23. ἡ ὀργή, anger.
24. τὸ πλήθος, number, multitude, extent.
25. ποικίλος, many-colored, embroidered.
26. πολυτελής, -ές, costly, rich.
27. πορφύρεος, -οῦς, purple.
28. πρᾶνής,<sup>10</sup> -ές, steep.
29. προσ-έχω, hold to, apply.
30. ῥίπτω, throw, throw off.
31. σπεύδω, hasten.
32. συν-επι-σπεύδω, help in hastening onward.
33. συν-αγείρω, collect together.
34. συν-οράω, observe, perceive.
35. σχολαῖος, slow; -ως, adv., slowly.
36. ὁ τράχηλος, throat.
37. ἡ χεῖρ,<sup>11</sup> hand.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Compare: πρᾶνής, πολυτελής, ποικίλος, ταχέως, σχολαῖως, σχολαῖος, ἰσχυρός, ἀσθενής. (Grammar Lesson XI.)

2. Principal parts, theme, and class of ῥίπτω, τυγχάνω, διδράσκω, ἔχω, τρίβω, μάχομαι.

<sup>1</sup> γῆ, earth, and λόφος, an eminence.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. ἀπέσπᾶ XLVI.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. diatribe.

<sup>4</sup> εἶ, well, and τάττω, arrange.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. ἀφ-ίεναι XXXVIII. § 19.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. μάχη, battle, XXV., Eng. logo-machy.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. meteor.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. μακρός, long, XLVII.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. νικάω, XXV. § 8.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Lat. prōnus.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Eng. chir-ography.

3. (a) Ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. (b) Τῇ δ' αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπὶ τὴν πηγὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἰὼν καὶ ἐκεῖ θεωρήσας τὴν ἀγορὰν, ἀπῆλθε ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνή· διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατοῦ σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν. (c) Ὅσφ πλείον ἔχομεν τοσοῦτφ πλείον βουλόμεθα ἔχειν. (d) Τοῖς τὸν νοῦν προσέχουσι δῆλόν ἐστι τοῦτο τὸ μέρος τοῦ γηλόφου ἰσχυρῶς πρῶνός. (e) Ὑπέσχετό μοι εἰ καταπηδήσας συνεπισπεύσαιμι τὰ σκευοφόρα, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν μοι πολλοὺς ποικίλους τε καὶ πολυτελεῖς κἀνδύς τοὺς πορφυροῦς ἀποδοίη.

4. Translate: (a) If he should apply his attention to this conspiracy against himself, he would quickly perceive that it is very dangerous.<sup>1</sup> (b) The more we have, the more we want. (c) It is said that Apollo was the best of all the gods in musical-skill. (d) It was indeed evident that the kingdom was weak on account of the barbarians dispersing their armies. (e) They thought that if any one made a quick campaign, the city might be conquered.

5. Select fifty of the words in Chap. I. whose meanings are most difficult to retain, make a list of these meanings, and practise giving the corresponding Greek until it can be done without hesitation.

#### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of neuters in -ος. 2. The supplementary participle. 3. Declension of χεῖρ, νοῦς.<sup>2</sup> 4. Hypothetical optative; hypothetical indicative. 5. Personal and impersonal constructions. 6. Classification and orders of the mutes. 7. Accent in the 2d aorist infinitive and participle. 8. Declension of ἴστηκός. 9. Reduplication of ψεύδω, σπάω, ἴστημι, λαμβάνω; the form εἶρηκα. 10. The hypothetical indicative. 11. Substantive use of the infinitive. 12. Its loose use. 13. μετεώρους, ἐξεκόμισαν.

<sup>1</sup> Lesson XXXVIII. § 19.

<sup>2</sup> H. 157; G. 43.

#### LESSON XLIX.

#### ANABASIS I. v. 10-13.

##### 1. NOTES.

§ 10. κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς, opposite the journeys through the desert: cf. κατ' ἀντιπέρας XV. στεγᾶσματα, as coverings [for their tents]. ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτον, they filled with light hay. συνέσπων: cf. ἀπέσπᾳ XLVI. § 3; διεσπᾶσθαι XLVIII. ὡς μὴ . . . ὕδωρ, so that the water did not touch the hay. ὡς = ὥστε; cf. IX.

οἶνον . . . σίτον: appositives to ἐπιτήδεια. Note carefully the arrangement of attributives in this clause: ἐκ, out of; ἀπό, from, from off.

§ 11. ἀμφι-λεξάντων, — gen. abs., with τοῦ (= τινός) after Μένωνος, and τοῦ supplied before τῶν Κλεάρχων. — because some one of . . . had some dispute, etc. ἐχαλέπαινον, bore it hard, were provoked: cf. XLIII. § 12, and χαλεπῶς φέρω XXXII.

§ 12. ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ, hurls (with) his axe. αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν, missed him.

§ 13. παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα, passes the word along, "to arms!" orders them to arms. τούτων δὲ . . . Θράκας: a parenthesis.

ἐκ-πεπλήχθαι: perf. inf. mid., from ἐκ-πλήττω, theme πληγ. The ending -σθαι drops σ coming between γ and θ, and γ then becomes χ; λ) λαμβάνω, perf. εἴληφα, inf. mid. εἴληφθαι.

##### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. πέραν, an adverb of place, is followed by the genitive.
2. Verbs of filling govern the genitive.
3. Negative result is expressed by ὡς μὴ or ὥστε μὴ, with the infinitive.
4. Verbs of touching govern the genitive.
5. τοῦ, meaning the same as τινός, is an enclitic.
6. Verbs signifying to be angry, may take the dative of the cause.
7. Verbs of missing are construed with the genitive.
8. In the perfect infinitive middle the ending -σθαι loses σ between consonants.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                    |                               |                             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Declension of γόνυ . . . . .    | H. 216, 3.                    | G. 60, 5, 6.                |
| 2. Genitive with verbs . . . . .   | H. 736-743.                   | G. 170, 171.                |
| 3. Conjugation of ἴστημι . . . . . | H. 331, 335, }<br>336, 351. } | G. 123, 121, }<br>1, 2 (d). |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ἀμαρτάνω (theme ἀμαρτ), miss.  | 14. κατα-σκέπτομαι, <sup>6</sup> examine.      |
| 2. ἀμφι-λέγω (talk on both sides),<br>wrangle, quarrel.   | 15. κατα-φεύγω, flee for refuge,<br>escape to. |
| 3. ἡ ἀξίνη, axe.  | 16. κοῦφος, light.                             |
| 4. ἄπτομαι, touch.  | 17. κρίνω, decide, judge.                      |
| 5. ἀφ-ιππεύω, <sup>1</sup> ride away.   | 18. ὁ λίθος, <sup>7</sup> stone.               |
| 6. ἡ βάλανος, nut: (of the date-<br>palm) date.   | 19. τὸ ξύλον, piece of wood.                   |
| 7. τὸ γόνυ, <sup>2</sup> knee.  | 20. ὀλίγος, <sup>8</sup> small; plur., few.    |
| 8. ἡ διάβασις, <sup>1</sup> place of crossing;<br>ford.   | 21. ὀργίζομαι, <sup>9</sup> am angry.          |
| 9. δι-ελαύνω, ride through.   | 22. οὐπω, not yet.                             |
| 10. ἡ διφθέρα, <sup>3</sup> hide; (hide made<br>into a) bag.                                    | 23. πέρα(ν), <sup>10</sup> beyond, across.     |
| 11. ἐκ-πλήττω, <sup>4</sup> strike out; (of one's<br>senses) dumbfound, amaze.                  | 24. πίμπλημι, <sup>11</sup> fill.              |
| 12. ἐμ-βάλλω, <sup>5</sup> throw on; πληγὰς<br>ἐμβάλλω, throw on blows,<br>chastise by beating. | 25. πληγή, plāga, blow.                        |
| 13. ἡ κάρφη, hay.   | 26. προσ-ελαύνω, ride forward,<br>up.          |
|   | 27. τὸ στέγασμα, <sup>12</sup> covering.       |
|   | 28. συ σπείω, <sup>13</sup> draw together.     |
|   | 29. ἡ σχεδιά, <sup>14</sup> frame, raft.       |
|   | 30. σχίζω, <sup>15</sup> scindo, split.        |
|   | 31. ὁ φοῖνιξ, date-palm.                       |

<sup>1</sup> Derivation?<sup>2</sup> Same in origin as genu and the Eng. knee.<sup>3</sup> How different from τὸ δέσμα? Cf. Eng. diph-theria.<sup>4</sup> Theme πλαγ, πληγ. Cf. πληγή.<sup>5</sup> Cf. σκεπτεῖον XXXV.<sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. olig-archy.<sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. litho-graphy, mono-lith.<sup>8</sup> Cf. Eng. olig-archy.<sup>9</sup> Cf. Eng. olig-archy.<sup>10</sup> Cf. κατ' ἀντιπέρας XV.<sup>11</sup> Cf. πλή-ρης, σύμ-πλε-ως, πλή-θος, pleo.<sup>12</sup> From στέγω, = tego, cover.<sup>13</sup> Cf. ἀπο-σπείω, XLVI., δια-σπείω XLVIII.<sup>14</sup> How different from τὸ πλοῖον?<sup>15</sup> Cf. Eng. schism.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Τούτῳ δὲ τῷ ἵππεί πολλὰς τε καὶ ἰσχυρὰς πληγὰς ἐμβάλλω, εἰ μὴ μοι πείθεται (b) Ὅσοις μὲν λίθοις τὸν γυμνήτα ἤκε, πάντες αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτον· ἡ δ' ἀξίνη τοῦ ποδὸς ἐκείνου ἔτυχε. (c) Κεκελεύκαμεν ὑμᾶς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τούτων τῶν στλεγγίδων τοῦ φοινικιστοῦ (d) Ταῦτα δὲ πρᾶγματα ἐπὶ τῶν γονάτων τῶν θεῶν ἐστίν. (e) Ἡ τῶν ἀρχαίων σοφία μέγα θαυμαστία ἐστίν.

2. Translate: (a) This is the cave in which are the sources of the river which we must cross (= is to be crossed, διαβατέος) when we arrive directly-opposite the city of the great king. (b) We will not touch those things which do not belong to us. (c) Whenever they crossed the river they used to fill their leathern bags with food which they bought in the markets of the barbarians. (d) Whenever we wish to split wood rapidly, we use an axe. (e) You know well that the nut of the date-palm is sweet.

3. Review carefully all the words in the Voc. of Lessons X. and XX.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Construction of the genitives and the datives in this Lesson.  
2. The principal parts of πίμπλημι, ἐμβάλλω, ἀμαρτάνω, καταφεύγω, παραγγέλλω, μένω, τίθημι, ἐκπλήττω. 3. Classification of the preceding verbs. 4. Formation and comparison of the adverb ἰσχυρῶς. 5. The short forms for the genitive and dative singular of τίς. 6. Conjugation of συσπείω and πίμπλημι, present system, active and middle.

## LESSON L.

## ANABASIS I. v. 14-17.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 14. ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιών, κτέ, for he happened to be coming on later, behind, etc. ἔτυχε, cf. ἔτυχεν XLVII. § 8; ὕστερος, on the case, cf. προτέρῃ XXXI. § 25; προσιών, cf. παρών III. On the number of ἔτυχε, cf. ἔμεινε XXXII. § 1. εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων, between both. εἶδείτο . . . ταῦτα : cf. closely with δαίται . . . καταλύσαι XVIII. αὐτοῦ . . . καταλευσθῆναι, when he wanted little to be stoned to death (i. e. narrowly escaped being stoned).

§ 15. ἐν τούτῳ, meanwhile. ἐπ-ῆει : cf. ἐπ-ῆσαν XXVIII.

§ 16. οὐκ ἴστε : from οἶδα. κατακεκόψεσθαι (fut. perf.), shall have been cut to pieces, i. e. shall certainly be, etc. Note, the future perfect for the future here seems to make the act immediate or decisive.

ἐμοῦ ὕστερον : cf. προτέρῃ Κύρου XXXI. κακῶς ἔχόντων : what circumstance is denoted by the genitive absolute here? τῶν . . . ὄντων, than those, etc. : cf. τῶν ἄλλων πλέον XLIV. § 14.

§ 17. ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο, (became in himself), came to himself. κατὰ χώρῳ ἔθεντο κτέ, they brought their arms to their right place; they returned to their original quarters.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Words meaning earlier, later, standing as predicates to verbs of motion, agree with the subject, and are therefore not adverbs.

2. A verb having two or more subjects, and preceding them, may agree in number with the nearest only.

3. ὀλίγου δεῖ, followed by the infinitive, = (he) almost or (he) very nearly; e. g. ὀλίγου δεῖ ἐβλήθη (βληθῆναι), he was very nearly hit.

4. The future perfect may be used for the simple future to represent a future act as certainly about to occur.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. First aorist system of liquid verbs,  
active and middle . . . . . H. 327. G. 96.
2. Future perfect of λύω . . . . . H. 319. G. 96.
3. The future perfect . . . . . { H. 466, 467, { G. 92, 4, IV.;  
850 and a. { 110, IV. c.
4. Predicate adjective, equivalent to  
an English adverb . . . . . H. 619. G. 138, n. 7.
5. The genitive with δέω . . . . . H. 743, b. G. 172, 1.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἐξ-ίστημι, set, place, out of; mid., stand out of.
2. κακῶς ἔχειω,<sup>1</sup> be or go ill, be in a bad condition.
3. κατα-λεύω,<sup>2</sup> stone down, to death.
4. τὸ πάθος,<sup>3</sup> suffering, treatment.
5. τὸ παλτόν, light spear, javelin (used for hurling or striking).
6. πρῶτος,<sup>4</sup> mildly.
7. πρόσ-εμι, come to, near; approach.
8. πυνθάνομαι (theme πυνθ), ask, learn by inquiry.
9. συν-άπτω,<sup>5</sup> make touch, join together; μάχην, join battle.
10. τίθημι τὰ ὄπλα; mid., take a military position (in line), stand under arms (after advancing to or from a place).
11. ὕστερος,<sup>6</sup> later, behind.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Εὖ δ' οὖν ἤδεσαν τὴν τάξιν ἢ προσιούσα ὑστέρα ἐτύγχανεν ὅτι κωλύσοι μὴ τὸν ἐρμηεῖα καταπετρωθῆναι. (b) Οὐ δὴ πολὺ Κύρου ὕστερον θήσονται τὰ ὄπλα κατὰ χώρῳ τῆς ἔριδος πανσάμενοι. ( ) Συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτὰ καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς κελεύει ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. εὐνοικῶς ἔχειν XI.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. κατα-πετρόω XXXII.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. πάσχω (theme παθ. πυνθ) XXXIII

<sup>4</sup> Cf. πρῶτος XLIII.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. ἀπτεσθαι XLIX.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. ὕστερον (used adverb.) XXXII.



2. Translate: (a) They knew not what they were doing until they saw Cyrus standing in their midst, and begging them not to join battle. (b) Then in truth they returned to their better senses. (c) Any one might well be angry with you, because when the generals were almost cut-down, you seem to speak so lightly about it.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of τυγχάνω, ἔπομαι, ἄγω, δέω, λέγω, πυνθάνομαι  
2. Classification of κελεύω, ἔλαβε, ελαύνων, συνάψετε. 3. Theme of νομίζω, κόπτω, ἔχω, ἀκούσας, ἔθεντο. 4. (§ 14.) Construction of αὐτῶ, Κλεάρχου, αὐτοῦ; (§ 16.) of πολύ, ἐμοῦ, ὕστερον, τῶν . . . ὄντων.  
5. Inflexion of πρᾶττω, perfect indicative middle. 6. Synopsis of ἔθεντο, 2d aorist active, and middle 2d singular.

## LESSON LI. — REVIEW.

## 1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. IV. and v.

This is a most important review, and should be taken up carefully. Go over the translation several times; mark the words whose meaning it is hard to retain; write them and repeat them with their meanings until they become thoroughly impressed. Apply just as far as possible, and step by step, the method of review suggested at the beginning of Lesson X. Be sure that if you wish to master the five remaining chapters of this First Book of the Anabasis, you must master thoroughly these first fifty Lessons, and, above all, this Review.

## 2. VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

- |                   |                 |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. τὸ ἄλευρον.    | 5. ἡ ἀξίνη.     | 9. τὸ ἀψίνθιον. |
| 2. τὸ ἄλφειον.    | 6. τὸ ἀργύριον. | 10. ἡ βάλανος.  |
| 3. ἡ ἀνάβασις.    | 7. ἡ ἀρετή.     | 11. ἡ βία.      |
| 4. αἱ ἀναξυρίδες. | 8. τὸ ἄρωμα.    | 12. ὁ γήλοφος.  |

- |                     |                    |                   |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 13. τὸ γόνυ.        | 36. τὸ μέρος.      | 59. ὁ πηλός.      |
| 14. ἡ διάβασις.     | 37. τὸ μῆκος.      | 60. τὸ πλήθος.    |
| 15. ἡ διφθέρη.      | 38. ὁ μισθοφόρος.  | 61. ἡ πύλη.       |
| 16. ἡ δορκάς.       | 39. ἡ μῆ.          | 62. ὁ σίγλος.     |
| 17. τὸ ἐμπόριον.    | 40. ἡ μυριάς.      | 63. ὁ σίτος.      |
| 18. ὁ ἐπισιτισμός.  | 41. ὁ ναύαρχος.    | 64. τὸ στάδιον.   |
| 19. ἡ εὐταξία.      | 42. ἡ ναῦς.        | 65. ἡ στενοχωρία. |
| 20. ἡ ζώνη.         | 43. ἡ νίκη.        | 66. ἡ στρουθός.   |
| 21. τὸ ἡμιβοδύλιον. | 44. ὁ νοῦς.        | 67. τὸ τεῖχος.    |
| 22. ὁ θεός.         | 45. τὸ ξύλον.      | 68. τὸ τέκνον.    |
| 23. ὁ ἰχθύς.        | 46. ὁ ὀβολός.      | 69. ὁ τόπος.      |
| 24. ὁ κάλαμος.      | 47. ἡ ὀλκίς.       | 70. ὁ τράχηλος.   |
| 25. ὁ κάνδυς.       | 48. τὸ ὄνομα.      | 71. τὸ ὕδωρ.      |
| 26. ἡ καπίθη.       | 49. ὁ ὄνος.        | 72. ἡ ὕλη.        |
| 27. ἡ κάρφη.        | 50. ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης. | 73. ὁ φίλος.      |
| 28. τὸ κρέας.       | 51. ἡ ὄργη.        | 74. τὸ φρούριον.  |
| 29. ὁ κύκλος.       | 52. ἡ ὤτις.        | 75. ἡ φυλακή.     |
| 30. ἡ κόμη.         | 53. τὸ πάθος.      | 76. ἡ χεῖρ.       |
| 31. ὁ λίθος.        | 54. τὸ παλτόν.     | 77. ὁ χιλός.      |
| 32. ὁ λιμός.        | 55. ἡ πάροδος.     | 78. ὁ χοῖνιξ.     |
| 33. ὁ λόγος.        | 56. ὁ πατήρ.       | 79. ὁ χόρτος.     |
| 34. ἡ λοχαγία.      | 57. ἡ πέρδιξ.      | 80. ἡ ὥρα.        |
| 35. ὁ μαστός.       | 58. ἡ πέτρα.       |                   |

## VERBS.

- |                 |                    |                         |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. ἀδικέω.      | 13. ἀπ-έρχομαι.    | 25. δια-δέχομαι.        |
| 2. αἶρω.        | 14. ἀπο-βιβάζω.    | 26. δια-σπάω.           |
| 3. ἀλίσκομαι.   | 15. ἀπο-διδράσκω.  | 27. δια-τελέω.          |
| 4. ἁμαρτάνω.    | 16. ἀπο-λείπω.     | 28. δια-τρίβω.          |
| 5. ἀμφι-λέγω.   | 17. ἀπο-σπάω.      | 29. δι-ελαύνω.          |
| 6. ἀνα-πείθω.   | 18. ἀπο-συλλάω.    | 30. δι-έρχομαι.         |
| 7. ἀνα-στρέφω.  | 19. ἀπο-φεύγω.     | 31. δι-ίστημι.          |
| 8. ἀν-ίστημι.   | 20. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι. | 32. διώκω.              |
| 9. ἀντ-αγοράζω. | 21. ἄπτομαι.       | 33. δύναμαι (2 senses). |
| 10. ἀπ-αγγέλλω. | 22. ἄρχω.          | 34. εἶω.                |
| 11. ἀπ-αγορεύω. | 23. ἀφ-ιππεύω.     | 35. εἰσ-πηδάω.          |
| 12. ἀπ-ελαύνω.  | 24. βρέχω.         | 36. ἐκ-κομίζω.          |

37. ἐκ-κόπτω.	59. κρίνω.	81. πωλέω.
38. ἐκ-πλήττω.	60. μάχομαι.	82. ῥίπτω.
39. ἐμ-βαίνω.	61. μέλει.	83. σκηνέω.
40. ἐμ-βάλλω.	62. οἰκτείρω.	84. στρατηγέω.
41. ἔν-ειμι.	63. οἴχομαι.	85. συγ-καλέω.
42. ἐν-τίθημι.	64. ὀργίζομαι.	86. συν-αγείρω.
43. ἐξ-ίστημι.	65. ὀρμέω.	87. συν-άπτω.
44. ἐπι-λείπω.	66. ὀρύττω.	88. συν-εκ-βιβάζω.
45. ἐπι-σιτίζομαι.	67. παρ ἔρχομαι.	89. συν-επι-σπεύδω.
46. εὐτυχέω.	68. παύω.	90. συν-οράω.
47. εὐχομαι.	69. περι-ρ-ρέω.	91. συ-σπάω.
48. ἐφ-ίστημι.	70. πέτομαι.	92. σχίζω.
49. ζάω.	71. πίμπλημι.	93. τίθημι τὰ ὄπλα.
50. ἡγέομαι.	72. πλησιάζω.	94. τυγχάνω (2 senses).
51. ἴημι.	73. πονέω.	95. ἵπο-χωρέω.
52. καθ-ήκω.	74. πρίαμαι.	96. φιλοτιμέομαι.
53. καθ-έζομαι.	75. προ-διδράσκω.	97. φρουρέω.
54. κακῶς ἔχειν; κ. ποιέιν.	76. πρό-ειμι.	98. φύω.
55. κατα-καίω.	77. πρόσ ειμι.	99. χαλεπαίνω.
56. κατα-λεύω.	78. προσ-ελαύνω.	100. χωρέω.
57. κατα-σκέπτομαι.	79. προ-τίμάω.	101. ψηφίζομαι.
58. κατα-φεύγω.	80. πυνθάνομαι.	

## ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄθῦμος.	14. ἔρημος.	27. ὀμαλής.
2. αἴτιος.	15. ἕτερος.	28. παντοῖος.
3. ἀπαλός.	16. εὐώδης.	29. πλεθριαῖος.
4. Ἀττικός.	17. ἡδύς.	30. ποικίλος.
5. ἀφανής.	18. ἡλίβατος.	31. πολυτελής.
6. βραχύς.	19. θεῖος.	32. πορφυροῦς.
7. δειλός.	20. κακός.	33. πρᾶνής.
8. διαβατός.	21. κοῦφος.	34. πρᾶος.
9. δυσπόρευτος.	22. κράτιστος.	35. στενός.
10. ἐλάφειος.	23. μακρός.	36. σχολαῖος.
11. ἐνεήκοντα.	24. μετέωρος.	37. ὕστερος.
12. ἔνιοι.	25. μόνος.	38. φίλος.
13. ἐντελής.	26. ὀλίγος.	39. ψιλός.

## ADVERBS.

1. ἄνω, ἀνωτέρω.	9. μάλα.	17. περὶ.
2. αὐτόθι.	10. μεγαλοπρεπῶς.	18. πέραν.
3. ἔξω.	11. μηκέτι, οὐκέτι.	19. πρῶς.
4. ἔσωθεν.	12. οὐδέ.	20. προθύμως.
5. εὐθύς.	13. οὐπω.	21. σαφῶς.
6. καὶ ταῦτα.	14. οὐπόποτε.	22. τοῦμπαλιν.
7. κακῶς.	15. πάνυ.	23. ὑπερθεν.
8. μά.	16. πάλα.	24. χωρίς.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

ἐὰν μή.  
ἐπειδὴν.  
ἐπὶν.  
πότερον . . . ἢ.

## PRONOUNS.

ἐγώγε.  
ὅσπερ.

## PREPOSITIONS.

ἐνεκα (strictly  
an adv.).

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Mutes** before  $\mu$ , H. 53; G. 16, 3. Transfer of aspiration, H. 74, b; G. 17, 2, N.
2. **Declension**:  $\mu\tilde{\nu}\tilde{\alpha}$ , H. 144; G. 38. πατήρ, H. 188, 189; G. 57, 1. γέρας, H. 191; G. 56. ἰχθύς, H. 201; G. 53, 2. ναῦς, H. 206, 207; G. 54. γόνυ, H. 216, 3; G. 60, 5, 6. γυνή, H. 216, 4; G. 60, 5, 7. Gender of nouns, H. 125, a, b, c; G. 33, 2, NN.
3. (a) **Numerals** 1 to 20, H. 288; G. 76. (b) εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς, H. 290; G. 77.
4. **Comparison**: (a) ἀγαθός, H. 254, 1; G. 73, 1. (b) Endings -ων, -ιστος, H. 253; G. 72, 1.
5. **Verbs**: (a) Pres. system of τίμάω, H. 323; G. 98. (b) Of verbs in -όω, H. 325; G. 98. (c) Liquid verbs, 1st aorist, H. 327; G. 96. (d) Future perfect λύω, H. 319; G. 96. (e) ἴστημι, H. 331, 335, 336, 351, 414, 415, 534, 5; G. 123, 121, 1, 2, d. (f) δείκνυμι, H. 332; G. 123. (g) τίθημι, H. 329, 333, 334; G. 123. (h) δίδομι, H. 330; G. 123. (i) Future of liquid verbs, H. 422; G. 110, II. 2. (j) Aspirated perfect, H. 452; G. 110, IV. b. (k) φημί, H. 481; G. 127, IV. (l) οἶδα, H. 491; G. 127, VII. (m) Future perfect, H. 466, 467, 850 and a; G. 92, 4, IV., 110, IV. c. (n) ἴημι, H. 476; G. 127, III.

6. **Syntax**: (a) Pred. adj. equivalent to Eng. adverb, H. 619; G. 138, n. 7. (b) Cognate acc., H. 715, a, b; G. 159, NN. 2, 4. (c) Accusative of specification, H. 718; G. 160, 1. (d) Genitive with substantives, H. 729, a-g; G. 167, 1-6. (e) With verbs, H. 736-742; G. 170-173. (f) With *δέω*, H. 743, a, b; G. 172, NN. 1, 2. (g) With verbs of buying, H. 746; G. 178. (h) Instrument, means, cause, manner, H. 776; G. 188, 1, 2. (i) Future in the ind. disc., H. 855; G. 203. (j) Infin. in ind. disc., H. 930, 2, 946; G. 246 and note.

## LESSON LII.

## ANABASIS I. VI. 1-6.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 1. *προ-ιόντων*, on the construction, etc., cf. Chap. II. 17. *οὐτοι*, i. e. the horsemen, suggested by *ἵππων*. *καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο . . . ἦν*, sc. the conclusion *καὶ τοῦτο ἔκασον*, or render *εἴ τι whatever*. *γένει*, in birth, a dative indicating the manner of his connection with the king. *τὰ πολέμια*, regarding the matters of war; construction? *καὶ πρόσθεν*, on a former occasion also. *καταλλαγείς*, cf. *συν-αλλαγέντι*, XXI.

§ 3. *ὡς ᾤετο*, modifies what?

§ 5. *τὴν κρίσιν . . . ὡς ἐγένετο*, the trial . . . how it took place, i. e. how the trial took place. *ἀπόρητον*, neuter, a thing of secrecy.

§ 6. *ὅτι δίκαιόν ἐστι . . . ἀνθρώπων*, what is just . . . before men; object of *βουλευόμενος*. antecedent of *τοῦτο*? mode of *πράξω*? why? *περὶ Ὀρόντᾳ τουτου-ί*, regarding this (-ί) here Orontās; note the force of -ί; cf. the Lat. -ce, hic-ce.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The noun or pronoun with which a participle is in the absolute construction has occasionally to be supplied.

2. Indefinite things are denoted not only by the indefinite pronoun, but also by a clause with *εἴ τις*, *εἴ τι*; *siquis*, *siquid*.

3. The dative of manner is used to denote that in respect to which a thing is true.

4. The subject of a subordinate clause may be anticipated in a sentence by being made object in the main clause.

5. An adjective referring to a preceding masculine or feminine noun may be neuter, when the noun passes over into the general idea of a thing.

6. -ί added to a demonstrative pronoun renders it *deictic*, i. e. makes it refer to something as present.

## 3. FORM LESSON.

PRIN. PARTS.	DECLENSION.	ANALYSIS.
1. φαίνω.	1. κρίσις.	1. προσπολεμῶν.
2. γινώσκω.	2. ἶχνος.	2. ἀναγνούς.
3. γράφω.	3. ὑπόμνημα.	3. καταλλαγείς.
4. δέχομαι.	4. ἀναγνούς.	4. ἐνεδρεύσας.
5. καίω (κάω)	5. προσπολεμῶν.	5. διαγγεῖλαι.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ἀνα-γινώσκω, recognize; read.                        | 14. ὁ κόπρος, dung.                                  |
| 2. ἀπό-ρητος, <sup>1</sup> -ον, not to be told, secret. | 15. ἡ κρίσις, <sup>6</sup> judgment, trial.          |
| 3. τὸ γένος, <sup>2</sup> genus, birth. [cret.          | 16. παρα-καλέω, call to my side, invite.             |
| 4. γράφω, <sup>3</sup> write.                           | 17. προ-κατα-καίω, <sup>7</sup> burn in advance.     |
| 5. ἡ δεξιὰ, <sup>4</sup> pledge.                        | 18. προσ-ήκων, <sup>8</sup> coming to; related to.   |
| 6. δι-αγγέλλω, carry word through, report.              | 19. προσ-πολεμέω, wage war against.                  |
| 7. εἰκάζω, liken; estimate, suppose.                    | 20. ὁ στίβος, trodden or beaten path.                |
| 8. ἐν-εδρεύω, lie in ambush.                            | 21. ὁ σύμ-βουλος, counsellor.                        |
| 9. ἐξ-αγγέλλω, bring out word, make known.              | 22. ὑπήκοος, -ον, <sup>9</sup> subject to, obedient. |
| 10. ἡ ἐπιστολή, epistola, letter.                       | 23. ὑπο-δέχομαι, receive, welcome.                   |
| 11. ἔτοιμος, ready.                                     | 24. τὸ ὑπόμνημα, reminder.                           |
| 12. τὸ ἶχνος, trace, track, footprint.                  | 25. φράζω, tell, declare.                            |
| 13. κατα-καίω, <sup>5</sup> kill, put to death.         | 26. χρήσιμος, useful.                                |
|   | 27. ὠφέλιμος, serviceable.                           |

<sup>1</sup> ἀπό, from, not (like α-priv.), and the theme ῥε, speak; cf. εἶρηκα XXIII.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. γίγνομαι, theme γεν; Lat. gigno, genus.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. geo-graphy, graph-ite.

<sup>4</sup> Strictly right hand, sc. χεῖρ.

<sup>5</sup> καίω, same as κτείνω; cf. ἀπο-κτενῶν VII.

<sup>6</sup> Same derivation as κρίνω; cf. κρίνας XLIX.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. κατέκαυσεν XLIII. § 10.

<sup>8</sup> From ἦκω, come. Associated with what verb?

<sup>9</sup> ὑπό and ἀκούω; cf. Lat. obedio, = ob + audio.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (a) Ἡμεῖς γ' ἀνοίμεν ἂν τοῦτοις τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν ἐπισθῆαι οἷς δοίητε, μὴ ἢ ἄς αὐτῷ τῷ λόχῳ ἀπολέσωσιν. (b) Εἰ δὴ ἢ τῆς ἐκκλησίας γνώμη δικαιότερᾳ φανείη τῶν τοῖς ἑτέροις δοξάντων, ἀξιοῖμεν ἂν τοὺς στρατιώταις στρατηγούς γενέσθαι. (c) Τί οὐ' ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν ἐπιβουλεύω μοι φανερὸς γέγονας;<sup>1</sup> εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ ἰδιώτου ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ δυνάστης αὐτόν. Λέγεις οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; (d) Συμβουλευοίμι ἂν ἐγὼ τὸν ἀνδράποδον τοῦτον λάθρᾳ ἀπολέσαι ὡς δύναται τάχιστα.

2. Translate : (a) I replied that they thought it was the time for Orontas to suffer for the bad deeds which he had done. (b) He has written many letters to his paymaster (saying) that he would have as many allies as possible when he came. (c) It is no secret that when he read the letter he had many suspicions, and then put him to death. (d) He told me not to receive you as friends.

3. Review carefully the list of nouns in Lesson XXX., until, from hearing or seeing the English words only, the Greek words can readily be given; make a constant effort to associate each new word with some already familiar Greek word, an occasional Latin equivalent, or an English derivate or cognate.

## LESSON LIII.

## ANABASIS I. VI. 7 to the end.

## 1. NOTES.

7. ὅτι σε ἠδίκησα, wherein I (have) wronged you; the antecedent of ὅτι is subject of ἔστιν. ὅτι οὐ, "No;" note the accent; cf. XLIV. § 13. οὐδὲν . . . ἀδικούμενος, being injured nothing, i. e. in no respect; in the act. voice ἀδικέω takes a cognate accusative (cf. the rel. part of ὅτι above); note, in the passive this cognate accusative is still retained. ὅτι ἐδύνω, what harm you could (sc. ποιείν). μεταμέλει σοι, that it was-a-counter-care, or change of mind, for you, i. e. that you repented.

<sup>1</sup> From γίγνομαι: where made!

§ 8. γενοίμην, sc. τῷ . . . ἀδελφῷ . . . φίλος καὶ πιστός.

§ 9. ἀπό φηναι . . . δοκεῖ, declare your opinion, [namely] what seems best to you. τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, as regards this man; literally as regards the to be (τὸ εἶναι, accusative of specification) or condition [of affairs] with reference to this one.

§ 10. ἔφη, subject? τῆς ζώνης, by the girdle, genitive of the part touched.

§ 11. ἄλλοι ἄλλως, alii aliter.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἀδικέω, κακῶς ποιέω take a cognate accusative of the wrong done, as well as an accusative of the person or thing injured.

2. οὐ, meaning "no," or at the end of a sentence, is accented (οὐ).

3. The genitive with λαμβάνω denotes the part taken hold of.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

The second passive system, H. 322, 468, 471, 472; G. 96, pp. 108, 109 bottom.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ἄδικος, <sup>1</sup> -ον, unjust.                                | 11. ὁ θάνατος, death. <sup>2</sup>                                       |
| 2. ἄλλως, otherwise; differently.                                   | 12. θνήσκω, <sup>4</sup> die.  |
| 3. ἀπο-φαίνω, show; mid. reveal one's self or for one's self.       | 13. κακῶς ποιέω, do evil or harm to, injure.                             |
| 4. ὁ βωμός, altar.  | 14. μετα-μέλει, poenitet, it repents (impersonal).                       |
| 5. γέ (enclitic), at least (giving emphasis to the preceding word). | 15. ὁμολογέω, acknowledge; confess.                                      |
| 6. ὁ ἐθελοντής, <sup>2</sup> volunteer.                             | 16. οὐκοῦν (interrogative), nonne igitur, not therefore?                 |
| 7. εἰς-άγω, lead or conduct into or within.                         | 17. προσ-κυνέω, <sup>5</sup> prostrate one's self before, pay homage to. |
| 8. ἐκποδών, out of the way.   | 18. προσ-τάττω, assign, order, command.                                  |
| 9. ἐξ-άγω, lead out.  |  |
| 10. ἦ, verily, assuredly.   |  |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. δίκη, δίκαιος, ἀδικέω.

<sup>2</sup> Connected in derivation with what verb?

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. thanat-opsis (view of death).

<sup>4</sup> Theme θαν (cf. θάνατος); so 2 aor. = ἔ-θαν-ον.

<sup>5</sup> κυνέω, kiss; probably homage in the Orient was originally shown by prostrating one's self and kissing the feet or the garments of the person revered.

19. προσ-τίθημι, *place to; mid.* 22. ὁ συγγενής,<sup>2</sup> *relative, kinsman.*  
*place one's self to, join; agree.* 23. ἡ σχολή,<sup>3</sup> *leisure.*  
 20. πώποτε, *ever yet.* 24. ὁ τάφος, *burial, grave.*  
 21. ὁ σκηπτούχος,<sup>1</sup> *sceptre-bearer.* 25. τρίτος, *tertius, third.*

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ φρούραρχος. ἴστε τὴν πατρίδα πολλὰ ἀδικηθεῖσαν τόνδε τὸν τρόπον; (b) Ἔστι δὴ χρόνος ὑμῖν μεταμέλειν τε καὶ τὰς γνώμας ἀμείνους ἀποφύνασθαι. (c) Ἐγκέλευστοι οὖν τοὺς παῖδας τῆς χειρὸς λαβόντες. ἐπὶ θάνατον ἐξήγαγον. (d) Ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. (e) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρώντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν χώρῳν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ἀμαξίτος καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις κωλύοι. (f) Ἡ δὲ ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα τε καὶ εὐταξίαν ἐθαύμασε· ἡμεῖς δὲ ἠσθημεν ἰδόντες τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον. (g) Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρηλάσαμεν, στήσαντες τὰ ἄρματα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης. πέμψαντες τοὺς ἑρμηνεῦς παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκελεύσαμεν προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα.

2. Translate: (a) Not even if they should be willing to become faithful to me, should I at least believe them; for I do not trust them. (b) Whenever we shall know that those high mountains are fortified for us, we shall remain in the plain. (c) For the multitude is great (= much), and they advance with a great shout. (d) I have taken (ἄγω) you as allies, because I thought (participle) you to be better [than] and superior [to] many barbarians.

3. Write out a translation of the verbs of Lesson XXX.; by means of this be thoroughly prepared to give the corresponding Greek words. Read the latter part of No. 3 in the Exercises of Lesson LII.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The two objects of ἡδίκησα. 2. Construction of ἵστερον, of οὐδέν. 3. In § 8, the forms γέγονας and Ὀρόντᾱ, the optatives, the clause dependent upon δόξαιμι. 4. In § 9, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι. 5. In § 10, construction of γνώμη, ζώνης, οἷς; difference of meaning between ἐπὶ θανάτῳ and ἐπὶ λανάτῳ. 6. In § 11, two senses of ὅπως; ἄλλοι ἄλλως; derivation of σκηπτούχος. 7. Complete synopsis of ἐξάγω. 8. Principal parts of θνήσκω, ἀποφαίνω, γινώσκω; synopsis of the last, 2 aor. act.; analysis of ἔγνωσ. 9. The genitive with verbs.

<sup>1</sup> From σκῆπτρον and ἔχω.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. συγγίνομαι, γένος, Lat. co-gna-tus.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. σχολαίως XLVIII.

## LESSON LIV.

## ANABASIS I. VII. 1-5.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 1. εἰς . . . ἔω, toward the approaching (= approach of) dawn: nom. ἔως. Cf. Ταμ-ῶς, Ταμ-ῶν XXIX. Note, ἔως forms its accusative singular without the case ending. κέρως: for κέρασ-ος, from κέρας; cf. γένους for γένεσ-ος.

§ 3. ἀπορῶν, because I am in want of. Cf. XXXIV. § 8. ἧς κέκτησθε: cf. ᾧ δοίη XXXVII. § 17. ἧς ὑμᾶς κτέ, on account of which, etc. Note the genitive of cause; cf. ἐπιθῆ ᾧν νομίζει XXXV. § 10.

§ 4. ἄν: cf. κᾶν XXXVIII. § 20. τᾶλλα (cf. preceding note), I seem to be ashamed of the rest, i. e. what will follow, namely, what men, etc. τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτόν, to those, i. e. in the eyes of those, at home.

§ 5. διὰ τὸ . . . εἶναι: cf. τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι XLVIII. § 9. τοιούτῳ . . . τοῦ κινδύνου, such [a point] of danger. με-μνή-οιο: contraction for με-μνή-οιο.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some nouns of the 2d declension end in -ως, and have the accusative singular in -ων; ἔως, however, omits -ν.

2. Nouns whose stem ends in -ας form the genitive in -ως by contraction.

3. The genitive of cause follows εὐδαιμονίζω.

4. The dative may denote in whose view, or in relation to whom, something is true.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |   |                                   |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Declension of ἔως . . .                        | H. 159, 161.                                | G. 42, 2 and N. 1.                |
| 2. Declension of κέρας . . .                      | H. 181, 183.                                | G. 56, 2.                         |
| 3. μέμνημαι . . . . .                             | { H. 365, b; 465, a; }<br>466, b; 530, 6. { | { G. 118, 1 N.; 200, }<br>N. 6. { |
| 4. Genitive of cause, with verbs of emotion . . . | H. 744.                                     | G. 173, 1.                        |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἅμα, together, together with.                       | 12. ὁ κίνδυνος, <sup>5</sup> danger.                       |
| 2. ἀνέχω, hold up, endure.                             | 13. κτάομαι, acquire; perf. possess.                       |
| 3. ὁ αὐτόματος, <sup>1</sup> deserter.                 | 14. αἱ μέσαι νύκτες, mid-watches (of the night), midnight. |
| 4. διατάττω, dispose in order, arrange.                | 15. μὴν, verily, of a truth (post-positive)                |
| 5. διδάσκω, <sup>2</sup> teach.                        | 16. μιμνήσκω. I remind; μέμνημαι, memini.                  |
| 6. ἡ ἐλευθερία, freedom.                               | 17. παραινέω, <sup>6</sup> recommend.                      |
| 7. εὐδαιμονίζω, <sup>3</sup> deem happy, congratulate. | 18. πολλαπλήσιος, manifold.                                |
| 8. εὐτολμος, courageous.                               | 19. προσλαμβάνω, take in addition.                         |
| 9. ἡ ἕως, dawn.  | 20. πῶς; how?  |
| 10. ζηλωτός, envied; object of envy.                   |  |
| 11. τὸ κέρασ, <sup>4</sup> horn; wing (of an army).    |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. (b) Εἰσήεσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τινές, ἀξιούντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται ἐὰν νικήσωσιν. (c) Ὁ δ' ὄρᾳ τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας. (d) Ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδὲ τότε ἐπειράσατο διώκειν.

2. Translate: (a) He hung up the beautiful horns of the animals, which he had killed, in a little cave near the gate of the garden. (b) Since we know, we will tell (= teach) you why we congratulated those guides. (c) They had shown themselves courageous in battle, and endured well so much of danger, that the king recognized the favor, and made them all objects of envy in the eyes of the rest. (d) We shall recollect to show ourselves worthy of the freedom which we have acquired, whenever the enemy come.

<sup>1</sup> From αὐτός, self, and the theme μολ, to go.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. didactic.

<sup>3</sup> From εὐδαίμων.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. rhino-ceros, having a horn on the nose.

<sup>5</sup> Hence κινδυνεύω.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. ἐπαινέω XXXIV. § 7.

3. Prepare a translation of the nouns and verbs of Lesson XXX., and practise giving the Greek for each word, varying the order constantly.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attic second declension. 2. Neuters in -as. 3. Peculiarities in conjugation of μέμνημαι. 4. Principal parts of μιμνήσκω, and synopsis of μέμνημαι. 5. A tabular view of the uses of the genitive with verbs; illustrations in this Lesson. 6. ἤξειν . . . μαχούμενον in direct discourse. 7. Κλέαρχον . . . ἠγείσθαι in direct discourse. 8. ἡμέρᾳ, § 2, construction? 9. ποιῶντο mode, and why. 10. αμείνους, § 3; peculiarities of declension. 11. Construction of πολλῶν βαρβάρων. ἐλευθερίας, ἧς (κέκτησθε). 12. Principal parts and classification of διατάττω, παρήναι, προσελαβον, κέκτησθε, εὐδαιμονίζω, διδάξω, μεμνήσεσθαι.

## LESSON LV.

## ANABASIS I. VII. 6-11.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 7. μὴ οὐκ ἔχω: on the mode, cf. καταδύση XXXVII. § 17. ὅτι δῶ, what to give. This is not for ὅτι ἂν δῶ (cond. rel.); it is the indirect form of the direct question, "what shall I give" (τί δῶ). Note, the subjunctive (like the Lat. *quid dicam*) is used in a question as to what may be done with propriety or advantage. οἷς δῶ: cf. preceding note.

§ 9. ὀπισθεν ἑαυτῶν: cf. εἶσω τῶν ὀρέων XXIX. οἷει γάρ; do you think then-indeed? Note this sense of γάρ in questions, — γάρ = γέ + ἄρα; cf. ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη LIII. νῆ Δί': cf. μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς XLII. Δί', = Δία: accusative of Ζεὺς; H. 216; G. 60, 5, 10.

§ 10. ἄσπισ: singular where the plural might have been expected; but cf. the English use, e. g. "a thousand horse." This is called the collective use of the noun.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Questions of deliberation as to what *may be* done, have their verb in the subjunctive. In the indirect discourse after a primary tense this mode is retained, the interrogative being changed to an indefinite relative pronoun.

2. *νή, μά*, adverbs of *swearing*, are followed by the accusative of the person sworn by.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |                                       |               |                  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. Synopsis of <i>τιμάω</i> . . . . . | H. 337.       | G. 98.           |
| 2. Synopsis of <i>ποιέω</i> . . . . . | H. 339.       | G. 98.           |
| 3. Cardinal numerals, 1 — 10,000      | H. 288.       | G. 76.           |
| 4. <i>εἰμί</i> as enclitic . . . . .  | H. 480, 1, 2. | G. 28, n. 1 end. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ἀμαχεί</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>without a battle.</i>                          | 12. <i>κρατίω</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>rule, have power over.</i>             |
| 2. <i>ἡ ἄρκτος</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>bear; Great Bear;</i><br><i>north.</i>       | 13. <i>ἡ μεσημβρία</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>mid-day; south.</i>               |
| 3. <i>δια-λέγομαι</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>converse with.</i>                        | 14. <i>μέχρι οὗ</i> , <i>until where; to the</i><br><i>place where.</i>    |
| 4. <i>δρεπανη-φόρος</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>-ον, scythe-</i><br><i>bearing.</i>     | 15. <i>νή, yea, by; affirmative ad-</i><br><i>verb of swearing.</i>        |
| 5. <i>ἐγ-κρατής</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>-ές, in-power,</i><br><i>powerful over.</i> | 16. <i>ὀπισθεν</i> , <i>behind.</i>  |
| 6. <i>ἐμ-πίπλημι</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>fill in, satisfy.</i>                      | 17. <i>παρα-κελεύομαι, recommend.</i>                                      |
| 7. <i>ἑξακισχίλιοι, six thousand.</i>   | 18. <i>πατρῶος</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>paternal, heredi-</i><br><i>tary.</i> |
| 8. <i>ἡ ἔξοπλισία</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>the arming,</i><br><i>equipment.</i>      | 19. <i>πῶς, in some way; ὡδέ πως,</i><br><i>about thus.</i>                |
| 9. <i>ἠρόμην</i> , 2 aor., <i>I asked.</i>  | 20. <i>σατραπεύω</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>govern as satrap.</i>               |
| 10. <i>ὁ καιρός, occasion.</i>  | 21. <i>ὁ στέφανος</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>crown.</i>                         |
| 11. <i>τὸ καῦμα</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>heat.</i>                                   | 22. <i>ὁ χειμῶν, winter.</i>   |

<sup>1</sup> Derivation?

<sup>3</sup> *δρέπανον, scythe, + φέρω.*

<sup>5</sup> From theme *πλη*. Cf. *πλήθος, πλήρης, ple-o, ple-nty.*

<sup>6</sup> Derivation?

<sup>8</sup> From *μέσος* and *ἡμέρα*.

<sup>2</sup> Hence Eng. *arct-ic.*

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *κρατίω; cf. ἐγκρατής.*

<sup>7</sup> Derivation?

<sup>9</sup> Hence Eng. *Stephen.*

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) *Ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο, ἀλλ' ἐποχωρούντων φανερά ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά.* (b) *Ἄνέβησαν οὖν ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ τῆς Φρυγίης ἐσχάτου τείχους.* (c) *Πάλιν δ' ἤρετο, Οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς οἰκνοῖτε ἂν τὸν ποταμὸν ταύταις ταῖς γεφύραις διαβαίνειν, αἷς ποιοῖεν;* (d) *Οὐκοῦν φοβοῖο ἂν τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τούτοις ἐπεσθαι οἷς δοίεν;*

2. Translate: (a) We deem it right to know what we also shall have if you conquer (aor.). (b) Not many are able to endure both the winter of the north and the mighty heat of the south. (c) I will make you powerful over many cities, if you learn to conquer yourself. (d) Yea! by the gods, (the) men cannot conquer themselves without a battle; but if they conquer indeed, many crowns are due (= owed) to them.

3. Review the entire Vocabulary of Lesson XXX. Do not think you have mastered it before being able to give the Greek from the English, and *vice versa*, without hesitation.

4. Synopsis (a) of *οικέω*; (b) of *νικάω*; (c) of *λαμβάνω*.

5. Parts, classification, and theme of (a) *ἀκούω*, (b) *ἔχω*, (c) *πίμπλημι*.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Mode with verbs of *fearing*. 2. Mode in questions of deliberation; direct and indirect discourse. 3. Tabular view of the genitive with adjectives and adverbs. 4. Adverbs of *swearing*. 5. Derivation of *γάρ*; its use in questions. 6. First and second perfect stems. 7. The forms *ἔστι* and *ἐστί*. 8. The cardinal numerals.

## LESSON LVI.

## ANABASIS I. VII. 12-17.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 12. ὑστέρησε κτε. = ἀφίκετο ὕστερος τῆς μάχης, later than (= too late for) the battle. Cf. προτέρῃ Κύρου κτε XXXI.

§ 15. παρετέτατο: H. 519, A and 5; G. page 356, and § 109, 6.

## 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |   |                          |                         |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Synopsis of λείπω . . . . .          | H. 344.                  | G. 96, II.              |
| 2. Synopsis of τίθημι . . . . .         | H. 349.                  | G. 123.                 |
| 3. Formation of perfect stems . . . . . | { H. 446, 447, 450, 452. | { G. 110, IV. (b), (d). |

## 3. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. αὐτομολέω, <sup>1</sup> I desert.           | 11. ὀρυκτός, dug.                                |
| 2. τὸ βάθος, -ους, depth.                      | 12. παρα-τείνω, stretch beside, extend.          |
| 3. βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ, deep.                      | 13. πλεθριαῖος, extending a plethrum.            |
| 4. δια-λείπω, leave between; lie at intervals. | 14. πλέω, I sail.                                |
| 5. ἡ διώρυξ, <sup>2</sup> canal, trench.       | 15. σῖταγωγός, <sup>4</sup> -όν, grain-carrying. |
| 6. εἰς-βάλλω, throw into; enter.               | 16. ἡ τάφρος, ditch, trench.                     |
| 7. τὸ ἔρυμα, protection; rampart.              | 17. ὑστερέω, <sup>4</sup> am or come (too) late. |
| 8. μεταξύ, ἀίν., between.                      |  |
| 9. ἡ ὀργυιά, <sup>3</sup> a fathom.            |  |
| 10. ὀρύττω, I dig.                             |  |

<sup>1</sup> From αὐτόματος LIV.

<sup>3</sup> Strictly, the span of the outstretched hands.

<sup>2</sup> From διὰ and ὀρύττω. See 10.

<sup>4</sup> Derivation?

## 4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Τότε δὲ καλέσῃς τὸν ἐρμηνεῖαν ἀπέδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾶρικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ τρίτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ θύόμενος εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ φρούραρχος οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν. (b) Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, Οὐκ οὖν ἔτι μαχεῖται. εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· εἰ δ' ἀληθῆ λέγῃς, ὑπισχνούμαι σοι δέκα τάλαντα. (c) Τοῦτο τὸ χρῦσιον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρήλθον αἱ τρεῖς ἡμέραι. (d) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων στρατιᾶν διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καταλελυκέναι πρὸς τὸν Κύρον.

2. Translate: (a) He was fifteen days too late for the review of the armies of the great king. (b) Yea! by Zeus, they do not indeed know what they are doing; for if they join battle with the king, let them not think that the scythe-bearing chariots can be prevented from cutting (infin.) them all down. (c) They were mightily angry with the guides when they heard this, and refused to go forward. (d) When, however, they knew that the journey (= way) was against the great king at Babylon, they voted not to cross the river.

3. Make a list of the meanings of the verbs in Lesson XXXIX.; from this be prepared to recite without hesitation the corresponding Greek verbs, as their meanings are pronounced by the instructor.

4. Review, in the List of first occurrences, words 196 to 300.

## 5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of πλέω; of ῥέω. 2. Construction of ἡμέραις. § 12. 3. Crasis in § 13; other instances met with. 4. Construction of στρατεύματι, § 14. 5. Synopsis of συντεταγμένῳ; formation of the perfect active. 6. Principal parts, themes, and analysis of παρατέτατο. 7. Construction of τεύχος, ποταμοῦ, ποδῶν, εὖρος, § 15. 8. Declension of τεύχος, εὖρος, βαθεία. 9. Participle with πυνθάνεται. 10. Case governed by ὑστερέω.



## LESSON LVII.

## ANABASIS I. VII. 18-VIII. 2.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 18. *δέκα ἡμερῶν*, on any one of the ten days, *i. e.* within ten days. Cf. however *τοῦ μηνός* XXXVIII. *ad fin.* Uses of dative and accusative in expressions of time? *ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσης . . . ὑπισχνούμαι*: form of conditional statement? Evolve the future idea in the conclusion; cf. *καταπράξειεν* XXII. Note, the aorist has the sense of the Lat. future perfect.

§ 19. *ἀπ-εγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι*, had concluded not to fight. On the prefix, cf. *ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι* XLIV. The prepositional prefix governs the genitive as it would if standing as an independent preposition.

§ 20. *τοῖς στρατιώταις*: cf. *οὐδενὶ κρείττονι* XXXI. § 26.

Chap. VIII § 1. *ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ*: cf. *συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι* LVI. § 14.

§ 2. *ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπι-πεσεῖσθαι*, would fall upon them(selves), etc.: from *ἐπι-πίπτω*, theme *πετ, πτω*.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Time within which is expressed by the genitive.
2. In future conditions with probability, expressions may be used in the apodosis equivalent to the future indicative; in the protasis, the aorist subjunctive is nearly equivalent to the Latin future perfect.
3. The prefix *ἀπό* frequently has a negative sense. It may govern the genitive, as when standing as a preposition.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of *φαίνω* . . . . . H. 343. G. 96, III.
2. Synopsis of *δίδωμι*. . . . . H. 350. G. 123.

3. Augment of the pluperfect . . . . . H. 358. G. 99, 101, 4.
4. Attic reduplication . . . . . H. 368. G. 102.
5. Principal parts of *ἀκούω, ελαύνω* . . . . . { H. 507, 1, }  
 . . . . . { 521, 1. } G. pp. 330-338.
6. Genitive with compound verbs . . . . . H. 751. G. 177.
7. *κάθ-ημαι* . . . . . H. 484. G. 127, V.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ἀληθεύω, speak the truth.  | 13. ἐπι-πίπτω, fall upon.   |
| 2. ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης, Ambraciot. <sup>1</sup>   | 14. ἡμελημένως, <sup>5</sup> carelessly.  |
| 3. ἀνά, up; ἀνὰ κράτος, up to the full measure of strength, <i>e. g.</i> , at full speed. | 15. ἡνίκα, when; like the Lat. <i>quum</i> with the ind.                                    |
| 4. ἀνα-ταράττω, <sup>2</sup> stir up, confuse.  | 16. ἰδρῶω, sweat, perspire.   |
| 5. ἀπο-γιγνώσκω, <sup>3</sup> come to the conclusion not to, abandon the idea.            | 17. τὸ κράτος -ους, power, strength. See ἀνά above.   |
| 6. ἄρα, therefore.  | 18. ὁ μάντις, seer, soothsayer.   |
| 7. ἄτακτος <sup>4</sup> -ον, out of order.  | 19. μέλλω, I intend, am likely.   |
| 8. αὐτίκα, immediately.   | 20. πλήθω, <sup>6</sup> be full; ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, full market, <i>i. e.</i> about 10.30 A.M. |
| 9. βαρβαρικῶς, barbarously; in the Persian tongue.  | 21. πλησίον, near.  |
| 10. βοάω, bawl or cry out.  | 22. ἡ πορεία, <sup>7</sup> journey.   |
| 11. ἐλληνικῶς, in the Greek fashion or tongue.  | 23. προ-θύομαι, conduct a sacrifice.  |
| 12. ἐνδέκατος, <sup>4</sup> -η, -ον, eleventh.  | 24. προ-φαίνω, appear in the distance.  |
|   | 25. τὸ τάλαντον, <sup>8</sup> talent.   |
|   | 26. ὁ τάραχος, confusion.   |

<sup>1</sup> Ambracia was in Epirus, near the gulf which bore its name, — the Ambracian Gulf.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *τάραχος* below, for the theme.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *γνώμη*; *ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται* XXXII.

<sup>4</sup> Derivation?

<sup>5</sup> Perfect middle participle of *ἀ-μελέω* made into an adverb. Cf. XXXV. § 11; XLV. § 16.

<sup>6</sup> Give other words showing same theme.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Lesson XLVII., Vocab., note <sup>8</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> A *sum* of money, about \$1,100.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἦν μὲν γὰρ ἀπόγνωμεν αὐτίκα ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμῖν ἐπιπέσωσι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τὸν τάραχον. (b) Τῷ Ἀμπρακιώτῃ χάριν εἴσεται ὡς ἀληθεύοντι· μέλλει δὲ αὐτὸν ἀποδώσειν. (c) Τῇ δὲ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἄτακτοι διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. (d) Οἱ μάντις βοήσαντες ἡμελημένως τὴν στρατιὰν ἐτάραξαν. (e) Ἀναβᾶς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον καὶ τὰ παλὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας λαβῶν τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν τὰ ὄπλα λαμβάνειν καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον.

2. Translate: (a) And at (= in) this time, riding-along, himself, with Pigres the interpreter and two or three others, he cried-out to Clearchus to lead the army against [the] middle (= middle the) of the enemy, because the king was (ind. disc.) there. (b) "And if we conquer this," said he, "everything has been done for us." (c) We were riding at full speed, with our horses sweating mightily, in order to announce that the king was near. (d) But being perplexed and distressed by these matters, they sent after the soothsayers. (e) And they told us to be of good cheer, as these matters would be settled (= set themselves down) as desired (= into the needed, δέω). (f) This was done carelessly, and without the knowledge of the messengers.

3. Review carefully the Vocabulary of Lesson XXXIX., so as to be able to give the English from the Greek, and *vice versa*, without hesitation.

4. Review the words of Chapter II. in the List of *first occurrences*.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Expressions of *time*. 2. Modes in the indirect discourse. 3. How to change the direct discourse in § 18 into the indirect discourse as completely as possible (study Chap. II. § 2). 4. *Aorist* subjunctive in conditional clauses. 5. The mutes before *μ*. 6. Peculiarity in *ἔδωκε, ἔθηκα*; synopsis of this tense, active voice. 7. Analysis and principal parts of *ἀπεγνωκέαι*; of *ἀναγεταραγμένον*. 8. Different kinds of reduplication. 9. Declension of *κράτος, σφίσις, μάντις*. 10. Principal parts of *ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι*; synopsis of this tense and voice.

## LESSON LVIII.

## ANABASIS I. VIII. 3-8.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 3. ἐν-έ-δῦ: cf. ἀν-έ-βη-ν, ἔ-γνω-ν, ἔ-στη-ν, they are 2d aorists, formed from the pure theme. Note, each theme ends in a vowel, and that the personal endings are attached directly. This is not the case, e. g., with ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, ἔ-βαλ-ε-ς, — themes ending in a consonant, — for a vowel stands between the theme and the ending. The conjugation of these last belongs to the -ω system (λύω); but the few 2d aorists of vowel themes belong to the -μι system, whatever be the system to which the present belongs, — so ἔλιπ-ο-ν, ἔδῦ-ν; βαλ-εῖν, βῆ-ναι; φυγ-ών, γνοῦς or βᾶς or δῦς. καθ-ίσ-τασθαι εἰς . . . τάξιν ἕκαστον, each one to set himself (dir. mid.) down, i. e. fall into line.

§ 4. ἐχόμενος, holding on, next.

§ 8. χρόνῳ συχνῶ: cf. ἡμέραις πέντε LVI. § 12. ἐπὶ πολὺ, into, at, a great [distance]. Cf. ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγᾳς LVI. § 15.

## 2. OBSERVATION.

There are 2d aorists (a) of the -ω form, following the model of ἔλιπον; (b) of the -μι form, following the model of ἔστην.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |                       |              |
|--|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1. Short <i>a</i> in the nominative,<br>1st declension . . . . | H. 139, c, d.         | G. 37, n. 2. |
| 2. Comparison of adverbs . . .                                 | H. 259.               | G. 75.       |
| 3. Future system of liquid verbs                               | H. 326.               | G. 96, III.  |
| 4. Conjugation of ἔστην and ἔδῦν                               | H. 335.               | G. 123.      |
| 5. Second aorists of the -μι form                              | H. 489, 1, 3, 15, 17. | G. 125, 3.   |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ἀστράπτω, <i>flash.</i>                                  | 16. ὀπλίζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, <i>put on heavy armor; arm.</i>                                |
| 2. ἡ δειλή, <i>early evening.</i>                           | 17. ὅσον, <i>so much as; with num., about.</i>  |
| 3. δια-κινδυνεύω, <i>brave the danger.</i>                  | 18. τὰ παραμηρίδια, <i>the thigh-pieces of armor.</i>                                   |
| 4. ἐγγύς, <i>near; ἐγγύτερον, nearer.</i>                   | 19. πέλταστικός, <i>consisting of targeteers.</i>                                       |
| 5. ἐν-δύω, <i>enter into; put on.</i>                       | 20. τὰ προμετωπίδια, <i>armor-pieces before the forehead, head-pieces.</i>              |
| 6. ἐξ-οπλίζω, <sup>1</sup> <i>arm completely.</i>           | 21. τὰ προστερνίδια, <sup>6</sup> <i>armor-pieces before the breast, breast-pieces.</i> |
| 7. ὁ θώραξ, <sup>2</sup> -ᾰκος, <i>breastplate.</i>         | 22. ἡ σπουδή, <i>zeal, haste.</i>   |
| 8. κατα-πηδάω, <sup>3</sup> <i>leap down.</i>               | 23. συχρός, -ή, -όν, <i>continuous, considerable in length.</i>                         |
| 9. κατα φανής, <sup>4</sup> -ές, <i>in plain view.</i>      | 24. τάχα, <i>quickly.</i>   |
| 10. ὁ κοινορτός, <i>a stirring or cloud of dust.</i>        | 25. χαλκός, <sup>7</sup> <i>bronze, bronze object.</i>                                  |
| 11. ἡ λόγχη, <i>spear-head; spear, lance.</i>               |   |
| 12. λευκός, -ή, -όν, <i>white.</i>                          |   |
| 13. ἡ μάχαιρα, <i>short sword, dagger.</i>                  |   |
| 14. ἡ μελανία, <sup>5</sup> <i>blackness; black object.</i> |   |
| 15. ἡ νεφέλη, <i>cloud.</i>                                 |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὁ μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσᾱς παρεκελεύετο ἱμῖν τὴν κραυγὴν ἀνέχεσθαι. ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο (b) Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν προῆει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. (c) Καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοὺς θώρακας ἐνδύντες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· δυνάστης τις ἐλέγετο τούτων ἡγεῖσθαι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλῖται σὺν ἀσπίσι ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς πόδας παρατεινούσαις. (d) Ἡνίκα δ' ἐν τῇ δειλῇ τὰς δορκάδας τε καὶ ὄνους ἀγρίους ἐδίωκον χρόνον συχρὸν, κοινορτός τις ἐφάνη ἐπὶ πολὺ ὡς πολλῶν στρουθῶν τὰς πτέρυγας αἰρουσῶν ὡσπερ ἰστίοις χρωμένων καὶ ἀποδιδρᾶσκουσῶν.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. ἐξοπλισίη LV. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Hence Eng. *thorax*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. XLVIII. § 8.

<sup>4</sup> κατά has the sense of *thoroughness*, as in καταπράξει(ν) XXII. Cf. ἀφανείς XLII. ad init.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. *melan-choly*, gloom.

<sup>6</sup> From πρῶ and στέρνον, *sternum*, the breast-bone.

<sup>7</sup> Hence χαλκοῦς XXVII.

2. Translate: (a) There was a certain dark-object on the plain at a great distance, which appeared like a cloud coming on with much water. (b) Yea! by Zeus, the bronze spears flashed mightily, and the thigh-pieces and the breast-pieces and the golden front-pieces which the royal horses had. (c) We put on our golden breastplates with great haste. (d) We shall try to show ourselves (= appear) worthy of the freedom which we have acquired, and on account of which so-many men deem us happy. (e) We have advised you to put (= make) this man out-of-the-way quickly, so that we may be able to do good to our friends.

3. (a) The translation, vocabulary, and grammatical principles in Lesson XLVI. (b) The vocabularies of Lessons X. and XX.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two kinds of 2d aorist. 2. Analysis, principal parts, and classification of ἐνέδῃ, ἀναβάς, ἔσχε, ἔστησαν, καθίστατο. 3. Principal parts and classification of ὀπλισμένοι and ἦστραπτε; euphonic changes illustrated in the principal parts of each. 4. Final ᾱ in μάχαιρᾱ, γέφυρᾱ. 5. Comparison of ταχέως, ἡδέως, εὐνοϊκῶς.

## LESSON LIX.

## ANABASIS I. VIII. 9-14.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 9. ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς . . . τοξόται, and [there were upon the left wing] other horsemen and other bowmen, i. e. others, — namely, horsemen, etc., or horsemen and bowmen besides. κατὰ ἔθνη, *tribe by tribe*: cf. κατ' ἔλας XXVII. ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος: in apposition with οὔτοι, distributing οὔτοι into tribes; cf. διαλείπουσι ἕκαστη παρασάγγην LVI. This is called *distributive* apposition. ἐπορεύετο: singular, on account of the nearness of ἔθνος; cf. ἄθλα ἦσαν σπλεγγίδες XXVI. § 10.

§ 10. καλούμενα : cf. XXVI. § 13. ἀπο-τεταμένα : cf. παρετάτο LVI. ὡς διακόπτειν, = ὥστε διακόπτειν. ὄτω, = ὄτινι (ὄστις) : cf. ὅτι ἂν δέη πείσομαι XXXIII ; οἵτινες ἐπιτήδευι XXXVIII. γνώμη, expectation : cf. LV. § 8. - ὡς ἐλόντα καὶ διακόψοντα, that they should drive (fut. of ἐλαύνω) into, etc. : cf. ὡς στρατηγήσοντα ἐμέ κτέ, XXXVII. § 15.

§ 11. ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο, was deceived this, i. e. in this : cognate accusative ; cf. ὅτι ἠδίκησα LIII. ὡς ἀνυστόν, [as far] as possible : cf. ἡ δυνατόν μάλιστα XXXVII. § 15. ἐν ἴσῳ, in even [line].

§ 13. αὐτῷ μέλοι : cf. XLV. § 16. καλῶς ἔχοι : cf. οὕτως ἔχει XXXV. § 9 ; κακῶς ἐχόντων : cf. L. § 16.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Greek says, "hoplites and other horsemen," for "hoplites and others, — namely, horsemen."
2. An appositive distributing the sense of its substantive is said to be in distributive apposition.
3. A verb may be thrown out of agreement with its subject through various causes.
4. ὡς may take the place of ὥστε, with the infinitive.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |               |           |
|--|---------------|-----------|
| 1. Declension of ὄστις . . . . .   | H. 280 and a. | G. 86.    |
| 2. Declension of τέτταρες . . . . .                                      | H. 290.       | G. 77.    |
| 3. Conjugation of πείθω, perfect middle and 1st aorist passive . . . . . | H. 328.       | G. 97, 3. |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀνυστός, practicable, possible.       | 6. βραδύς -εῖα, -ύ, slow ; -έως, slowly.           |
| 2. ὁ ἄξων, -ονος, axle.                  | 7. ὁ γερρο-φόρος, soldier bearing a wicker-shield. |
| 3. ἀπο-σπάω, -άσω, draw off or away.     | 8. δια-κόπτω, -ψω, cut through or in pieces.       |
| 4. ἀπο-τείνω, -ενῶ, stretch off, extend. | 9. ὁ δίφρος, chariot.                              |
| 5. βλέπω, look.                          |  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 10. τὸ δρέπανον, scythe.  | 18. ὁμως, nevertheless.                                     |
| 11. τὸ ἔθνος, <sup>1</sup> tribe, nation.                         | 19. περί-εμι, <sup>4</sup> excel, surpass.                  |
| 12. ἐκατέρωθεν <sup>2</sup> from or on both                       | 20. πλάγιος, oblique ; εἰς πλάγιον, obliquely and outwards. |
| 13. ἡσυχῇ, quietly. [sides.                                       | 21. τὸ πλαίσιον, square, rectangle.                         |
| 14. ἴσος, <sup>3</sup> equal, even.                               | 22. ποδ-ήρης, -ες, reaching the feet.                       |
| 15. κυκλώω, <sup>2</sup> encircle, surround.                      | 23. ἡ σιγή, silence.  |
| 16. λευκο-θώραξ, <sup>2</sup> -άκος, wearing a white breastplate. | 24. τὸ στίφος, <sup>5</sup> -ους, dense mass, crowd.        |
| 17. ξύλινος, <sup>2</sup> wooden.                                 |   |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (a) Καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔτρεχον· λέγουσι δὲ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ παλτὰ ἔβαλον φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. (b) Καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν ἀνὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ τρέχειν δρόμῳ ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεισθαι. (c) Καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλην ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ ληφθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. (d) Ἄλλ' ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἐαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἰππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὅτι ποιήσοι βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ἦδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ. (e) Καὶ ὁ φοινίκιστις δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὁμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρως.

2. Translate : (a) From both sides of the river [there] assembled a crowd of soldiers with wicker shields as noiselessly as practicable, with the expectation of cutting the hostile tribes to pieces. (b) Their shields reached to their feet, and their spears were wooden. (c) If they would look they might see that scythes extend sideways from the axles of the chariots, and that they are equal to those which the Thracians use. (d) It is said that Apollo surpasses all the gods in musical-skill ; when a certain one contended with him he flayed him, and hung up the skin in a cave surrounded with beautiful trees of all sorts.

3. Review carefully the Vocabularies of Lessons X., XX., XXX., and XXXIX. Write out translations of the more difficult words, and be prepared to give any Greek word without hesitation as rapidly as the corresponding English word is given. Do this with great care.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. ethno-logy.

<sup>2</sup> Derivation ?

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. iso-sceles, iso-thermic.

<sup>4</sup> περι- as in περι-γίγνομαι.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. στίβος LII.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Peculiarity in the use of ἄλλος. 2. Different senses of κατά. 3. Formation of perfect and pluperfect forms, active and middle, with some of their peculiarities. 4. Cognate accusative. 5. Result and purpose clauses. 6. Subjunctive of deliberation. 7. Four verbs which are construed with the supplementary participle. 8. Declension of ποδήρεσι, στίφος. 9. Comparison of βραδύς and βραδέως. 10. Classification and parts of βλέπω, κόπτω, τείνω, and ψεύδω. 11. Partitive and distributive apposition. 12. Explanation of the optatives in the Lesson.

## LESSON LX. — REVIEW.

## 1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. VI. 1 — I. VIII. 13.

Read carefully the instructions given in Review Lessons X. and LI.

## 2. VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἄξων.	18. τὸ ἔρμη.	35. ἡ μεσημβρία.
2. ἡ ἄρκτος.	19. ἡ ἔως.	36. ἡ νεφέλη.
3. ὁ αὐτόμολος.	20. ὁ θώραξ.	37. ἡ ὄργυια.
4. τὸ βάθος.	21. τὸ ἵχνος.	38. τὰ παραμηρίδια.
5. ὁ βωμός.	22. ὁ καιρός.	39. τὸ πλαίσιον.
6. τὸ γένος.	23. τὸ καῦμα.	40. ἡ πορεία.
7. ὁ γεροφόρος.	24. τὸ κέρας.	41. τὰ προμετωπίδια.
8. ἡ δείλη.	25. ὁ κίνδυνος.	42. ὁ προσήκων.
9. ἡ δεξιά.	26. ὁ κοινορτός.	43. τὰ προστερνίδια.
10. ἡ διῶρυξ.	27. ἡ κόπρος.	44. ἡ σῆγῃ.
11. ὁ δίφρος.	28. τὸ κράτος.	45. ὁ σκηπτούχος.
12. τὸ δρέπανον.	29. ἡ κρίσις.	46. ἡ σπουδή.
13. ὁ ἐθελοντής.	30. ἡ λόγχη.	47. ὁ στέφανος.
14. τὸ ἔθνος.	31. ὁ μάντις.	48. ὁ στίβος.
15. ἡ ἐλευθερία.	32. ἡ μάχαιρα.	49. τὸ στίφος.
16. ἡ ἐξοπλισία.	33. ἡ μελανία.	50. ὁ συγγενής.
17. ἡ ἐπιστολή.	34. αἱ μέσαι νύκτες.	51. ὁ σύμβουλος.

52. ἡ σχολή.	55. ὁ τάφος.	58. ὁ χαλκός.
53. τὸ τάλαντον.	56. ἡ τάφρος.	59. ὁ χειμών.
54. ὁ τάραχος.	57. τὸ ὑπόμνημα.	60. ὁ χιλός.

## VERBS.

1. ἀληθεύω.	23. εἰσβάλλω.	45. ὀπλίζω.
2. ἀναγιγνώσκω.	24. ἐμπίπλημι.	46. ὀρύττω.
3. ἀνιταράττω.	25. ἐνδύω.	47. παραινέω.
4. ἀνέχω.	26. ἐνεδρεύω.	48. παρακαλέω.
5. ἀπογιγνώσκω.	27. ἐξαγγέλλω.	49. παρακελεύομαι.
6. ἀποσπάω.	28. ἐξάγω.	50. παρατείνω.
7. ἀποτείνω.	29. ἐξοπλίζω.	51. περιέιμι.
8. ἀποφαίνω.	30. ἐπιπίπτω.	52. πλέω.
9. ἀστράπτω.	31. εὐδαιμονίζω.	53. πλήθω.
10. αὐτομολέω.	32. ἠρόμην.	54. προθύομαι.
11. βλέπω.	33. θνήσκω.	55. προκατακαίω.
12. βοάω.	34. ἰδρώω.	56. προσκυνέω.
13. γράφω.	35. κακῶς ποιέω.	57. προσλαμβάνω.
14. διαγγέλλω.	36. κατακαίνω.	58. προσπολεμέω.
15. διακινδυνεύω.	37. καταπηδάω.	59. προστάττω.
16. διακόπτω.	38. κρατέω.	60. προστίθημι.
17. διαλέγομαι.	39. κτάομαι.	61. προφαίνω.
18. διαλείπω.	40. κυκλώω.	62. σατραπεύω.
19. διατάττω.	41. μέλλω.	63. ὑποδέχομαι.
20. διδάσκω.	42. μεταμέλει.	64. ὑστερέω.
21. εἰκάζω.	43. μιμνήσκω.	65. φράζω.
22. εἰσάγω.	44. ὁμολογέω.	66. φυλάττω.

## ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄδικος.	11. ἔτοιμος.	21. πελταστικός.
2. ἀνυστός.	12. εὐτολμος.	22. πλάγιος.
3. ἀπόρρητος.	13. ζηλωτός.	23. πλεθριαίος.
4. ἄτακτος.	14. ἴσος.	24. ποδήρης.
5. βαθύς.	15. καταφανής.	25. σῖταγωγός.
6. βραδύς.	16. λευκοθώραξ.	26. συχνός.
7. δρεπανηφόρος.	17. λευκός.	27. τρίτος.
8. ἐγκρατής.	18. ξύλινος.	28. ὑπήκοος.
9. ἐνδέκατος.	19. ὄρυκτός.	29. χρήσιμος.
10. ἐξακισχίλιοι.	20. πατρώος.	30. ὠφέλιμος.

## ADVERBS.

1. ἄλλως.	10. ἐκατέρωθεν.	19. νῆ.
2. ἄμα.	11. ἐκποδῶν.	20. ὁμως.
3. ἀμαχεί.	12. ἐλληνικῶς.	21. ὀπισθεν.
4. ἄρα.	13. ἦ.	22. ὄσον.
5. αὐτίκα.	14. ἡμελημένως.	23. οὐκοῦν.
6. βαρβαρικῶς.	15. ἡσυχῆ.	24. πλησίον.
7. βραδέως.	16. μεταξύ.	25. πῶποτε.
8. γέ.	17. μέχρι (σδ).	26. πῶς, πῶς.
9. ἐγγύς.	18. μῆν.	27. τάχα.

## CONJUNCTION.

ἤνίκα.

## REPOSITION.

ἀνά.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- Declension** : (a) Short *a* in the 1st declension, H. 139, c. d ; G. 37, N. 2. (b) *ἔως*, H. 159, 161 ; G. 42, 2 and N. 1. (c) *κέρας*, H. 181, 183 ; G. 56, 2. (d) *ὅστις*, H. 280 and a ; G. 86. (e) *τέτταρες*, H. 290 ; G. 77.
- Cardinal Numbers** : H. 288 ; G. 76.
- Comparison of Adverbs** : H. 259 ; G. 75.
- Synopses of** (a) *τιμάω*, H. 337 ; G. 98. (b) *ποιέω*, H. 339 ; G. 98. (c) *φαίνω*, H. 343 ; G. 96, III. (d) *λείπω*, H. 344 ; G. 96, II. (e) *τίθημι*, H. 349 ; G. 123. (f) *δίδωμι*, H. 350 ; G. 123.
- Verb-formation** : (a) Perfect stems, H. 446, 447, 450, 452 ; G. 110, IV. (b), (d). (b) Attic reduplication, H. 368 ; G. 102. (c) Augment of the pluperfect, H. 358 ; G. 101, 4. (d) Future system of liquid verbs, H. 326 ; G. 96, III. (e) Second passive system, H. 322, 438, 471, 472 ; G. 96, pages 108, 109 bottom, 110 top. (f) *πείθω*, perfect middle and 1st aorist passive system, H. 328 ; G. 97, 3. (g) *ἕστην* and *ἕδην*, H. 335 ; G. 123. (h) *μένημαι*, H. 365, b, 465, a, 466, b, 530, 6 ; G. 118, 1, N., 200, N. 6. (i) *κάθημαι*, H. 484 ; G. 127, V. (j) *εἰμί* as enclitic, H. 480, 1, 2 ; G. 28, N. 1 end. (k) Second aorist of the *-μι* form, H. 489, 1, 3, 15, 17 ; G. 125, 3. (l) Principal parts of *ἀκούω*, *ελαύνω*, H. 507, 1, 521, 1 ; G. 330, 338.
- Syntax** : (a) Genitive of *cause*, with verbs of *emotion*, H. 744 ; G. 173, 1. (b) Genitive with compound verbs, H. 751 ; G. 177.

## LESSON LXI.

## ANABASIS I. VIII. 14-18.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 14. οὐ πᾶν πρὸς . . . στρατεύματι, not very near (lit. in front of), etc. ἐκατέρωσε, to either direction : cf. ἐκατέρωθεν, from either direction XLIX. § 13.

§ 15. ὡς συν-αντήσαι, with a view to meet. Note the force of the infinitive. ἐπιστήσας, sc. τὸν ἵππον : cf. XXVIII. ad init.

§ 16. θορύβον ἤκουσε, heard a noise. Why the genitive ? Cf. ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους . . . στόλον XXIII. § 5. καὶ ὅς, and he.

§ 17. ἀλλὰ δέχομαι, [I wondered], but I accept, i. e. welcome [it now]. χώρων : cf. L., end. δι-ειχέτην : 3d person dual impf. Note the ending.

§ 18. πορευομένων : note the omission of the substantive. Cf. LII. ad init. τι and τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον, sc. μέρος XLVIII. § 8. δρόμῳ : manner. Cf. ὄργῃ XLVIII. § 8 ; κύκλῳ XLVII. § 4.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Purpose* is denoted by the infinitive, as well as by ὅπως with the future indicative, or (more usually) ἵνα, or ὡς, with the subjunctive (or optative).

2. ἀκούω is construed with either the genitive or the accusative of the object heard, but with the genitive only of the source from which one hears.

3. The ending *-την* indicates the 3d person dual, past time.

4. The ending *-θεν* denotes motion from ; *-σε*, motion toward.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- Perfect middle and 1st passive systems of vowel and liquid verbs . . . . . H. 328. G. 97, 3, 4.
- Synopsis of *τελέω* . . . . . { H. 340, 423, } G. 109, 2, 110, { 461, 463. } II. 2, N. 1.

3. Synopsis of *στέλλω* . . . . H. 342, 448. G. 109, 4.  
 4. Tenses in other modes than the  
 indicative . . . . . H. 851. G. 202, 1, 2.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ἀντίος</i> , opposite; <i>ἀντίος ἵεναι</i> ,<br>go to meet, go against. | 14. <i>ὁ θόρυβος</i> , noise.  |
| 2. <i>ἀπο-βλέπω</i> , look off or away.                                       | 15. <i>ἱερός</i> , sacred; <i>τὰ ἱερά</i> , sacri-<br>fices.         |
| 3. <i>δύτερος</i> , second.   | 16. <i>κατα-θεάομαι</i> , view, look down<br>upon or watch intently. |
| 4. <i>δέχομαι</i> , receive, accept.  | 17. <i>οἶον</i> , adv., as, just as.                                 |
| 5. <i>δι-έχω</i> , have between, am<br>apart, separated or distant.           | 18. <i>ὀμαλῶς</i> , evenly, in even line.                            |
| 6. <i>τὸ δόρυ</i> , spear-shaft, spear.                                       | 19. <i>παιανίζω</i> , sing a paean or<br>war-song.                   |
| 7. <i>δονπέω</i> , make a din, clash.   | 20. <i>πελάζω</i> , approach, draw near.                             |
| 8. <i>ἐκατέρω-σε</i> , to, or in, in either<br>direction.                     | 21. <i>συν-αντάω</i> , confront, meet.                               |
| 9. <i>ἐκ-κῦμαίνω</i> , bend out (or forth)<br>like a wave.                    | 22. <i>τὸ σύν-θημα</i> , compact; watch-<br>word, password.          |
| 10. <i>ἐλελίζω</i> , raise a war-cry.   | 23. <i>τὸ σφάγιον</i> , sacrificial victim.                          |
| 11. <i>ὁ Ἐνυάλιος</i> , <i>Ενυάλιος</i> , Mars.                               | 24. <i>ὁ σωτήρ</i> , savior.   |
| 12. <i>ὁ Ζεὺς</i> , Zeus.   | 25. <i>φθέγγομαι</i> , sound, shout, cry<br>out, yell.               |
| 13. <i>θείω</i> , run.  |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) *Χρήζει δίκην αὐτῷ ἐπιθεῖναι.* (b) *Ὡς δ' ἐλελίξαντες τῷ Διὶ σωτήρι τε καὶ Ἐνυάλιῳ ἐπαιάνασαν τὸ δεύτερον, ἀντίοι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ὀμαλῶς ἔθεον.* (c) *Ἐδοῦπησεν δὲ τὰ ὄπλα ἡνίκ' ἐκ τοῦ ἄρματος ἐπὶ γῆν ἔπεσεν.* (d) *Ἐπειδὴν προβάλλονται τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ βασιλεὺς παρελάση πρὸ αὐτῶν, ἡμεῖς δὲ φθεγξώμεθα* (e) *Ἀναβᾶς δ' ἐπὶ τὸν πρᾶνῃ γήλοφον καταθεῶ ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τὴν μεσημβρίαν καὶ τὴν ἄρκτον.* (f) *Ἐνθα δὲ δέδοικε μὴ ὀπισθεν αὐτοῦ γενόμενος βασιλεὺς κατακόψη τὸ πελταστικὸν καὶ πρόεισιν ἀντίος· καὶ ἐπιπεσῶν σὺν τοῖς κρατίστοις (καὶ ἦσαν ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι) νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ διώκει τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους καὶ ἀποκτείνει λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ φοινικιστὴν τινα ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.* ( ) *Διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐθήρων.*

2. Translate: (a) I wonder because you have not yet received the letter which your (art.) wife wrote to you. (b) They did not know how great the noise would be when they uncovered (partic.) their shields and made a din with them against their spears. (c) When they neared (gen. abs.) his tent, a certain part of the army bent out like a wave; those therefore (who were) left behind went on a run. (d) Since the sacrifices are favorable, let victory, and death to the king and those with him, be our watchword. (e) Let us send (subjunct) men to capture the heights in advance (*προ-*, prepositional pref.).

3. Learn the verbs of Lesson LI.; write on a slip of paper the English, and then from the English give the Greek, pronouncing both aloud as much as possible.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The adverbial endings *-σε* and *-θεν*. 2. Different ways of expressing purpose. 3. *ἐπιστάς* and *ἐπιστήσας*. 4. Construction with *ἀκούω*. 5. *καὶ ὅς, ὁ δέ*. 6. Personal ending *-την*. 7. *ἀλλά* and *γάρ* in answers. 8. Analysis, parts, and classification of (a) *μένον*, (b) *ἀποβλέπων*, (c) *πελάσας*, (d) *συναντήσαι*, (e) *δέχομαι*, (f) *ἐφθέγγαντο*. 9. Inflection of *προΐει*. 10. Reason for the mode of *συναντήσαι* (15), of *παραγγέλλοι* (15), of *εἶη* (16).

## LESSON LXII.

## ANABASIS I. VIII. 19-24.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 19. *πρὶν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι*: cf. *πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι* XLIV. § 13. Notes. *κατὰ κράτος*, according to their strength, i. e. at full speed: cf. *κατὰ ἔθνη* LIX. § 9. Meaning of *κατὰ γῆν*. Cf. *ἀνὰ κράτος* LVII. § 1. § 20. *κενὰ ἡμύχων*: cf. *ὑμῶν ἔρημος* XXXIV. § 6. *ἔστι ὅστις*, somebody. Cf. *ἦν . . . σταθμῶν οὓς . . . ἤλαυνεν*, he made some of his marches long, lit. there were of his marches [those] which, etc. XLVII. § 7. *ἐκπλαγείς*: for *ἐκ-πλαγ-ε-ντ-ς*.

§ 21. καθ' αὐτούς : cf. κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς Ἀβύδου XV. οὐδ' ὥς, not even THUS. Note, ὥς in this sense is accented. Meaning of καὶ ταῦτα ! Cf. XLIII. ad fin. ἤδει αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔχοι : so Matthew XXV. 24, — I knew thee that thou art a hard man.

§ 22. αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν : cf. πέρᾱν τοῦ Εὐφράτου XLIX. § 10. εἰ χρήζοιεν . . . ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι. Form of conditional statement ! Form in the direct discourse !

§ 23. ἔξω . . . κέρατος : cf. ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν XLI. § 5. On the genitive form, cf. κέρως LIV. § 1.

§ 24. δεισᾱς, fearing : from δέ-δοι-κα LV. § 7, there being no Attic present. On -οι- in the perfect stem, cf. λείπω, λέλοιπα. ἐμβάλων, he charged or fell upon. Cf. ἐμ-βάλλει XXV. § 8, ἐν-έβαλεν XLIX. § 11.

## 2. OBSERVATION.

The verb ἐστί may be so closely construed with the relative pronoun that both may be rendered by the English *some*. In this case, the forms ἐστί and εἰσί take the accent on the penult, — ἔστι, εἴσι.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Synopsis of ῥίπτω . . . . .           | { H. 345, 355, α, } G. 15, 2, 101, |
|  | { 365, 61. } 2.                    |
| 2. Synopsis of πείθω . . . . .           | H. 347. G. page 351.               |
| 3. Modes with verbs of fearing . . . . . | H. 887. G. 218.                    |
| 4. ἔστι οἱ . . . . .                     | H. 998. G. 152, N. 2.              |

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀ-σφαλής, -ές, safe : ἐν ἀσφα-<br>λεί, in a safe place. | 6. ἐξ-ικνέομαι, arrive at, reach.                                    |
| 2. ἐκ-κλίνω, bend out of line ;<br>give way.               | 7. ἐπι κίμπτω, bend in ; draw<br>the wings of an army to-<br>gether. |
| 3. ἐκ-πλήττω, strike out of one's<br>senses, dismay.       | 8. ἡμισυς, -εια, -ν, half.   |
| 4. ἐμ-προσθεν, in front.                                   | 9. ὁ ἥνιοχος, rein-holder, driver.                                   |
| 5. ἐξ-άγω, lead out, astray ; tempt.                       | 10. ὁ ἵππόδρομος, horse-race.  |
|  | 11. ἡ ἰσχὺς, might, strength.  |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 12. κενός, empty.   | 16. τὸ τόξευμα, bow-shot ; arrow.                      |
| 13. ἡ κύκλωσις, encirclement ; εἰς<br>κύκλωσω, in order to en-<br>circle. | 17. τοξεύω, shoot with a bow, strike<br>with an arrow. |
| 14. προ-οράω, see in front.   | 18. τρέπω, turn.                                       |
| 15. συ-σπειράω, coil together.  | 19. ἡ φυγή, flight.                                    |
|   | 20. ὥς, thus.  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (a) Ἦδει δὴ αὐτὸν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ ὄντα. (b) Ἦδειμεν αὐτὸν ὅτι συ πειραμένην ἔχοι Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν τὴν σὺν αὐτῷ. (c) Εἰσῆ-  
κται εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηπὴν τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπούχων. (d) Οὐδ'  
ὥς ἐξεπλάγη ὡς εἶδε αὐτοὺς ἐλαύνοντας τὰ δρεπανηφόρα πρὸς αὐτὸν κενὰ  
ἠνιόχων. (e) Ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὅσον τετταράκοντα στάδια, οἱ  
μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς ὡς πάντα νικῶντες, οἱ δ' ἀρπάζοντες ὡς  
ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες. (f) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσθοντο βασιλέα ὅτι ἐν τοῖς σκευο-  
φόροις εἷη σὺν τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ, βασιλεὺς δ' αὐτὸν ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι  
οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσω οἴχονται διώκοντες,  
ἐνταῦθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ  
Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσᾱς εἰ πέμποιεν τινὰς ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν  
ἐπὶ τὸν σταθμὸν ἀφ' οὗ ὤρμητο.

2. Translate : (a) But after this he never saw him, either  
(i. e. neither) living or (nor) dead (perf. part.). (b) How many  
(i. e. as many as) indeed of those about the king died, Ktesias tells ; for  
he was with (= beside) him : but Cyrus himself died, and eight, the  
best of those about him, fell upon his body (= him). (c) Much use  
is there of good drivers in a horse-race. (d) Before I gave thee thy  
talents, thou knewest (me) that I was a hard man. (e) They were  
filled with consternation as they saw the king's force drawing in its  
wings before them as if to encircle them. (f) He now wants the  
Greeks to follow against the king ; I therefore say that it is necessary  
that you cross the river Euphrates before it is evident what the rest will  
say (= reply) to Cyrus.

3. Review the Noun and Verb lists of Lesson LI.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Use of modes after πρὶν. 2. Uses and senses of κατά. 3. The  
accent ἔστι. 4. ἔστι ὅστις. 5. -οι- in λέλοιπα, δέδοικα. 6. Parts,



classification, and analysis of *ἔτρεψε, ἐπέκαμπεν, συνεσπειραμένην, ἐξήχθη, ἐκπλαγείς*. 7. Synopsis of *ἐκκλίνουσιν*, active voice. 8. Construction of *ἠνιόχων* 20; declension of *ἰσχύς* 22, *κέρατος* 23; conjugation of *ἴδει*, indicative, 21. 9. The phonetic rules illustrated in the synopsis of *ρίπτω* and *πείθω*. 10. What mode to be used after *ἔδεισε* (*he feared*).

## LESSON LXIII.

## ANABASIS I. VIII. 25 to the end.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 25. *εἰς τὸ διώκειν*: cf. *ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν* LXII. § 23. *πλήν . . . κατελείφθησαν*, except that . . . were left. *πλήν*, conj., as in LXII. § 20, and XXIX. *ad fin.*

§ 26. *ἠν-έ-σχετο*, he did not endure, control himself. Cf. *ἀν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε*, § 4. Note, in *ἠνέσχετο* both the temporal and the syllabic augment. *ἔτετο*, he threw himself. Cf. *ἔεντο κτέ* XLVIII. § 8.

§ 27. *καὶ . . . μαχόμενοι κτέ*, and as the king . . . fought, *Ktesias* says how many of those about the king perished. *βασιλεύς* is nominative, but has no verb, for Xenophon changes the construction of his sentence at *ὅποσοι*.

§ 28. *πεπτωκότα*: cf. *ἐκπεπτωκότας* XIII. On the construction, cf. *Ταμῶν . . . ἔχοντα* XXIX. § 21. *περι-πεσεῖν* (aor.): cf. *ἐπι-πεσεῖσθαι* LVII. *ad fin.*

§ 29. *ἐπι-σφάξαι*: theme *σφαγ* (cf. *σφάγια* LXI. § 15), pres. *σφάττω*; so theme *πρᾶγ*, pres. *πράττω*. *εἶχε, ἐφόρει, ἐτετίμητο*, i. e. Ἄρταπάτης.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The idea of *purpose* is expressed in many different ways.
2. *πίπτω* (*πετ*) assumes the theme *πτω* in the perfect.
3. Many verb themes in *-γ* have the present stem in *-ττ*.
4. *ἀν-έχομαι*, *endure*, has two augments, — one before and one after the preposition.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of *ἀλλάττω*. H. 346. { G. 97, 4, and N. 2 end; page 331.
2. Synopsis of *δείκνυμι*. H. 352. G. 123.
3. Conditional sentences { H. 893-895, { G. 220 (a), 1, 2; (b), 1, 2; 898, 900. { 221-225.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ἀκοντίζω, hurl (hit with) the spear.                                      | 11. κατα-λείπω, leave behind.        |
| 2. βίαιος, powerful; adv. -ως, powerfully, violently.                        | 12. κείμαι, lie, lie fallen.         |
| 3. δια σπείρω, scatter seed broadcast; pass. (of an army), become separated. | 13. ὁ ὄμο-τράπεζος, table-companion. |
| 4. ἐκάτερος, each (of two).  | 14. ὁ ὀφθαλμός, eye.                 |
| 5. ἐπι-σφάττω, slay upon or over.  | 15. παίω, strike.                    |
| 6. ἡ εὐνοία, good will, devotion.  | 16. περι-πίπτω, fall (round) upon.   |
| 7. ὁ θεράπων, attendant, servant.  | 17. πίπτω, fall.                     |
| 8. ἰάομαι, dress or heal (a wound).  | 18. ἡ πιστότης, faithfulness.        |
| 9. ὁ ἰατρός, physician.  | 19. σπάω, draw.                      |
| 10. καθ' ὁράω, behold over in the distance.                                  | 20. τὸ στέρνον, breast.              |
|  | 21. σχεδόν, almost, almost only.     |
|  | 22. τιτρώσκω, wound.                 |
|  | 23. τὸ τραῦμα, a wound.              |
|  | 24. ἡ τροπή, a turning, rout.        |
|  | 25. φορέω, continually wear.         |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) *Θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες ἐπίστανται ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.* (b) *Τὸ δὲ ἡμισυ τῆς βασιλέως ἰσχύος ἐκπλαγὲν ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς ἵπποδρόμοις ἐξεκλίθη τῆς τάξεως καὶ ἐτρέφθη εἰς φυγὴν πρὶν τοξεύματα ἐξικνεῖσθαι.* (c) *Οὐδ' ὡς ἐξάγεται ἐπικάμψαι εἰς κύκλωσιν.* (d) Ἄγαμαι δὴ τοὺς ἐμοὺς θεράποντας διὰ τὴν εὐνοίαν καὶ πιστότητα, ἣν ἐπέδειξαν· εἰ ἀσθενοῖεν, μέλοι ἂν μοι αὐτοὺς ἰᾶσθαι. (e) Ἐνθα δὴ πολὺς θόρυβος ἐγένετο καὶ ταραχος· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ὅτι ἀτάκτοις σφίσι ἐπιπίπτοιεν ἂν, εἰ μὴ τοὺς θώρακας ἐνδύντες καθίσταντο εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστος.

2. Translate: (a) He drew the dagger which he continually wore in his girdle, and struck the physician violently beneath the left eye. (b) I had thought that it was almost afternoon when the rout occurred. (c) Since the wound was upon the whole (a) large (one), he fell from his horse, and many of his most faithful table-companions fell over him. (d) Many of the servants of each lay by the side of the river where they had been slain over the body of the dead Cyrus. (e) I shall try to heal this wound as quickly as possible, in order that we may have leisure to put our enemies out of the way.

3. Review carefully the Nouns, Verbs, and Adjectives of Lesson LI. Select the more difficult ones for special study.

### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, classification, and analysis of (a) διασπείρονται, (b) κατελείφθησαν, (c) ἠνέσχετο, (d) τιτρώσκει, (e) ἐπισφάξαι, (f) καθορᾶ. 2. Ways of expressing purpose. 3. Uses of πλὴν. 4. Present system of ἴημι; principal parts. 5. Declension of στίφος, τραῦμα, τὶς, πιστότης. 6. Inflection of ἐτετίμητο. 7. Euphonic principles illustrated in the synopsis of ἀλλάττω. 8. General conditions; past conditions. 9. Themes ending in -γ; present stem.

## LESSON LXIV.

### ANABASIS I. IX. 1-5.

#### 1. NOTES.

§ 1. παρὰ πάντων: nearly equivalent to ὑπὸ πάντων. What is the difference? Κύρου . . . ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι, to have been acquainted with Cyrus.

§ 2. ἔτι παῖς ᾧν, while yet a boy. πάντα, in all respects. On the construction, cf. τὸ εὖρος XLIII. § 9.

§ 3. καταμάθοι ᾧν τις: why the optative? cf. ἀκνοίην ᾧν XXXVII.

ιδεῖν ἔστι: cf. οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν XLVI. § 2, ἔστι λαμβάνειν XLVI. § 3. Note, that ἔστι becomes paroxytone (ἔστι) when the verb denotes possibility; as also when it denotes existence: cf. ἔστι δ' ὄστις LXII. § 20.

§ 4. εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες, at once, while children; in their very childhood.

§ 5. τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις . . . πείθεσθαι, and to obey his elders more even than those did who were inferior to him. ἑαυτοῦ, construed after ὑποδεεστέρων; on the case of each, cf. προτέρᾳ Κύρου XXXI. § 25.

φιλιππότατος, sc. ἐδόκει εἶναι. ἔργων (explained by τοξικῆς and ἀκοντίσεως) is construed after the two following adjectives.

### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. παρὰ with the genitive may denote agency, but not commonly.
2. English: "I am acquainted with Cyrus;" Greek: "I become in (= come into) a trial or experience of Cyrus."
3. ἔστι in certain positions or with certain meanings becomes ἔστι.

### 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of θηράω . . . H. 338.
2. Synopsis of δηλώω . . . H. 341. G. 98.
3. Synopsis of κομίζω . . . H. 348, 425. G. 110, II. 2 (c).
4. Conditional relative clauses H. 912-918. G. 233.

### 4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἰδήμων, -ονος, modest.
2. αἰσχρός, shameful, disgraceful.
3. ἡ ἀκόντισις, throwing the javelin.
4. βασιλικός, kingly, royal.
5. τὸ ἔργον, work, deed.
6. ὁ ἡλικιώτης, an equal in age, companion, comrade.
7. κατα-μαθάνω, learn thoroughly.
8. μαθάνω, learn.
9. μελετηρός, studious in practising.
10. παιδεύω educate.
11. ἡ πείρα, trial, experience, acquaintance.
12. ἡ σωφροσύνη, prudence, temperance; self-control.
13. ἡ τοξική, archery.
14. ὑποδεέστερος, wanting somewhat, inferior.
15. φιλιππος, fond of horses.
16. φιλομαθής, -ές, fond of learning.

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἐν συχνῇ δὲ πείρᾳ τῶν Κύρου ἡλικιωτῶν ἦσαν, καὶ ἐνόμισαν αὐτὸν πάντα πάντων αἰδημονέστατον εἶναι. (b) Ἐτι παῖδες ὄντες, ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύθησαν, πολλὴν ἀρετὴν τε καὶ σωφροσύνην κατέμαθον. (c) Εὐθύς παῖς ὢν ἐθεάτο τοὺς φιλίππους καὶ τοὺς τῶν εἰς τὸν ἵππόδρομον ἔργων φιλομαθεῖς καὶ μελετηροὺς. (d) Ὅτε δὲ αὐτῷ ὥρᾳ ἐγένετο, ἐθήρευε ἀφ' ἵππου καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία ἐφάνη ὡς κινδύνον φιλῶν. Καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐφ' αὐτὸν ἰούσαν οὐκ ἐφοβείτο, ἀλλὰ συμ-πεσὼν αὐτῇ ἐσπίασθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου· αὐτὴν δὲ κατέκτανεν.

2. Translate: (a) Yea, by Zeus, I know that if they should become enemies to each-other, many would go-away from the king to those even [who are] inferior to him. (b) It is a good [thing] to be fond of javelin-throwing and of archery, and, on the whole, of all things [which pertain] to war. (c) It is indeed most disgraceful that he is inferior to his attendants in faithfulness. (d) We all fear that he will die, if he has been wounded severely beneath the eye.

3. Review carefully the Vocabulary of Lesson LI.; note the more difficult words and go over them repeatedly. Review numbers 454-500 in the List of first occurrences.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, theme, and classification of *μανθάνω*. 2. Comparison of *αἰδήμων*, *φιλομαθής*, *ἄξιος*, *κράτιστος*. 3. The genitives in § 1. 4. The genitives in § 5. 5. The Attic future. 6. Kinds of conditional relative clauses. 7. *ἔστι* (paroxytone). 8. General conditions. 9. General conditions, indirect discourse. 10. Illustrations of general conditions, direct and indirect discourse. 11. Familiar words suggested by words in the "Vocabulary." 12. Different methods of comparing adjectives. 13. Formation and comparison of adverbs. 14. The adverbial endings *-σε* and *-θεν*.

## LESSON LXV.

## ANABASIS I. IX. 6-10.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 6. *ἐπεὶ δέ*: correlative with *πρῶτον μὲν* § 2. καὶ . . . μέντοι, and *withal* or *moreover*. τέλος δέ, but *finally*; note, this takes the place of τὰ δέ, correlative with τὰ μὲν; on the construction of τέλος, cf. τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII., τόνδε τὸν τρόπον XV.

πολλοῖς: cf. τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτῶν LIV. § 4.

§ 7. καθ-ἕκει, comes as a duty; but cf. καθ-ἕκοντα XL. ad fin.

ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι . . . ποιοῖτο: cf. ἤδει αὐτὸν . . . ὅτι ἔχοι LXII.

§ 21. ὅτι . . . ποιοῖτο, that he made it of the most importance. Explain the optative. Note the sense of *περὶ πλείστου*.

εἴ τῷ σπείσαιτο: cf. εἴ καλῶς καταπράξειεν XXII. NN. τῷ, encl., = τινί, *alicui*, dative of association.

§ 8. μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν: cf. ἂν εἶναι τίμιος XXXIV. 6, NN.; παρὰ, *contrary to*.

§ 9. προ-έ-σθαι, from προ-ίημι: cf. ἀφ-ἕναι XXXVIII. 19, ἕεντο XLVIII. 8, ἕησι XLIX. 12.

§ 10. ἔλεγεν ὅτι, direct discourse, "I would never abandon them, when (= if) I once (= surely) became their friend." This would be expressed by ἂν with the optative in the main clause, with the imperfect indicative in the subordinate clause.

μείους: cf. πλείους XXXIV. § 7. κάκιον πράξειαν: κ. πρᾶττω = fare badly; cf. XXII. ad init.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. τὰ μὲν is not necessarily followed by so strict a correlative as τὰ δέ.

2. The subject of a subordinate clause, instead of appearing as such, may be made the object of the main clause of a sentence.

3. The infinitive takes ἂν when it stands in the place of a finite verb which would have taken it.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Syllabic augment before vowel initial H. 359. G. 104.
2. Vowel of the subjunctive . . . . H. 373. G. 114.
3. Mode suffix of the optative . . . . H. 374. G. 115.
4. Accent in the optative of -μι verbs . H. 388. G. 220, n. 1.
5. Vowel changes in the 2d perfect . . H. 451. { G. 110, IV. (d);  
109, 3.
6. Infinitive with ᾶν . . . . . H. 964. G. 211.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ἅπαξ, once, once for all.  | 12. ἡ σπονδή, libation; plural, treaty.          |
| 2. βοηθέω, assist.  | 13. συμ-πίπτω, fall together with, grapple with. |
| 3. ἐπι-φέρω, bear upon; mid., rush upon.  | 14. συν-τίθημι, put together; mid., agree.       |
| 4. ἡ ἡλικία age, time of life.  | 15. τὸ τέλος, end.                               |
| 5. κατα-πέμπω, send down (to the sea-coast).  | 16. τοι-γαρ-οὖν, and so then, therefore.         |
| 6. κατα-σπάω, draw down.  | 17. τρέω, tremble, shrink from in fear.          |
| 7. μακαριστός deemed happy, blessed.  | 18. φιλό-θηρος, fond of the hunt or chase.       |
| 8. μείων, less in number, fewer.  | 19. φιλο-κίνδυνος, fond of danger.               |
| 9. πρέπει, it becomes or befits.  | 20. ἡ ὤτειλή, scar.                              |
| 10. προ-ίημι, give up, abandon, surrender.  |  |
| 11. σπένδω, pour a libation; mid., pour a libation with another, i. e. make a treaty. |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Καὶ οὗτοι ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφύρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιτο ἢ ἀπ-ίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. (b) Ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δείλην ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. (c) Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος. (1) Τοιγαροῦν οὐ πρέπει εἶναι οὕτω φιλόθηροί τε καὶ φιλοκίνδυνοι ὥστε πολλὰ πάσχειν ὧν τὰς ὤτειλᾶς φοροῦμεν διὰ τοῦ βίου. (e) Οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιτο ἔτι δὲ κάκῳ πράξειαν, οὐκ ἂν ποτε προσιμῶν, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐμοῦ φίλοι ἐγένοντο.

2. Translate: (a) When it befitted his time of life, Cyrus was educated with the other boys at the king's gates. (b) If anybody was ever an enemy to me, he trusted that, when I made an agreement or a treaty with him, he would suffer nothing contrary to the agreement (Lesson LXI.) or to the treaty. (c) When he was drawn from his horse, he showed how fond of danger and of hunting he was; for grappling with the bear, he, to be sure, suffered somewhat, so that he always bore the scars, but he at length killed her with his dagger. (d) If the enemy ever caused trouble to his country, Cyrus used to be sent down against them by the king.

3. In the List of *first occurrences* review words numbered 500-609.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, theme, and classification of σπείσαιο, συνθοίτο, εἶλοντο, συμπεσών, προέσθαι. 2. (a) Analysis of each of the preceding forms; (b) synopsis of each in the tense and voice in which it appears. 3. The form μείους; its comparison. 4. Past general conditions. 5. The topics included in the Grammar Lesson. 6. A synopsis of ἴημι, present system.

## LESSON LXVI.

## ANABASIS I. IX. 11-16.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 11. φανερός δ' ἦν . . . πειρώμενος: cf. ἐπιβουλεύων φανερός γέγονας LIII. § 8.

ἀγαθὸν . . . ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, do him good or, etc.; observe the two accusatives. νικᾶν, i. e. excel, surpass. ἔστω νικῶν, until he should surpass; direct discourse, "until I excel," ἔστω ἂν νικῶ: cf. εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν XXII. εὖ . . . κακῶς ποιῶντας: cf. κακῶς ποιῶ XLII.

§ 8. ἀλεξόμενος, by giving them like for like; cf. however ἀλέξασθαι XXXIV. § 6.

§ 12. πλείστοι δὴ, the very greatest number. αὐτῶ . . . ἡμῶν, to him, the one man of the men of our times. Note the contrast indicated by πλείστοι . . . ἐνί. Note also the force of ἐπί.

§ 13. ὡς: cf. XXXIII. § 5. εἶα: cf. XLIII. ad init. ἀφειδέστατα, superlative of the adverb; strictly a neuter plural, cognate accusative: cf. ἄριστα § 5. ἦν: cf. οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν XLVI. § 2.

§ 14. εἰς πόλεμον: cf. εἰς τὴν τροφήν XVI. εἰρά: imperfect of ὀράω. Note the syllabic and temporal augment. ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρᾱς, of what country, etc., i. e. of the country, which, etc. Note the appearance of the antecedent in the relative clause.

§ 15. ὥστε κτέ, so that the good appeared, . . . and the bad were deemed, etc.

§ 16. εἰς δικαιοσύνην . . . ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, to distinguish himself in the matter of (lit. unto) justice. ἀδίκου: neuter used as substantive; cf. ἄδικος LIII. § 8.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. φανερός εἶμι, like φαίω, may be followed by a supplementary participle.

2. Conditional or relative clauses, having ἄν and the subjunctive, may in the indirect discourse omit ἄν and change the verb to the optative.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Future perfect stem . . . .	H. 466.	G. 110, IV. (c).
2. Theme modified in 1st aorist passive . . . . .	H. 469-70.	G. 110, VI.
3. Conjugation of ἔημι . . . .	H. 476.	G. 127, III.
4. Conjugation of κείμαι . . . .	H. 482.	G. 127, VI.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀδεῶς, fearlessly.	5. ἡ δικαιοσύνη, justice.
2. ἀφειδῆς, unsparing; -ῶς, adv., unsparingly.	6. ὁ δούλος, slave.
3. ἡ ἀφθονία, abundance.	7. ἐκ-φέρω, bring forth; report.
4. διαφερόντως (differently), exceedingly, especially.	8. ἐπι-θύμειω, set the heart upon, desire.
	9. ἕως, until.

10. ἡ εὐχή, prayer, vow.	16. προ-χωρέω, advance; aid.
11. ὁ κακούργος, evil-doer.	17. στείβω, tread.
12. κατα-γελάω, laugh at, deride.	18. στέρομαι, mid. and pass. of στερέω.
13. κατα-στρέφω, overturn, subdue.	19. τὸ σῶμα, body.
14. ὅποι, whither.	20. φιλο-κερδέω, fond of gain.
15. πλούσιος, rich.	

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον ἄλλος παραγεγόμενος εἶπεν ὅτι ἦστινος πράξεως Κῦρος ἐπιθυμοῖτο, οἱ δούλοι ἠθέλον πάντες πάντα ἀ ἐκέκτηντο προέσθαι εἰς ὅτι αὐτοῖς χρῆσθαι βούλοιο. (b) Ἐπιμωρούμην μεθ' ἡμῶν τοὺς βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἑλλήνας. (c) Εἰς γε μὴν σωφροσύνην εἰάν τινες αὐτῶ φανεροὶ γένωνται ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενοι περὶ πλείστον ποιεῖται τούτους ζηλωτοτάτους ποιεῖν τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν. (d) Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐ φαίνοιο Κῦρος οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οἰδεῖς παρή· οὐ γὰρ ἤδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθηκότα, ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι ἐληλακεῖν εἰς τὸ πρόσω.

2. Translate: (a) Whenever evil-doers and unjust people used to laugh at him, he did not suffer it, but he made them the slaves of others. (b) They were so fond of danger that their bodies bore the scars of many battles. (c) Take whatever you think will aid you for your journey, and proceed without fear through Cyrus's kingdom. (d) There is indeed an abundance of men who will be willing to surrender all they have to Cyrus, wherever any one thinks he will perceive it.

3. Review with care the list of nouns in Lesson LX., and in the List of first occurrences the words numbered 610-660.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. κακὸν ποιῶ αὐτόν. 2. (a) The optatives in the lesson, (b) the supplementary participles. 3. Comparison of the adverb. 4. ἐφ' ἡμῶν. 5. Parts, classification, analysis, and synopsis of (a) στείβομένᾱς, (b) κατεστρέφετο. (c) στερομένων. (d) καταγελάω, (e) εἶα. 6. Construction of ποδῶν (13), αὐτῶ (14, 16), φιλοκερδούντων (16). 7. The forms ὁμολόγητο διαφερόντως, εἰρά, εὐδαιμονεστάτους. 8. The antecedent in the relative clause. 9. ἀγαθὸν ποιῶ as a transitive construction. 10. Comparison of the adverb.

## LESSON LXVII.

## ANABASIS I. IX. 17-19.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 17. ἄλλα τε . . . ἐχρήσατο, whilst a great many things were done for him with justice, he always had an army well worth the name; cf. τὰ τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε . . . καὶ κτέ XXXII. § 3.

κατὰ μῆνα : cf. τοῦ μηνός XXXVIII. ad fin.

18. αὐτῷ . . . ὑπηρετήσκειν : cf. Κύρω . . . ὑπάρχειν § 17; ὑπῆρχε Κύρω IX. ἐλέχθησαν, from λέγω

§ 19. οὐδένα . . . ἀφείλετο : cf. ἀφαιρείσθαι . . . Ἑλληνας . . . γῆν XXXIII. 4.

Κύρον ἔκρυπτεν, *Cyrum celabat, used to conceal from Cyrus.*

## 2. OBSERVATION.

κρύπτω is construed with the accusative of the person from whom a thing is hidden, as well as with the accusative of the thing concealed.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. ἔστι . . . . . H. 480. G. 28, 3, N. 1 end.
2. Principal parts of πλέω, γιγνώσκω, ὑπάρχω, προστάττω, ὑπηρετέω, εἶω, λέγω, γίγνομαι, ὀράω, ἀφαιρέω.
3. Agreement of the verb with two or more subjects . . . H. 606, 607. G. 135.
4. Verbs of plenty and want . . . H. 743. G. 172.
5. Verbs of separation . . . . H. 748. G. 174.
6. Genitive of time . . . . . H. 759. G. 179.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. αἰεί, always.                         | 11. κερδαλέως, gainful.                  |
| 2. ἀληθινός, true, worthy the name.      | 12. τὸ κέρδος, gain, profit.             |
| 3. ἀπο-κρύπτω, hide away, conceal.       | 13. ὁ οἰκονόμος, house-steward; manager. |
| 4. ἀχάρστος, thankless, unthanked.       | 14. πέπαμαι, have gained, possess,       |
| 5. δεινός, terrible; clever.             | 15. πλουτέω, am wealthy.                 |
| 6. δια-χειρίζω, have in hand, manage.    | 16. ἡ προθυμίᾳ, zeal.                    |
| 7. δικαίως, justly.                      | 17. προσ-δίδωμι, give in addition, add.  |
| 8. ἡκιστα, minime, least of all.         | 18. ἡ πρόσοδος, approach, revenue.       |
| 9. θαρραλέως, boldly.                    | 19. ὑπηρετέω, render service, serve.     |
| 10. κατασκευάζω, prepare fully, improve. | 20. ὁ ὑπηρετής, servant, assistant.      |
|  | 21. φανερώς, evidently.                  |
|  | 22. φθονέω, begrudge, envy.              |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ὑστερον δέ, ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι κερδαλέωτερον ἔσται βασιλεῖ ὑπηρετεῖν, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίᾳν καὶ ἔλεξεν τοιάδε. (b) Καὶ μὴν εἰπόν τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνούτο τότε διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος. (c) Εἶτα δ' ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ οἷς προσετάχθη. (d) Ἐὰν αὐτῷ πεισθῶμεν, οὔτε πονήσαντες οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμησόμεθα οἰκονόμων. (e) Καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείεστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι ἄλευρον ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς σίτου καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο ἵνα, εἴ ποτε ἰσχυρῶς τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι λιμός, διαδοίῃ τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσμιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἀμάξαι.

2. Translate: (a) If we heard that any servant or steward was evidently improving the country which he was governing, we would never allow his zeal to be unrewarded, but we used always to give him more. (b) We therefore worked most gladly and acquired many things boldly, and whatever we possessed we never hid from the king. (c) Not only do they manage many things for us with-justice, but they show that they are soldiers and stewards worthy the name. (d) Let us not seem to begrudge those who become wealthy openly.

3. Make a careful review of the Vocabulary of Lesson LX.; select the harder words and make a special study of them. Continue in the List of *first occurrences* as far as No. 780.

#### 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Peculiar use of *ἄλλα* § 17. 2. *κατὰ μῆνα; τοῦ μηνός.* 3. Various verbs meaning *to aid*; case-construction with each. 4. Verbs construed with two accusatives. 5. Classification of the ten verbs of the Grammar Lesson. 6. *ἴστω.* 7. Verbs construed with the genitive. 8. Familiar words suggested by the new words of the Vocabulary. 9. Analysis of the conditional sentences in the Text. 10. Case construction after *χράομαι, φθονέω.* 11. Analysis of *δράῳ, ἐπόνουν, ἐκτόντο* (§ 19).

### LESSON LXVIII.

#### ANABASIS I. IX. 20-24.

##### 1. NOTES.

§ 20. *ὅτι τυγχάνοι, in whatever he might happen, etc., i. e. if he happened to . . . anything.* *πρὸς πάντων: cf. πρὸς θεῶν* LII. § 6. *ὁμολογείται . . . θεραπεύειν.* Note, instead of the imperfect indicative *ἦν* (or *ἐγένετο*) *ὁμολογουμένως* (*he was confessedly the best man, etc.*), in the conclusion of this past general condition an equivalent form is used: *it is acknowledged by all that he was; lit. he is acknowledged, etc.*

§ 21. *αὐτὸ τοῦτο, κτέ, that very thing, on account of which he, . . . (namely) that he might have, . . . he himself sought, etc., i. e. he himself [did] seeking, etc.* Observe, *αὐτὸ τοῦτο* has no strict construction. Give a previous instance of this same peculiarity. Cf. Lesson LXIII.

§ 22. *εἰς γε ὧν ἀνὴρ, κτέ. for one man, he used for many reasons to receive, etc.; cf. ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ* LXVI. 12 and note. *μάλιστα πάντων, most of all, i. e. rather than do anything else with them.*

§ 23. "With regard to gifts to be worn, his body could not wear them all; a man's best ornaments were his friends."

§ 24. "That he greatly excelled in kindnesses is easily explained; that he excelled in attentiveness and a love to please others was remarkable."

#### 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Frequently the conclusion of a general supposition does not have its verb in the mode and tense required by a strict rule; instead of "*he was confessedly, or he was, as all knew,*" the form "*he is confessed (or known) to have been,*" may be used.

2. Sometimes the construction of a sentence is such that its latter part seems to have no strict grammatical connection with the first part.

#### 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- Principal parts and classification of *κρίνω, τυγχάνω, οἴομαι, αἰσθάνομαι, λαμβάνω, σκοπέω, πέμπω.*
- Dative of *advantage* . . . . H. 767. G. 184, 1, 2, 3.
- Dative of *interest* in looser relations . . . . H. 771. G. 184, 3 n. 1.
- Dative with *ἄμα* . . . . H. 772 and c. G. 186, ex.
- Dative of *accompaniment* in military expressions . . . H. 774 and a. G. 188, 5 and n.
- Dative of *time* . . . . H. 782. G. 189.

#### 4. VOCABULARY.

- ἀγαστός, to be admired, admirable.*
- δια δίδωμι, give to different ones, distribute.*
- ἡ ἐπιμέλεια, care, attentiveness.*
- εὖνοος* (contr. from *εὐνοος*), *well-minded, well-disposed.*
- θαυμαστός, wonderful.*
- θεραπεύω, serve, attend.*
- ὁ καλλωπισμός, personal adornment.*
- κατ-εργάζομαι, work out, accomplish.*
- κοσμέω, set in order, adorn.*
- πρρ-θῦμέομαι, am zealous, eager.*
- σκοπέω, look at, observe.*
- ὁ συνεργός, fellow-worker.*
- χαρίζομαι, gratify, oblige.*

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποκόπτεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ δεξιὰ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων ἐπιπίπτει τῷ Κύρου στρατεύματι· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀρταίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου (castr) εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν οὐ ὤρμητο· τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. (b) Καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλείστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γῆ ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐπεθύμησαν συνεργοὶ εἶναι καὶ θεραπεύειν, ὅτι τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι. (c) Ὅπου δ' οὐ πολὺς εἶη χιλός, αὐτὸς δ' ἐδύνατο παρασκευάζεσθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαδιδούς ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλὸν τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσι ἵπποις.

2. Translate: (a) For one man, he did most to make men love him and help (in) whatever he might chance to desire to accomplish. (b) Whomsoever he sees willing to incur dangers and knows to be well disposed, him he makes it of the highest importance to gratify in many things. (c) Now the flesh of these wild animals was sweet. (d) Whenever we used to hear of men who wore many personal adornments, we used to think that our best ornaments were our (the) good and faithful and zealous friends of whom we had many.

3. Review the Vocabularies of Lessons X., XX., XXX., and XXXIX.; make a search for the more difficult words the chief study.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional relative sentences. 2. πρὸς with the genitive. 3. Irregularities in the form of the verb in conclusions of conditional sentences. 4. εἰς γῆ ὧν ἀνήρ. 5. Analysis of the conditional sentences in the Lesson. 6. Declension of εὐνοῦς (20), ὅτου (21), and σῶμα (23). 7. Analysis of κοσμηθῆναι (23), διεδίδου (22), κρίνεις (20). 8. The optatives in the Lesson. 9. Familiar words suggested by the new words in the Vocabulary.

## LESSON LXIX.

## ANABASIS I. IX. 25-31.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 25. οὕτω . . . ἐπιτύχοι, not yet of (i. e. for) a long time, etc.; τοῦτου, i. e. the wine sent by Cyrus; οἶνω, cf. σφίσιον LVII. ad fin.

σοί, H. 261; G. 79.

§ 26. τούτοις ἦσθη; cf. XXVIII. 18.

§ 28. μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, were likely to see (indefinite frequency); cf. the meaning of ἔμελλε LVII. 1; ὄψεσθαι, classed as future of ὄραω, though from a different theme; cf. (a) αἰρέω, εἶλον, (b) φημί, εἶπον, εἶρηκα.

§ 29. καὶ τότε (sc. ἐστίν), the following fact also is, etc. καὶ οὗτος . . . ἡ ἑαυτῷ, and he found that he, whom he supposed faithful to himself, was a better friend, etc.; cf. δοθῆναι οἱ XIV.; φίλτερον, the usual comparative of φίλος. καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι: in apposition with πολλοί. ἂν τυγχάνειν: cf. ἂν τίμιος εἶναι XXXIV.; the condition is in ὄντες ἀγαθοί (= εἰ ἀγαθοὶ εἴησαν). Note the genitive construed with τυγχάνειν.

§ 30. τεκμήριον . . . ὅτι καὶ αὐτός, indication of the fact that he was both himself, etc.; the τεκμήριον which Xenophon has in mind is in § 31, hence γάρ at the beginning of it.

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The time within which an act occurs may be expressed by the genitive case.

2. Several important verbs show a change of theme in their principal parts.

3. μέλλω (I am likely or about to), implying futurity, may itself be construed with a future infinitive.



## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The principal parts of *δέω* (*want*),  
*ἤδομαι, βούλομαι, δύναμαι, ἔχω,*  
*ἄγω, ἐμ-βάλλω, προσ καλέω, ἀκούω,*  
*εὐρίσκω.*
2. Perfect with present meaning . . . H. 849. G. 200, N. 6.
3. Tenses of the optative and infinitive  
in the indirect discourse . . . H. 852. G. 203.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ἀγαπάω, <i>love.</i>                          | 14. ἡμι-δεής, <i>half-wanting or empty; half-full.</i> |
| 2. ὁ ἄρτος, <i>bread.</i>                        | 15. τὸ ἡμισυ, <i>neut. of the adj., half.</i>          |
| 3. βέβαιος, <i>firm.</i>                         | 16. ὀρθῶς, <i>rightly.</i>                             |
| 4. ὁ βίκος, <i>pitcher.</i>                      | 17. πεινάω, <i>am hungry.</i>                          |
| 5. γεύω, <i>give a taste; mid., taste.</i>       | 18. προσ-καλέω, <i>call unto myself, summon.</i>       |
| 6. δηλόω, <i>reveal, make evident.</i>           | 19. σπάνιος, <i>scarce, rare.</i>                      |
| 7. δια-πέμπω, <i>send around, distribute.</i>    | 20. σπουδαιολογέομαι, <i>talk earnestly.</i>           |
| 8. ὁ δούλος, <i>slave.</i>                       | 21. ὁ συν τράπεζος, <i>mess-mate, table-companion.</i> |
| 9. ἐκ-πίνω, <i>drink up.</i>                     | 22. τὸ τεκμήριον, <i>sign, indication.</i>             |
| 10. ἐπι-λέγω, <i>say with reference thereto.</i> | 23. τήμερον, <i>to-day.</i>                            |
| 11. ἐπι-τυγχάνω, <i>happen upon.</i>             | 24. ἡ τιμή, <i>honor.</i>                              |
| 12. ἐπι χειρέω, <i>take in hand, attempt.</i>    | 25. ὁ χήν, <i>goose.</i>                               |
| 13. ἡμί-βρωτος, <i>half-eaten.</i>               |  |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ φοινικιστῆς ἀνὴρ ὄν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν μέγαν γενομένων τιμιώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος· τοῦτο παρὰ πάντων ὡμολόγηται τῶν αὐτοῦ δοκούντων ἐν πειρᾷ τε καὶ φιλιᾷ γενέσθαι (b) Ἐνθα δὴ εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες ἔμαθον αἰδήμονες εἶναι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ὑποδεεστέρους. (c) Ἐπιδεικνύσι αὐτὸν ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖται,

ἐάν τῳ σπείσῃται καὶ ἐάν τῳ συνθῆται, μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. (ii) Καὶ εἴ τις ἡμῖν ἐχθρὸς ἐγενετο, σπειραμένων ἡμῶν ἐπίστευε πάντα καλῶς ἂν ἔχειν. (c) Συνιδεῖν δ' ἔστι τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ὁ Κῦρος ὡς δυνάμενος κρινεῖν ὀρθῶς τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ βεβαίους.

2. Translate: (a) Whenever I receive pitchers of sweeter wine, I shall send all to you, but not for a long time have I received wine sweeter than this. (b) They are confessed by all to be zealous co-workers for all whom they know to be well-disposed and faithful. (c) That also which happened to him about full market is a great indication that he always had his army drawn up for battle; for when a horseman appeared riding at full speed and announced that the enemy were coming, the soldiers immediately stood under arms and waited until Cyrus should order them what they should do.

3. A careful study of the Vocabulary of Lesson LI. and LX.; review in the List of *first occurrences* from No. 781 to 865.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. How to express *time*. 2. Tenses of the indicative, optative, infinitive, participle. 3. The optatives in the Lesson. 4. Declension of ἡμιδεής (25) ὑπηρέτης, πεινῶντες (27). 5. Inflection of τιμή (28), ἀπήι (29). 6. Analysis of δηλοῖα πεφιλησθαι (28). 7. Comparison of φίλος. 8. The participle πεπτωκότα (30).

## LESSON LXX.

## ANABASIS I. x. 1-6.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 1. ἀποτέμεται, διώκων, εισπίπτει; explain the use of the singular. οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου, *Ariæus and his men.*

§ 2. τέτταρες . . . ὁδοῦ, *there were said to be four parasangs of the road, i. e. the distance was said to be four parasangs.* τά τε ἄλλα διαρπάζουσι, καὶ . . . λαμβάνει, *not only plunder much of other things, but (i. e. while they plunder, etc.) also take, etc.; cf. LXVII. 17.*

§ 3. ληφ-θείσα, theme λαβ. τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλεύᾳ. cf. οἱ μετὰ Ἀρμίου  
 § 1 πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, το [sc. τούτους, those] of the Greeks. Why  
 not allow πρὸς to be construed with the genitive here? ὄπλα ἔχοντες,  
*i. e.* on guard. οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν, but some of them (*i. e.* the Greeks)  
 also. ἔσωσαν, from σώζω. ἐντὸς αὐτῶν, within their army or  
 line.

§ 5. Τισσαφέρνους, cf. Κύρου LIX. § 13. εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, for-  
 ward. πλησιαίτατος from πλησίον; note the formation. πέμ-  
 ποιεν . . . ἴοιεν, whether they should send . . . or go; direct discourse,  
 "shall we send . . . or go?" the subjunctive of deliberation; observe the  
 change from direct to indirect discourse. ἀρήξοντες: tense?

## 2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A verb followed by two or more subjects frequently agrees with the nearer in number.
2. An adjective modifying two or more substantives may be singular when *one* person or thing is especially held in mind by the writer.
3. πλησίον and φίλος show irregularities of comparison.
4. The subjunctive of deliberation may become optative in the indirect discourse after a secondary tense.

## 3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The adverb ἄν . . . . H. 857-862. G. 207-211.
2. Subjunctive of *deliberation* . H. 866, 3. G. 256.
3. Modes in *result* clauses . . H. 925-927. G. 237, 238.

## 4. VOCABULARY.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. ἀπο-τέμνω, cut off.                            | 8. ἐντός, within.              |
| 2. ἀνα-λαμβάνω, take up to or<br>with one's self. | 9. Κύριος, of Cyrus.           |
| 3. ἀντι-τάττω, draw up against.                   | 10. ἡ παλλακίς, mistress.      |
| 4. ἀρήγω, aid, assist.                            | 11. σοφός, wise, accomplished. |
| 5. γυμνός, lightly clad.                          | 12. τὸ στρατόπεδον, camp.      |
| 6. εἰς-πίπτω, fall into.                          | 13. στρέφω, turn.              |
| 7. ἐνθεν, thence; whence.                         | 14. σώζω, save.                |

## 5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κύρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμποι λέγοντα ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. (b) Ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀρμίου ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλεύᾳ καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται. (c) Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἦγοντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. (d) Οὗτος γὰρ πρῶτον οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκαψε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐτόξευον.

2. Translate: (a) They deliberated whether they should take up those who had again fled or fall upon the camp and cut off those (who were) stationed there on guard. (b) This was the end of that day. (c) She was said to be a beautiful and accomplished woman; wherefore those (who were) drawn up to aid her did not flee, but saved her and all her property. (d) When the brave soldiers wheeled (= turned) in that direction to receive the king, he did not lead against them, but fled to the station from which he had set out. (e) But when they saw-in-advance the scythe-bearing chariots, they did not fear, but opened their line (*i. e.* stood apart).

3. The review of the words in the List of *first occurrences* numbered 831-921.

## 6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The agreement of the verb; irregularities. 2. Agreement of the adjective; irregularities. 3. Familiar words suggested by the Vocabulary. 4. Principal parts of the new verbs in the Vocabulary. 5. The changes in the theme vowel of στρέφω in the different tense systems. 6. The principles in the Grammar Lesson. 7. οἱ μετὰ Ἀρμίου, Ἀρμίου καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. 8. Comparison of πλησίον and φίλος. 9. Subjunctive of deliberation; the same in the indirect discourse.

## LESSON LXXI.

## ANABASIS I. x. 7-12.

## 1. NOTES.

§ 7. Ἕλληνας : here with the force of an adjective. κατέκανε :  
cf. LXV. § 6.

§ 8. ὡς μείον ἔχων ἀπ-ηλλάγη, when he withdrew, having less, i. e. the  
worst of it; μείον is comparative of μικρός. τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, in  
apposition with στρατόπεδον.

§ 9. ἀνα-πτύσσειν τὸ κέρας: to bend or wheel the wing around; thus  
the army would be brought to face the enemy, while its rear rested on  
the river.

§ 10. καὶ δὴ βασιλεύς, the king already also.

§ 11. ἐκ πλείονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν, from a greater distance than before :  
they did not wait for the Greeks to come so near as they had before.  
τὸ πρόσθεν, adverbial accusative.

§ 12. περὶ: partitive apposition with οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾳ. ἰππέων :  
cf. χόρτου XLIX. § 10. ὥστε . . . μὴ γινώσκειν, so that [the Greeks]  
. . . what was being done. αἰτόν τινα κτέ, a kind of eagle, outstretched  
(i. e. with wings outstretched) upon a shield, on the top of a (spear) shaft.

## 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- Principal parts of φεύγω,  
ελαύνω, καίνω, ἵστημι, παίω,  
ἀλλάττω, στρέφω, ἰκνέομαι,  
δέδοικα, κόπτω.
- Comparison of κακός, μικρός,  
ὀλίγος, πολὺς, καλός . . . H. 254. G. 73.
- Indirect discourse . . . { H. 928-930, 932. } G. 241, 248.  
934, 937.

## 3. VOCABULARY.

- ὁ αἰτός, eagle.
- ἀμφοτέρωθεν, from or on both  
sides.
- ἀνα-πτύσσω, fold up; open  
out (hence, to deploy the  
wings of an army to meet  
any new attack of the  
enemy).
- ἀνα-τείνω, stretch up or out,  
extend.
- ἀπ-αλλάττω, change away,  
withdraw, come off from  
an encounter.
- αὖθις, again.
- ἐπι-διώκω, pursue.
- ὁ λόφος, hill.
- ὁμοῦ, together.
- παρ-αμείβω, mid., change a  
battle-line or order.
- παρα-τάττω, draw up or ar-  
range beside.
- ἡ πέλη, light (crescent-  
formed) shield.
- περι-πτύσσω, fold about, en-  
fold, surround.
- προσ-άγω, lead against, attack.
- τὸ σημεῖον, sign, standard.
- σύν-εimi, go with, come to-  
gether.
- ἡ σύν-αδος, coming together,  
encounter. [in with.
- συν-τυγχάνω, happen or fall
- τὸ σχῆμα, form, shape.
- φρόνιμος, sagacious.

## 4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (a) Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, οἱ ἰπ-  
πεῖς λιπόντες τὸν λόφον ἀπηλλάγησαν· ἦν δ' ὁ λόφος ψιλὸς τῶν ἰππέων.  
(b) Μετὰ τὴν πρώτην σύνοδον συνήεσαν πάλιν παραμειψάμενοι εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ  
σχῆμα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. (c) ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ συνόδῳ,  
τῷδε δῆλον ἦν· τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα αὐτῷ διδόναι ἐκέ-  
λευε, τότε δὲ ἀγγέλους καὶ ἐρμηνεὺς ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. (d) Ἀριθμὸς δὲ  
τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ  
ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πενή-  
κοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυ-  
λώνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριάκοντα.

2. Translate : (a) The standard of the enemy was supposed to be a  
bronze eagle, having its wings raised, as-if about to fly. (b) We shall  
pursue them, if we are able, as far as the so-called wall of Media.  
(c) And when he heard the watch-word passing a second-time (adv. acc.)  
through the army, he asked what the noise was. (d) A rumor spread  
(went) through the army that the march was to be against the king.

(e) They put the river in their rear, fearing lest the enemy might surround them and cut them down.

3. Review of words numbered 922-988 in the List of *first occurrences*.

#### 5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Familiar words suggested by the Vocabulary. 2. Euphonic principles illustrated in the principal parts of the verbs in the Grammar Lesson. 3. Summary of the principles of the indirect discourse.
4. Optatives in § 9. 5. Analysis of the participles in §§ 9, 10.

### LESSON LXXII.

#### ANABASIS I. x. 13-19.

##### 1. NOTES.

§ 13. ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, *some in one direction, others in another.*  
τέλος: cf. LXV. § 6.

§ 15. ἀνά κράτος, cf. LVII. § 1. σχέδον . . . ἦν, *about the time this took place.*

§ 16. θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα, *grounding their arms*; cf. L. § 14. ἦδε-σαν: from οἶδα.

§ 17. ἄγουντο, cf. πέμποιεν LXX. § 5.

§ 18. σῆτιον ἢ ποτόν, *meat or drink.*

##### 2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of λείπω. ἀγγέλλω  
δύω, τίθημι. παύω, φαίνω, οἶδα,  
θήσκω, διώκω, μένω.
2. The infinitive construction with  
adjectives or nouns . . . . H. 952. G. 261.
3. The infinitive construction with  
ὥστε or πρὶν . . . . H. 953, 955. G. 266, 274.

#### 3. VOCABULARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ἄδειπνος, -ον, <i>without dinner.</i>                       | 8. δῶω, <i>enter.</i>                             |
| 2. ἀθρόος, <i>in a body or mass.</i>                           | 9. ἡ ἔνδεια, <i>want, need.</i>                   |
| 3. ἄλλοθεν, <i>from or in a different direction.</i> [up.      | 10. ὁ ἥλιος, <i>sun.</i>                          |
| 4. ἀνα βιβάζω, <i>lead up, make go</i>                         | 11. οὐδαμοῦ, <i>nowhere.</i>                      |
| 5. ἀνα-παύω, <i>mid., stop and re-gain breath or strength.</i> | 12. ποτός, <i>drinkable, drink.</i>               |
| 6. ἀν-άριστος, -ον, <i>without breakfast.</i> [ing meal.       | 13. προ-ελαύνω, <i>ride forward.</i>              |
| 7. ὁ δορηστος, <i>time of the even-</i>                        | 14. τὸ σῆτιον, <i>food.</i>                       |
|  | 15. σφοδρός, <i>vehement, violent, excessive.</i> |
|  | 16. ψιλώω, <i>make bare, desert.</i>              |

#### 4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (a) Πρὶν δὲ τόξενμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσι οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ὁ λόφος ἐψιλώθη. (b) Ἦσθημεν δὴ πάντες ὁρῶντες τὴν τοῦ δῶομένου ἡλίου λαμπρότητα καὶ τῶν νεφελῶν. (c) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ὁ ἥλιος ἐδύετο, ὁ Θραξ ἔχων τοὺς τε ἵππεῖς τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὡς τριακοσίους ἠτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλεῖα· Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἠγείτο κατὰ τὰ δόξαντα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρὰ Ἀριαίων καὶ τὴν ἐκεῖνου στρατιᾶν ἀμφὶ μέσῃς νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα συνήλθον οἱ Θρακῆς καὶ τὸ πολὺ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ Ἀριαίων· καὶ συνέθεντο οἱ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαίος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε εἶσθαι.

2. Translate: (a) Cyrus, annoyed and grieved by these things, sent for Clearchus: but he refused to go; without the knowledge of the soldiers, however, he sent a messenger to him and told him not to fear. (b) We shall not lead our soldiers up those difficult hills, but permit them to stop when they have pursued the enemy and made the plain wholly bare. (c) He did not know whether he should first pause and then enter the tent, or go in immediately. (d) If the enemy had found the meat and drink hidden in the camp of Cyrus and plundered it, great and excessive need would have fallen upon all with him.

3. Review of the words numbered 989-1117 in the List of *first occurrences*.

## 5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν. 2. τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα. 3. Subjunctive of deliberation in indirect discourse. 4. The grammatical principles illustrated in No. 1, Grammar Lesson. 5. Construction of ἰππέων and τέλος § 13. 6. Inflection of ἴστησαν § 16. 7. The optatives in §§ 16-18. 8. Inflection and analysis of ἐφάνη § 19.

## 6. REVIEW.

It is of great importance to review the ninth and tenth chapters. This can be done successfully if great care is taken (*a*) to understand the translation correctly; (*b*) to grasp the meaning of each of the new words in these two chapters; (*c*) to study the more complicated uses of modes and tenses illustrated in the ninth chapter; and (*d*) to pick out, classify, and tabulate the instances of conditional clauses in both direct and indirect discourse. Follow in general the plan of Review adopted in Lessons X. and XX.

## THE FIRST BOOK

OF

## XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.

## CHAPTER I.

When Darius was at the point of death, he desired his sons Artaxerxes and Cyrus to be summoned to him (1). The former shortly after becomes king, and the latter, during his stay at court, is accused of plotting against the new king (2, 3). Upon returning to his province, Cyrus nurses his resentment against his accusers and against the king, who had been upon the point of putting him to death, and decides to raise an army in secret in order to thrust Artaxerxes from the throne (4). He summons his several commanders to collect Spartan mercenaries, as if to subdue his enemy Tissaphernes and to champion the exiles of Miletus (5-8). Through the aid of Clearchus, he raises a second army and stations it in the Thracian Chersonese (9). A third army, under the command of Aristippus, he secretes in Thessaly (10). A fourth, with Proxenus as general, he prepares as if for a campaign against the Pisidians, and other generals are placed in command of smaller forces, ready to come to aid him in the war against Tissaphernes, which serves as a blind to conceal from the king the true intentions of his brother against him (11).

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτῆν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ παιδὶ ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. 2. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρῶν ἐτύγχανε. Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην

ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον. **3.** ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. **4.** ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπήλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν γὰρ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξη. **5.** ὅστις δ' ἀφικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. **6.** τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὅποσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουρ-ἀρχοῖς ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. **7.** ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης

προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. **8.** πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. **9.** ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικοὺς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. **10.** Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὦν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκοὶ ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους

ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῆται. οὕτω δὲ αὐτὸ ἐν Θετταλία ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στρατεύμα. **11.** Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα. Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

## CHAPTER II.

As soon as it seemed that his plot was ready to be put into execution, which Tissaphernes had foreseen and reported to the king, Cyrus collects his forces and sets out from Sardis, as if against the people of the Pisidians (1-5). He proceeds through Lydia (5) and then through Phrygia, where new forces join him (6). At the city of Celaenae, a new supply of auxiliaries arrives and a review of the forces is made (7-9). When they arrive at the plain of Caÿster, the soldiers become clamorous for their pay for the three months of their service (10, 11). This Cyrus gives them, being enabled to do so by the pecuniary assistance lent by the queen of the Cilicians, who had come to him (12). They then reach Thymbrium, pass the fountain of Midas (13), and make their way into Lycaonia (19), at which point the queen departs for Cilicia (20), which country Cyrus and his army then enter (21-25). At Tarsus he meets Syennesis, king of the Cilicians (26, 27).

**1.** Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἦκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στρατεύμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στρατεύμα· καὶ Ξενία τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἦκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. **2.** ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκούντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπέειθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. **3.** Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατενομένων. **4.** οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἠγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευὴν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα

ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. 5. καὶ βασιλεῖς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. 6. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θεταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. 7. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε γυμνάσαι βούλοιοτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. 8. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὖρος ἔστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά ὁὶ περι σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμός

καλεῖται Μαρσύας. 9. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἠττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρακάς ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακούσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἄρκας ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους. 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσεν καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρα. 11. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίου, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. 12. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν



στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἄσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ. **13.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι οἴνω κεράσας αὐτήν. **14.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδείξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. **15.** ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. **16.** ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλαννον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. **17.** ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον

τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. **18.** τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἡ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδῶν. **19.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὔσαν. **20.** ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε εἰς Θόανα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρην, φοινικιστὴν βσιλείιον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ. **21.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Σύννεσις

εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἰσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἦκουε περιπλεύσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. **22.** Κύρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινε εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει ὄχυρον καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. **23.** καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνθα ἦν τὰ Σευνέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. **24.** ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Σευνέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεία ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. **25.** Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Σευνέσιος γυνὴ πρότερα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοῦς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὀρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στρα-

τεύμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. **26.** οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοῦς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασιλεία τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιον πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενὶ πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει εἶλαβε. **27.** μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κύρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτόν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἠρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν πού ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

### CHAPTER III.

While the army delays at Tarsus, the soldiers begin to suspect the designs of Cyrus and refuse to go any farther (1). Clearchus, at the risk of his life, but in vain, tries to force his men; he then moves them to obedience by means of tears and a shrewd address in which he recites the causes of his grief over their disobedience (2-4), pretending, however, absolute devotion to them, whatever they may do, and asserting his willingness to go and suffer with them whatever may be necessary (5, 6). These words win the applause of the soldiers and two thousand, serving under other generals, desert them and join his standard (7). Cyrus is perplexed, but is secretly reassured by Clearchus (8), who, taking his soldiers apart, again addresses them, hinting significantly at the difficulties which would

beset their separation from Cyrus (9-12). Others follow in the same strain (13) one speaker however takes the opposite side (probably inspired by Clearchus), urging that they return to Greece as quickly as possible, even demanding that Cyrus furnish them with ships for the purpose (14). Upon this, Clearchus rises, disclaiming any willingness to further such a plan as that (15), and exhibiting the perils which would assail them if they started homeward (16, 17). Finally it is decided that they ask Cyrus what his plans are (18, 19). He answers them that he intends to punish Abrocomas, and gives them, upon their demanding it, half again as much pay; so that they follow him, although still suspecting his purposes (20, 21).

1. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτενον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προΐεναι. 2. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὀρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε. 3. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καὶ μεφεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. 4. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θράκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξε-

λαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἑλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὔ᾽ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. 5. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνου ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἑλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην. 6. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέτετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔσομαι καὶ ὅτι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν ὄμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾖ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. 7. ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλέαρχον. 8. Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πῆμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. 9. μετὰ

δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα. **10.** ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος ὅτι σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβῶν με δίκην ἐπιθῆναι νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. **11.** ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτόμενοι μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἀπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν· ἀνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδ' ἔστιν. **12.** ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἀξίος φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾦ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾦ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἰππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅτι τις γιγνώσκει ἀριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. **13.** ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία ἀνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. **14.** εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε

προσποιοῦμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγὸς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι — ἢ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι — καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κύρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει. ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κύρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τούτου Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. **15.** Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. **16.** μετὰ τούτου ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὐηθὲς εἴη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πράξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κύρος δῶ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κύρον προκαταλαβεῖν; **17.** ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος

ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστίν· ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι·  
**18.** δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον οἷτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησία οἷαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεισθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναβάντων· **19.** ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνότερα, ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπίοντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅτι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγη ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι·  
**20.** ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ· ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ἢ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα· **21.** ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἔδοκει ἔπεισθαι· προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρειακά τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν γε τῷ φανερωῷ.

## CHAPTER IV.

After the soldiers have been persuaded to continue their course still farther to the east, they journey on and cross the Psarus and Pyramus rivers, making for Issus, the frontier town between Cilicia and Syria (1). At this place Cyrus is joined by his fleet of Greek ships and marines; the Spartan Cheirisophus comes with the ships, furnishing his quota of seven hundred hoplites. Greek deserters from Abrocomas also join his forces (2, 3). Coming to Issus, Cyrus finds his way blocked by the so-called Gates of Syria, and a force under the command of Syennesis manning one of the walls (4, 5). Upon learning that Cyrus is in Cilicia, Abrocomas, from whom Cyrus had expected opposition, flees with his large army; and Cyrus, passing Issus, marches through Syria to Myriandum, a Phoenician town. Xenias and Pasion desert him here, piqued at the favor shown Clearchus (6, 7). But Cyrus declares that he will not pursue them, preferring that no one shall serve unwillingly in his cause; at this the soldiers are greatly pleased, and march with better will (8, 9). Passing the Chalus and the source of the Dardas, and destroying the royal residence and gardens of the Syrian king, located at the latter place, Cyrus reaches the Euphrates (10, 11). Here the generals learn that Cyrus intends to march against the king, and are ordered to influence the soldiers to continue. These at first are angry, claiming that they have been duped by the generals; they demand still more pay and are promised it (12, 13). But Menon, meanwhile, seeking the special favor of Cyrus, by seeming zealous in his cause, urges his soldiers to cross the Euphrates while the rest of the army is uncertain (14-17). This they, and subsequently the rest of the army, do with an ease which seems to the inhabitants of the place to be miraculous. They then reach the river Araxes, and finding well stocked villages there, rest three days (18, 19).

**1.** Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὐρὸς τρία

πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμὸν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἴσσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. **2.** ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρω παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἠγείτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἐτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρω πρὸς αὐτόν. **3.** παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρω. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὠρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κύρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλίται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. **4.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τεῖχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Σύννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλικίων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὑπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἠλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν

πύλαι. **5.** ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν βιασομένους τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κύρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλαυεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς. **6.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὠρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί. **7.** ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας, ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα, εἶα Κύρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κύρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠύχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἀλώσονται. **8.** Κύρος δὲ συγκαλίσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν, Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῆ τις χρώμαι,

ἐπειδὴν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβῶν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. **9.** καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληγες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἡδίων καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἴων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομένα. **10.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦν τὰ Βελέστυος βασιλεία τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὄραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βασιλεία κατέκαυσεν. **11.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ὠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς

λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπέθειν ἔπεισθαι. **12.** οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, εἰ μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον. **13.** ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὶ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη. Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στρατεύμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. **14.** Ἄνδρες, εἰάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος ἔπεισθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινούνται Κύρῳ. **15.** ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεισθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὔσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἦν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχα-

γίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὐτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου. **16.** ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἤσθητο διαβεβηκότας, ἤσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. **17.** οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλας ὄντες ἠύχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. **18.** οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προῖων κατέκαυσε, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσονται. **19.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἐννέα παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεστὰὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπισιτίσαντο.

## CHAPTER V.

The journey is continued through the Arabian desert, along the north bank of the Euphrates (1). Many wild animals of various sorts are met with, and some of them the horsemen pursue. Difficulties in giving chase to the wild ass and the ostrich (2, 3). The army arrives at Corsôte and takes in provisions, and then continues on its way to Pylae, many of the beasts of burden suffering from hunger and thirst. The inhabitants of the country quarry grinding-stones for a living and sell them at Babylon (4, 5). During this journey through the desert, provisions sell for an exorbitant price in the army; the march was very rapid, Cyrus and his retinue frequently dismounting and lending a helping hand whenever a wagon was stalled in the mud. It was the impression of all that Cyrus was hastening so as to find the king unprepared (6-9). At Charmande the soldiers cross the river and buy provisions (10). Outbreak in the Greek army, the soldiers of Menon venting their ill-will against Clearchus and his rigorous method of punishment. Clearchus and his Thracian soldiers march against the camp of Menon. Most unfortunate results might have followed, notwithstanding the mediation of Proxenus, had not Cyrus opportunely arrived upon the scene (11-17).

**1.** Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὡσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὡσπερ ἀρώματα· **2.** δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἰππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι,



ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἕστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θάττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλότερα δέ. 3. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἵππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας, ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἡδίστα ἦν. 4. πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὐτῇ ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. 5. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐνενηκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπόλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. 6. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὃ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὃ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἐπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ

ἡμιωβόλιον Ἀττικῶν· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. 7. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὗς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. 8. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῆ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεύσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ρίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κἀνδύς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τοὺς τε πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθύς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θάττον ἢ ὡς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας. 9. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἕνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ μὲν θάττον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσοῦτῳ πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἢ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὔσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενῆς,

εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο. **10.** πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρας ἅς εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σίτου μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον. **11.** ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐν ταῦθα τῶν τε Μένωνός του στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. **12.** τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκευάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὐπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυεν· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. **13.** ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μῆναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ

στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι. **14.** ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος — ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσίων καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν — εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινον ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πράως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. **15.** ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐπήει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. **16.** Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅτι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γὰρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. **17.** ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ πανσάμενοι ἀμφοτέροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα.

## CHAPTER VI.

Marching down the Euphrates from the vicinity of Charmande, Cyrus finds evidence of the nearness of the king's cavalry (1). The treachery of Orontas. He persuades Cyrus to give him 2,000 cavalry, promising to kill or capture the hostile cavalry in the neighborhood; he writes a letter to the king; disclosing the plan and his purpose to revolt, and places it in the hands of one whom he thought trustworthy, to be forwarded to the king (2, 3). It falls however into Cyrus's hands. Orontas is arrested, and a council is summoned, to which Clearchus is invited (4, 5). Cyrus states the object of the council (the trial of Orontas), recites his former acts of indulgence towards the culprit, and cross-examines him, eliciting the confession that he has acted with injustice towards his benefactor (6-8). Clearchus urges the execution of Orontas, and Cyrus, taking the latter by the girdle, delivers him to a faithful servant, who performs the execution so secretly that nothing was ever afterwards seen of Orontas dead or alive (9-11).

1. Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνη ἵππων καὶ κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἷ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγείς δέ. 2 οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἵππείας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακάοντας ἵππείας ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ

δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. 3. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἵππείας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἦξοι ἔχων ἵππείας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἵππεύσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχασθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. 4. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κύρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίουσ ὀπλίτας. 5. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. 6. ἔφη δὲ Κύρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὅτι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τουτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοί ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν

ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα, 7. μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅτι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὅτι ἐδύνω; ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὐτὸς ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκας μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὁμολογεῖ ὁ Ὀρόντας. 8. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεῖς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεῖς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὅμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἀδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. 9. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει. ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅτι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τούτον ἐκποδῶν ποιέισθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τούτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῶν τὸ κατὰ τούτον εἶναι τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν. 10. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συνγενεῖς. εἶτα δ' ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν οἷς

προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. 11. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηπνὴν εἰσῆχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν. εἵκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως. τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

## CHAPTER VII.

Babylonia is at length reached; during his progress through it, Cyrus reviews his men and learns of the condition of the king's army (1, 2). In an address to the Greeks he exhorts them to prove themselves worthy men, assuring them that the king's army, though large, is harmless. He promises great rewards if they endure the first shock. These promises he declares he will not forget (3-5); for in a kingdom so great as that of Persia the difficulty is not in finding the means to fulfil his promises, but the persons worthy of them (3-7). The soldiers are pleased and beg him to remain in the rear during the fight. Another review is made, the Greeks amounting to about 13,000, and the barbarians to 100,000 (8-10). The enemy amount to over a million men and possess 200 scythe-bearing chariots; their cavalry numbers 6,000 (11-13). The advance is now made more cautiously as they near the king's army and pass, one after another, the many deep trenches, which were cut to impede an enemy's progress. Some of these extended almost to the Euphrates itself, leaving only an extremely narrow width of ground over which Cyrus might lead his army (14-17). The generosity of Cyrus towards the priest Silanus (18). Surprised that the king does not meet him in battle, Cyrus continues on his way somewhat negligent in his discipline, many of the soldiers placing their arms in the baggage-wagons.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἤξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχόμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θεταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε.

2. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἤκουτες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κῦρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε.

3. ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἀξιοὶ τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίῳ.

4. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδῶς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχυνεῖσθαί μοι δοκῶ οἶους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων. καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.

5. ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρῶν φυγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ Κῦρῳ, εἶπε, Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σε φασιν· ἐνιοὶ δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ.

6. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ ἢ πατρώα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι.

7. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅτι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἰκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἐκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω.

8. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναί τί σφίσιν ἔσται, εἴαν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε.

9. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὠδέ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἶε γὰρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.

10. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν

μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἄσπις μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἄμφι τὰ εἴκοσι. **11.** τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἰππεῖς, ὧν Ἄρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. **12.** τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πενήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. **13.** ταῦτα δὲ ἠγγελλον πρὸς Κύρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βρασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὑστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτα ἠγγελλον. **14.** ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κύρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ὤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. **15.** παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι

δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μετὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· **16.** ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κύρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πάροδον Κύρος τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. **17.** ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερά ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. **18.** ἐνταῦθα Κύρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρκενοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρας προθυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κύρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσης, ὑπισχνούμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρήλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. **19.** ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέσθαι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κύρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. **20.** τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE BATTLE OF CUNAXA. It is about noon, when a horseman, galloping at full speed, announces the approach of the king's army. The news creates great confusion; but Cyrus bids his soldiers prepare for the contest and fall into line (1-3). Position of the Greek army and of the forces of the barbarians (4, 5). Cyrus takes his position at the centre of the line, with his head uncovered, surrounded by his 600 bravest men (6, 7). Shortly after noon the enemy appear, their cavalry in white breast-coverings and led by Tissaphernes. In front of them are the scythe-bearing chariots, to be sent at random among the Greeks (8-10). As the king approaches silently and slowly, Cyrus orders Clearchus to lead his men against him, at the middle of the line, hoping to cut him down and to win the victory at once. But Clearchus, fearing lest he be surrounded, hesitates to withdraw from the Euphrates; the entire Greek line maintaining its position, whilst the ranks are filling up, and the watchword of success, "Zeus the Savior, and Victory," is passed along (11-16). As soon as the enemy are almost within bow-shot, the Greeks charge and put them to flight, the chariots fail to do any harm, and the victory seems already to belong to Cyrus (17-20). But fearing that the enemy may turn him in the rear, he charges with his 600 against the king's centre, disperses many of the latter's body guard, and even wounds the king, when he is himself struck beneath the eye by a javelin. In the confusion, Cyrus is killed, a few of his most devoted followers fall with him, and his most faithful sceptre-bearer, Artapates, covers his master's body with his own corpse (21-28).

1. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσιν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἠνίκα Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρι-

κῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. 2. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι. 3. Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδν καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. 4. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρασ ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. 5. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν, 6. Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ὠπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγεται ὅτι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. 7. οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς. 8. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δεῖλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ.

ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ λόγχοι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. **9.** καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. **10.** πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. **11.** ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῆσαν. **12.** καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἐρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἶη· κἂν τοῦτ', εἶφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῶν πεποιήται. **13.** ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλεάρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα — τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν — ἀλλ' ὁμως ὁ Κλεάρχος οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ

τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. **14.** καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προῆει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεῖτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. **15.** ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς συναντήσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι. ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλὰ. **16.** ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ἢ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κλεάρχος εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὅς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅτι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. **17.** ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, εἶφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὸ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἠνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἑλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. **18.** ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγαντο πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθειον. λέγουσι δὲ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. **19.** πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν



κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. **20.** τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἠνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. **21.** Κῦρος δ' ὄρων τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὅτι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. **22.** καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἠγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἢν ἢ ἢ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στρατεύμα. **23.** καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. **24.** ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβάλων σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα

αὐτῶν. **25.** ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καταλείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. **26.** σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὦν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στίφος· καὶ εὐθύς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρώζετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. **27.** παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. **28.** Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. **29.** καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοϊάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

## CHAPTER IX.

THE CHARACTER OF CYRUS. Like the greater Cyrus, this prince evinced even in boyhood, as well as in his maturer years, the qualifications of a king; he was a brighter and "stronger" scholar than Artaxerxes and his other companions (1-4), his bearing towards his elders and even towards his inferiors being one of marked respect and deference. He was fond of horses and horsemanship, and showed himself assiduous in practising archery and in the use of the javelin (5). As a young man he was fond of the hunt, and on one occasion, in an encounter with a bear, he showed great bravery and skill (6). As satrap he was a man of integrity towards friend and foe, loyal to all whom he esteemed as friends, and inclined to make both his friendship and his hostility strongly marked (7-12). The wicked and the unjust he punished with relentless severity; whilst those in his army who proved their bravery and their daring, were rewarded with high offices of state (13-15). The honest were rewarded with riches and preferment; those who served him faithfully and earnestly were promoted to positions of greater responsibility (16-21). Many of the gifts he used to receive, he distributed among his friends with characteristic messages. No one of Greeks or barbarians was probably beloved by a greater number of friends (22-28). No servant ever deserted him, whilst many on the king's side flocked to him; at the decisive battle at Cunaxa all his friends and table-companions about him fell, fighting to the end, — all, except Ariaeus, who led the left wing; for he and his whole army fled, on learning of Cyrus's death (29-31).

1. Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. 2. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν οὗτ'

ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο. 3. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται. ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν οὗτ' ἀκούσται οὗτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. 4. θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους. ὥστε εὐθύς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. 5. ἔνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι. ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλὰς εἶχε, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε. καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίου ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι περὶ πλείστον ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο καὶ εἴ τῳ συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς ψεύδεσθαι. 8. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες.

καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένου Κύρου ἐπί-  
 στευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν. **9.** τοι-  
 γαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις  
 ἐκούσαι Κύρον εἶλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μι-  
 λησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας  
 προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. **10.** καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ  
 ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοίτο, ἐπεὶ  
 ἄπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους  
 γένοιτο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν. **11.** φανερός δ' ἦν  
 καὶ εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν  
 πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς  
 εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστω νικῶν καὶ τοὺς εὖ  
 καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιῶντας ἀλεξόμενος. **12.** καὶ γὰρ  
 οὖν πλείστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν  
 ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν  
 σώματα προέσθαι. **13.** οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν  
 τις εἴποι ὡς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα κατα-  
 γελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολ-  
 λάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ  
 ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώ-  
 πους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἑλληνι  
 καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπη  
 τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅτι προχωροῖη. **14.** τοὺς γε  
 μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο διαφερόντως  
 τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος πρὸς Πισί-  
 δας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς  
 ταύτας τὰς χώρας οὗς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν,  
 τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρας,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα. **15.** ὥστε φαί-

νεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ  
 κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιώων εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλή  
 ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθέλοντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις  
 οἶοιτο Κύρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. **16.** εἰς γε μὴν δικαιο-  
 σύνην εἴ τις φανερός γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλό-  
 μενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρας ζῆν  
 ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. **17.** καὶ  
 γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ  
 στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ  
 καὶ λοχαγοὶ, οἱ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευ-  
 σαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς  
 ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. **18.** ἀλλὰ μὴν  
 εἴ τις γέ τι αὐτῷ προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν,  
 οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοι-  
 γαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρεταὶ παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ  
 ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι. **19.** εἰ δὲ τινα ὀρώη δεινὸν  
 ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά  
 τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιῶντα, οὐδένα  
 ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου·  
 ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ  
 ὅσα ἐπέπατό τις ἠκιστα Κύρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ  
 φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ  
 πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρή-  
 μασι. **20.** φίλους γε μὴν ὅσους ποιήσαιο καὶ  
 εὖνους γνοίη ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς  
 εἶναι ὅτι τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμο-  
 λογεῖται πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θερα-  
 πεύειν. **21.** καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐπερ αὐτὸς ἕνεκα  
 φίλων ᾔετο δεῖσθαι, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς

ἐπειράτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα. **22.** δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἶς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρώη ἕκαστον δεόμενον. **23.** καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι. **24.** καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτεροι ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. **25.** Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὅποτε πάνυ ἠδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου τούτου ἠδίονι οἴνω ἐπιτύχοι· τούτου οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τούτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς. **26.** πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεια καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα, Τούτοις ἦσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. **27.** ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς δὲ δύναίτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τούτον τὸν χιλόν, ὡς μὴ πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν. **28.** εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο

καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοῖη οὖς τιμᾶ. ὥστε ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιληῆσθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. **29.** τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῆι πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν ἠῦρε Κύρῳ φίλτερον ἢ ἑαυτῷ· παρὰ δὲ βασιλέως πολλοὶ πρὸς Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. **30.** μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. **31.** ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὡς δ' ἦσθητο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν οὐ ἠγεῖτο.

## CHAPTER X.

After the head and right hand of Cyrus have been cut off (1), the king falls upon his camp and puts Ariaeus to flight. Everything is pillaged, except where the few Greeks left on guard make a stout resistance (2, 3). Learning of the king's movements, the Greeks return from their pursuit; unwilling to meet them, the king collects his men, wheels around to the left, and joins Tissaphernes, who had borne down upon the Greek peltasts to his own discomfiture (4-8). In order to escape being surrounded, the Greeks remain close to the river; the enemy move against them, but flee before the charge of the Greeks (9-11). Their cavalry halt upon a hill; but upon the approach of the Greeks they leave it, fleeing at full speed (12-15). Here the Greeks rest, wondering at the absence of Cyrus; they decide to return to camp, only to find it plundered of everything; and so they spend the night there, supperless (16-19).

1. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἢ δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὤρμηστο. 2. τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τὰ τε ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι, καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν Κύρου παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι λαμβάνει. 3. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἦν νεωτέρα ἢ ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἳ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις ὄπλα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων

ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἔσωσαν καὶ τᾶλλα ὅποσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν. 4. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς ὡς πάντα νικῶντες, οἱ δ' ἀρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες. 5. ἐπεὶ δ' ἤσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἶη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας, πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες. 6. ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσιῶν πάλιν ὡς ἐδόκει ὀπισθεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτῃ προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτῃ μὲν οὐκ ἤγεν, ἦ δὲ παρήλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρατος ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπήγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. 7. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. 8. ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρνης ὡς μείον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ

ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. **9.** ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. **10.** ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνῆει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐτῆς παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. **11.** οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλείονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. **12.** ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἰππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γινώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασιλείον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν αἰετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον. **13.** ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἰππεῖς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐψιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἰππέων· τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. **14.** ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι.

**15.** καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο. **16.** ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρείη· οὐ γὰρ ᾗδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι. **17.** καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μέιναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. **18.** ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφοδρὰ τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδοίῃ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν— ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσiai ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἄμαξαι— καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήπρασαν. **19.** ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγέροντο.

## A LITERAL TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I.-III.

### CHAPTER I.

1. (I.) Of-Darius and of-Parysatis are-born boys two, elder indeed Artaxerxes, younger however Cyrus. (II.) When however was-sick Darius and was-suspecting an-end of-the (of-)life, he-was-wishing the-two two-boys both to-be-present. 2. (III.) The on-the-one-hand in-truth elder being-present was-happening; Cyrus on-the-other-hand he-sends-after from the government, of-which him satrap he-made. (IV.) Also general and him he-appointed of-all, as-many-as into Castolus's plain collect-themselves. (V.) Goes-up therefore the Cyrus taking Tissaphernes as a-friend, also of the Greeks and having heavy-armed-men he-went-up three-hundred, commander and of-them Xenias a-Parrhasian. 3. (VI.) When however ended Darius and sat-down into the kingdom Artaxerxes, Tissaphernes slanders the Cyrus by (*i. e.* before) the brother, that he-is-plotting-against him. (VII.) The (= he) however is-persuaded and arrests Cyrus as about-to-kill; the however mother begging-off him sends-off again to the government. 4. (VIII.) The (= he) however as [= when] was-gone-away, after-incurring-danger, and after-being-dishonored, plans, in-order-that never again he-shall-be-in-the-power-of the brother, but, if he-may-be-able, shall-rule instead-of that-one. (IX.) Parysatis on-the-one-hand indeed the mother was-aiding the Cyrus, loving him rather than the reigning Artaxerxes. 5. Whoever however might-arrive of-the from-beside king unto him, all so disposing he-was-sending-away, so-as to-him rather friends to-be than to-king. (XI.) also of-the by-the-side-of himself and barbarians he-was-taking-care, that to-fight both able they-might-be and in-a-friendly-way they-might-have-[themselves] to-him. 6. The however Greek force he-was-collecting, as-much-as he-could, hiding-for-himself, in-order-that as-unprepared-as-possible he-might-take king. (XII.) As-follows therefore he-was-making-for-himself the levy. As-many-soever he-had guards in the cities he-announced to-the captains-of-the-guard each to-take men Peloponnesian as-many as-possible

and as-good as-possible, as plotting Tissaphernes-against the cities. And-for were the Ionian cities of-Tissaphernes, the-ancient (= formerly) from king having-been-given, then however they-had-revolted unto Cyrus all except Miletus; 7. (XIII.) in Miletus however Tissaphernes perceiving-in-advance those same [things] [them] devising-for-themselves, to-revolt unto Cyrus, the (= some) indeed he-killed-off, the (= others) however he-cast-out. The however Cyrus, taking up the fleeing [ones], after-collecting an-army, was-besieging Miletus both by land and by sea and was-endeavoring to lead-down [= back] the having-fallen-out (= fugitives.) (XIV.) And this again another pretext was to-him of-the to-collect an-army. 8. Unto however king sending, he-was-demanding, brother being of-him, to-be-given to-himself those the cities rather than Tissaphernes to-be-commander of-them, and the mother coöperated with-him these [things]; so that king the on-the-one-hand against himself conspiracy not was-perceiving. (XV.) With-Tissaphernes however he-was-thinking him warring, about the armies to-be-wasting-money; so-that in-no-wise was-he-angry, them warring. And for the Cyrus was-sending-off the becoming (*i. e.* incoming) revenues to-king from the cities, of-which (*i. e.* which) of-Tissaphernes he-was-happening having. 9. Another however army for-him was-being-collected in Chersonesus, the down opposite Abydus, this the way. Clearchus was a-Laecdaemonian fugitive; (XVI) with-him after-associating, (the) Cyrus both admired him and gives to-him ten-thousand darics. The (= he) however, after-taking the money, an-army collected from those the means, and was-warring, from Chersonesus setting-out, with-the Thracians, the above [the] Hellespont living, and he-was-aiding the Greeks; so-that also means they-were-contributing for-him into the support of-the soldiers, the Hellespontine cities, willing. (XVII.) This and again, thus being-supported, was-escaping-notice for-him the army. 10. And Aristippus the Thessalian was-happening being a-guest-friend to-him, and being-hard-pressed under (= by) the at-home opponents he-comes to Cyrus and asks him into (= about) two-thousand mercenaries and pay of-three months, as thus being-superior possibly of-the opponents. (XVIII.) But Cyrus gives to-him about four-thousand and pay of six months and demands of-him not sooner to-become-reconciled unto the opponents before he-may-deliberate-together with-him. And thus the army in Thessaly was-escaping-notice being-supported for-him. 11. (XIX.) Proxenus however the Boeotian, a-guest-friend being, he ordered, taking men as-many as-possible, to-become-at-[his]-side, as wishing to-march into (= against) the Pisidians, as the Pisidians [were] furnishing affairs (= trouble) to-the of-himself country. And Sophaenetus the Stymphalian

and Socrates the Achaean, these also [being] guest-friends, he ordered to-come, taking men as-many as-possible, as being-about-to-war-with Tissaphernes together-with the fugitives, the of-[the] Milesians. And were-doing thus those.

## CHAPTER II.

1. (XXI.) When however it-was-seeming-best to-him now to-advance upward, the on-the-one-hand pretext he-was-making as wishing to-drive-out Pisidians wholly from the country; and he-collects as against-these both the barbaric and the Greek [army]. There also announces both to-the Clearchus taking to-come how-great was to-him an-army, and to-the Aristippus, reconciled unto the [opponents] at-home, to-send-away unto himself what he-had army; and to-Xenias, the Arcadian, who for-him had-charge of-the in-the-cities mercenary [army] to-come he-announces, having-taxed the others except howsoever-many sufficient were the citadels to-guard. 2. (XXII.) He-called and also the Miletus besieging, and the fugitives he-ordered with him to-take-the-field, promising to-them if well he-might-have-accomplished [those things] upon which (= for the purpose of which) he-was-marching, not previously to desist until he might-lead-down (= back) them homeward. The however gladly were-obeying; they-trusted for to-him; and taking the arms they were-present into Sardis. 3. Xenias on-the-one-hand in-truth the from the cities heavy-armed-men to (= about) four-thousand taking became-present into Sardis, Proxenus on-the-other-hand was-present having heavy-armed-men indeed about five-hundred and one-thousand, light-armed-men however five-hundred, Sophaenetus however the Stymphalian having heavy-armed-men one-thousand, Socrates however the Achaean, heavy-armed-men having about five-hundred, Pasion however the Megarean, three-hundred indeed heavy-armed-men indeed three-hundred however targeteers having arrived; was however both that [one] and the Socrates of-the about Miletus being in the field. 4. (XXIII.) Those indeed into Sardis for him arrived. Tissaphernes however, after-watching those-things, and after-concluding greater to be than as-if against the Pisidians the preparation, proceeds to king, by-what [way] he was-able most-quickly, horsemen having about five-hundred. 5. And king on-the-one-hand indeed, when he-heard of-Tissaphernes the Cyrus's military-preparation, prepared-in-turn.

6. (XXIV.) Cyrus but having whom I-have-mentioned set-forth from Sardis; and he-marches through the Lydia days'-journeys three, parasangs



twenty and two to the Maeander river. Of this the width two plethra; a bridge however was upon having-been-joined by-means-of-boats. **6.** This after-crossing, he-marches through Phrygia day's-journey one parasangs eight into Colossae, city (well-) inhabited, prosperous and large. There he-waited days seven; and came Menon the Thessalian, hoplites having one-thousand and peltasts five-hundred, Dolopians and Aenianians and Olynthians. **7.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three parasangs twenty into Celaenae, of-the Phrygia city inhabited, large and prosperous. There to-Cyrus royal-abodes was and park large, of-wild animals full, which that-one used-to-hunt from horse, whenever to-exercise he-might-wish himself not-only but-also the horses. Through middle however of-the park flows the Maeander river; the and sources of-it are forth-from the royal-abodes; it-flows and also through the Celaenae city. **8.** (XXV.) There-is and also of-great king royal-abodes in Celaenae fortified upon the sources of-the Marsyas river beneath the acropolis; flows and also this through the city and empties into the Maeander; of-the and Marsyas the width is of twenty and five feet. There is-said Apollo to-have-flayed [it is said that Apollo flayed] Marsyas after-conquering [him] contending with-himself concerning [musical-] wisdom, and the skin to-have-hung-up [and that he hung up] in the cave whence the sources; through and this [fact] the river is-called Marsyas. **9.** There Xerxes, when forth-from the Greece after-being-defeated by-the battle he-was-retreating, is-said to-have-built [it is said that he built] these both (the) royal-abodes and the of-Celaenae citadel. There waited Cyrus days thirty; and came Clearchus the Spartan fugitive having hoplites one-thousand and peltasts Thracians eight-hundred and bowmen Cretan two-hundred. At-the-same-time and also Sosis was-present the Syracusan having hoplites three-hundred and Sophanetus the Arcadian having hoplites one-thousand. And there Cyrus review and enumeration of-the Greeks made in the park and became the all-together hoplites indeed ten-thousand and one-thousand, peltasts however about the two-thousand. **10.** (XXVI.) Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Peltae, a-city inhabited. There he-remained days three; in which Xenias the Arcadian the Lycaean sacrificed and contest placed; the and prizes were flesh-combs golden; viewed and the contest also Cyrus. Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs twelve, to Ceramōn market, city inhabited, remotest at the Mysian country. **11.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three, parasangs thirty, into Cayster's plain, city inhabited. There he-remained days five; and to-the soldiers was-owed pay more than of-three-months, and frequently going to the gates they-were-demanding [it] from

[him]. But the, promises speaking, was-putting-off and evident was being-troubled; not for was-it according-to the of-Cyrus manner, having, not to-give-back. **12.** There arrives Epyaxa, the of-Syennesis wife, the Cilicians' king to-the-side-of Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given [it was said that she gave] to-Cyrus means much. To-the and accordingly army then gave Cyrus pay of-four months. Had and the Cilician a-guard around herself, Cilicians and Aspendians; it-was-said however to-have-had-intercourse Cyrus [that C. had, etc.] with-the Cilician. **13.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Thymbrium, city inhabited. There was beside the road spring, the of-Midas called, the Phrygians' king, upon which is-said Midas to-have-caught [it is said that M. caught] the Satyr, with-wine by-mixing it. **14.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Tyriaeum, city inhabited. There he-remained days three. And is-said to-have-requested the-Cilician of-Cyrus [it is said that . . . requested Cyrus] to-show the army to-herself; wishing according'y to-show, review he-makes in the plain of-the Greeks and of-the barbarians. **15.** (XXVII.) He-ordered and the Greeks, as custom to-them into battle, so to-be-drawn-up and to-stand, to-marshal and, each-one, the of-himself. They-were-drawn-up accordingly in fours; had and the on-the-one-hand right Menon and the with him, the left but Clearchus and the of-that-one, the but middle the other generals. **16.** Was-viewing accordingly Cyrus first indeed the barbarians; the (= they) but were-marching-by having-been-drawn-up according-to squads and according to regiments; thereupon but the Greeks, riding-along upon chariot and the Cilician upon (= in) carriage. They-had and, all, helmets brazen and tunics purple and greaves and the shields having-been-uncovered. **17.** (XXVIII.) When-indeed but all he rode-beside (= along), after-stationing the chariot before the phalanx middle, sending Pigres the interpreter to-the-side-of the generals of-the Greeks he-ordered to-present the arms and to-advance entire the phalanx. They but said-in-front these orders to-the soldiers; and when the-trumpet-had-sounded, after-presenting the arms, they-advanced. From but this, more-quickly advancing with shout, from the spontaneous running became to-the soldiers to the tents. **18.** Of-the and barbarians fear much, and the both Cilician fled upon her carriage and the from (*i. e.* in) the market leaving-behind their wares fled. The but Greeks with laugh unto their tents went. The and Cilician, seeing the splendor and the order of-the army wondered. Cyrus but was-pleased, the from the Greeks into the barbarians fear beholding. **19.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three, parasangs twenty, into Iconium, of the Phrygia city remote. There he-remained three days.

Thence he-marches through the Lycaonia days'-journeys five, parasangs thirty. This the country he-turned-over to-plunder to-the Greeks, as hostile being. **20.** Thence Cyrus the Cilician into the Cilicia sends-away the quickest way; and he-sent-with her the soldiers whom Menon had and him. Cyrus but with the others marches through Cappadocia days'-journeys four, parasangs five and twenty, into Thoana, city inhabited, large and prosperous. There he-remained days three; in which Cyrus slew man Persian, Megaphernes, a-wearer-of-the-purple royal, and another certain of-the subordinates chief-officer, accusing to-be-conspiring-against him. **21.** (XXIX) Thence he-was-attempting to-throw-into into the Cilicia; the but entrance was road for-wagons steep mightily and impossible to-enter for-an-army, if any-one was-preventing. Was-said however also Syennesis to-be upon the heights guarding the entrance; wherefore they-waited a-day in the plain. On-the but following came messenger saying that having-left was Syennesis the heights, when he-knew that the of-Menon army already in Cilicia was within the mountains, and because triremes he-was-hearing sailing-around from Ionia into Cilicia Tamos having, the of-Lacedaemonians and of himself, Cyrus. **22.** Cyrus and accordingly went-up upon the mountains, nobody preventing, and he-saw the tents where the Cilicians were-guarding. Thence and he-went-down into plain large and beautiful, [well-]watered, and of-trees-of-all-kinds full and of-vines; much and also sesame and millet and panic and wheat and barley it-bears. A-mountain however it surrounds, steep and high on-all-sides from sea to sea. **23.** After-descending and through this plain he marched days'-journeys four, parasangs five and twenty, to Tarsi, of-the Cilicia city large and prosperous. There was the of-Syennesis royal-abodes, the Cilicians' king; through middle and of-the city flows a-river Cydnus by-name width of-two plethra. **24.** This the city abandoned the inhabiting, with Syennesis into fortress steep upon the mountains, except the the shops having; remained and also the along-the-side-of the sea living in Soli and in Issi. **25.** (XXXI.) Epyaxa but the of-Syennesis wife earlier than-Cyrus by-five days into Tarsi arrived; in however the crossing of-the mountains, the into the plain two companies of-the of-Menon army were-destroyed; the on-the-one-hand were-saying while-plundering something to-have-been-cut-down [that they while . . . were cut down] by the Cilicians, the on-the-other-hand after-being-abandoned and not being-able to-find the other (= the rest of the) army nor the roads, then, wandering-about, to-have-perished [that they were abandoned and . . . that they perished]; and they-were however-it-may-be these one-hundred hoplites. **26.** The but others when they-came, the both

city, the Tarsus, they-plundered, on-account-of the loss of-the fellow-soldiers being-angered, and the royal-abodes the in it. Cyrus however when marched-into into the city, was-sending-after the Syennesis unto himself; but he neither before for-nobody yet stronger than-himself into hands to-come said [*i. e.* that he had come, etc.] nor then for-Cyrus to-come was-he-willing before the wife him persuaded and pledges he-received. **27.** After but these, when they-were-come together with-one-another, Syennesis indeed gave to-Cyrus means much into the army, Cyrus and to-him gifts which is[= are]-thought by king (*i. e.* at court) honorable, horse golden-bridled and necklace golden and bracelets and dagger golden and gown Persian and the country no-longer to-be-ravaged; the and having-been-plundered slaves, if anywhere they-may-happen-in [with them], to-receive-back.

## CHAPTER III.

**1.** (XXXII.) There remained Cyrus and the army days twenty; the for soldiers not said to-go of-the forward; were-suspecting for now against king to-go; to-be-hired however not upon that they-said. First however Clearchus the of-himself soldiers was-compelling to-go; the however him both were-hitting and the pack-animals, the of-that-one, when he-might-begin to-go-forward. **2.** Clearchus however then indeed little escaped not to-be-stoned-to-death, later however when he-knew that not he-will-be-able to compel, he-led-together assembly of-the of-himself soldiers. And first indeed he wept much time standing; the however, looking, wondered and were-silent; thereupon however he-said such-(things). **3.** Men soldiers, (do) not wonder that hardly I-bear because-of-the present affairs. To-me for guest-friend Cyrus became and me fleeing from the fatherland the both other (-things) he-honored and ten-thousand he-gave darics; which I taking not into the private deposited for-me, nor wasted-in-luxury, but into (=for) you I-was-expending. **4.** (XXXIII.) And first indeed against the Thracians I-warred, and in-behalf-of the Greece, I-was-punishing with you, from the Chersonesus them driving-out wishing to-take-away-for-themselves the inhabiting Greeks the land. When-indeed however Cyrus called, taking you I-proceeded, in-order-that, if anything he-might-need, I-might-aid him in-return-for what well I-suffered by that-one. **5.** When however you (do) not wish to-proceed-together, necessity indeed for-me either, you betraying, the of-Cyrus friendship to-use, or, toward that-one being deceitful, with you to-be. If on-the-one-hand indeed just-things

I-shall-do not I-know, I-shall-prefer however, be-that-as-it-may, you, and with you, whatever may-be-necessary I-shall-suffer. And never shall-say nobody that I, Greeks leading to the barbarians, betraying the Greeks, the of-the barbarians friendship preferred. **6.** (XXXIV.) But when you to-me (do) not wish to-obey, I with you will follow and, whatever may-be-necessary, I shall suffer. I-think, for, you to-me to-be both fatherland and friends and allies, and with you on-the-one-hand would ( $\alpha\nu$ ) I-think be honored, wherever I-may-be, of-you however deprived being, not able I think would (I) be neither ( $\alpha\nu$ ) friend to-aid neither ( $\alpha\nu$ ) enemy to-ward-off. As me therefore going (gen. abs.) wherever may also you, so the opinion have. **7.** These he-said; the however soldiers, the both of-himself that one and the others, these hearing, that not he-said to-the-side-of king to-proceed, applauded; from-the-side-of however Xenias and Pasion more than two-thousand, taking the arms and the baggage encamped to-the-side-of Clearchus. **8.** Cyrus however by-these being-perplexed both and being-distressed, was-sending-after Clearchus; the (= he) however to-go on-the-one-hand not was-willing, secretly however of-the soldiers sending to-him messenger he-was-saying to-be-of-cheer as being-about-to-settle (gen. abs.) these into the needing. To-send-after however he-bade him. He-himself however not said to-go. **9.** (XXXV.) After however these, collecting the both of-himself soldiers and the coming-to to-him and of-the others the wishing, he spoke such. Men soldiers, the on-the-one-hand indeed of-Cyrus, evident that, thus have toward us just-as the our toward that-one; neither for we of-that-one still soldiers, when at-least not we follow-together him, nor that-one still to-us paymaster. That moreover to-be-wronged he-thinks by us I-know. **10.** So-that even he sending-after (gen. abs.) not I-am-willing to-go, the on-the-one-hand greatest, being ashamed because I-am-conscious to-myself all (things) having-deceived him, then also fearing lest, taking me, justice he-lay-upon on-account-of-what he-thinks by-me to-have-been-wronged. **11.** To-me accordingly seems not season to-be for-us to-sleep nor to-be-negligent of-ourselves, but to-deliberate whatever it-is-necessary to-do out-of these. And while both we remain here, to-be-considered to-me it-seems to-be how most-safely we-shall-remain, if and now it-seems-best to-go-away, how most-safely we-shall-go-away, and how the necessary we-shall-have; without for these neither of-a-general nor of-a-private use no. **12.** (XXXVI.) The however man of-much indeed a-worthy friend, to-whom a-friend he-may-be, most-hard however enemy, to-whom hostile he-may-be; he-has however a-force both infantry and cavalry and naval which (we) all equally see both and under-

stand; and for not-at-all far do-we-seem to-me from-him to-sit. So-that season to-say whatever any-one knows best to-be. These saying, he ceased. **13.** Out-of however this, were-rising the on-the-one-hand out-of the spontaneous, about-to-say what they-knew, the on-the-other-hand also by that (-one) instructed, showing of-what-nature was the difficulty, without the of-Cyrus knowledge, both to-remain and to-go-away. **14.** One however indeed said, pretending to-hasten as-quickly as-possible to proceed into the Greece generals on-the-one-hand to-choose, others, as-quickly as-possible, if Clearchus (does) not wish to-lead-away. The however necessities to-buy — the however market was in the barbarian army — and to-pack-up; going however Cyrus to-ask boats, that they-might-sail-away; if however (he-shall) not give these, a leader to-ask Cyrus, whoever through friendly the country shall-lead-away. If however not-even a-leader he-shall-give, to-form-in-line the quickest [way], to-send however also about-to-seize-in-advance the heights, in-order-that not shall-anticipate neither Cyrus neither the Cilicians seizing, of-whom many and much property we-have having-plundered. This-one indeed such said; after however him Clearchus said so-much. **15.** (XXXVII.) That on-the-one-hand about-to-command me this the military-plan (let) no-one of-you say; many, for, I-see-in through which by-me this not must-be-done; that on-the-other-hand to-the man, whom ye-may-choose, I-shall-obey in-what [way] possible most, in-order-that you-may-know that also to-be-ruled I-understand as any-one even else assuredly of-men. **16.** After him another stood-up, showing on-the-one-hand the folly of-the the boats to-ask ordering, just-as back the expedition Cyrus making (gen. abs.); showing on-the-other-hand that foolish it-was a-leader to-ask from-beside this-one for-whom we-harm the business. If however even to-the leader we-shall-trust, whom Cyrus may-give, what prevents also the heights for-us to-order Cyrus to-seize-in-advance? **17.** I, for, should-hesitate on-the-one-hand into the boats to-embark, which to-us he-might-give, lest us with-themselves the triremes he-sink, I-should-fear on-the-other-hand the leader, whom he-might-give, to-follow, lest us he-lead whence not it-will-be-possible to-come-out; I-should-wish however, unwilling, going-away, Cyrus (gen. abs.) to-elude him gone-away; which not possible is. But I say these on-the-one-hand follies to-be. **18.** (XXXVIII.) It-seems-best however to-me men, gone to Cyrus, whoever suitable, with Clearchus to-ask that-one what [use] he-wishes us to-use; and if on-the-one-hand the-business be similar to-just-what also formerly he-used the mercenaries, to-follow also us and not worse to-be than-the formerly him gone-up-with. **19.** If however greater the business than-the former ap-

pear and more-laborious and more-dangerous, to-claim-as-a-right either persuading us to-lead or, being-persuaded, toward friendship to-send-away; thus, for, both following, friends to-him and zealous we-would-follow and, going-away, safely we-would-go-away; whatever however at these-[things] he-may-say to-report hither; us however, hearing, at these-[things] to-deliberate. **20.** Seemed-best these, and men choosing with Clearchus they-send who ask Cyrus the seeming-best to-the army. The however replied that he-heard Abrocomas, hostile man, upon the Euphrates river to-be, being-distant twelve days'-journey; to-him accordingly he-said to-wish to-go; and-if on-the-one-hand he-be there, the justice he-said to-desire to-lay-upon him, if on-the-other-hand he-fled, we there at these shall-deliberate. **21.** Hearing however these, the chosen report to-the soldiers; to-the however suspicion indeed was that he-was-leading against king, yet however it-seemed-best to-follow. They-ask in-addition however pay; the however Cyrus promises a-half-obol-more to-all to-be-about-to-give than-what before they-bore, instead-of a-daric three half-darics of-the month to-the soldier; that however against king he-was-leading not-even there heard nobody in at-least the evident.

## A FREE TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I., II.

### CHAPTER I.

**1.** Of Darius and Parysatis are born two sons; the elder, Artaxerxes; the younger, Cyrus. But when Darius was sick and suspected the end of his life to be near, he wished both of his sons to be present. **2.** Now the elder happened to be present; but Cyrus is summoned from the province of which he had made him satrap, as he had appointed him general also of all who assemble in the plain of Castolus. So Cyrus goes up, taking Tissaphernes as a friend; and having also three hundred hoplites of the Greeks and Xenias the Parrhasian as their commander. **3.** But when Darius died and Artaxerxes was established on the throne, Tissaphernes accuses Cyrus to his brother, charging that he was plotting against him. And the king believes him and arrests Cyrus, with the purpose of putting him to death; but his mother begs Cyrus off and sends him back again to his province. **4.** But as he went back, after incurring danger and disgrace, he plans that he may never again be in the power of his brother, but rule as king in his stead, if he shall be able. Now both the mother, Parysatis, was assisting Cyrus, since she loved him more than the reigning Artaxerxes. **5.** And if any one came to him from the king, Cyrus used to send them back, so disposed that they were more friendly to him than to the king. And he saw to the barbarians about him, that they might be both able to fight and friendly to him. **6.** His Greek force he collected, hiding it as much as possible, in order that he might take the king thoroughly unprepared. He made his collection as follows. He ordered the captains of all the garrisons which he had in the cities to procure men of Peloponnesus, as many and as good as possible, declaring that Tissaphernes was conspiring against his cities. For the Ionian cities had formerly been given by the king to Tissaphernes, but at this time had all revolted to Cyrus, except Miletus. **7.** And Tissaphernes perceiving that in Miletus they were deliberating upon similar measures, namely, to revolt to Cyrus, slew

some and banished others. But Cyrus, taking the fugitives under his protection and collecting an army, besieged Miletus by land and sea and endeavored to restore them. And this was a second pretext he had for collecting an army. **8.** And sending to the king, he kept urging that, because he was a brother of his, those cities should be given to himself rather than be in the province of Tissaphernes, and his mother was cooperating with him in this; so that the king did not detect the conspiracy against himself, but he thought that by warring with Tissaphernes, he was squandering his means upon his armies; so that he felt no anger at their being at war. For Cyrus continually sent in the incoming revenues to the king from the cities which belonged to Tissaphernes, but happened to be in his possession. **9.** But another army was collected for him in the Chersonesus which lies directly opposite Abydus, in the following manner. Clearchus was an exile from Sparta; Cyrus came to know him and admired him, and gave him ten thousand darics. And he took the money and raised an army with these means, and sallying forth from the Chersonesus, carried on war with those Thracians who lived beyond the Hellespont, and continually aided the Greeks; so that the cities of the Hellespont voluntarily contributed means for him for the support of his soldiers. And this army also was thus supported for him in secret. **10.** And Aristippus the Thessalian happened to be a guest-friend of his, and, hard pressed by his adversaries at home, he comes to Cyrus and asks him for two thousand darics and three months' pay, believing that thus he would get the better of his adversaries. But Cyrus gives him about four thousand darics and six months' pay, and begs him not to conclude with his adversaries before he shall have consulted him. And thus again the army in Thessaly was supported for him in secret. **11.** But Proxenus the Boeotian, a guest-friend of his, he bade to take as many men as possible and come to him, stating that he desired to march against the Pisidians, on the ground that the Pisidians were giving his country trouble. And Sophaenetus the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaean — they too being friends — he bade to take as many men as possible and come to him, saying that he was about to fight Tissaphernes with the aid of the exiles from Miletus. And so they did.

## CHAPTER II.

**1.** But when at length it seemed to him good to go inland, he made as his pretext a desire to banish the Pisidians wholly from their country; and he collects ostensibly against these both his barbarian and Greek forces. He also sends word to Clearchus to take whatever army he had and to come there, and to Aristippus to make peace with his opponents at home and to send him the army which he had; and to Xenias the Arcadian, who had charge of the mercenary force in the cities, he sends word to come, taking all his men, excepting as many as were necessary to guard the citadels. **2.** He called those also who were besieging Miletus, and urged the fugitives to take the field with him, promising them that, if he should successfully accomplish the objects for which he was taking the field, he would not rest until he should restore them to their homes. And they cheerfully obeyed, for they trusted him, and took their arms and came to Sardis. **3.** So now both Xenias came to Sardis, with the garrison of the cities, — about four thousand hoplites, — and Proxenus came with about fifteen hundred hoplites and five hundred light-armed soldiers, and Sophaenetus the Stymphalian with one thousand hoplites, and Socrates the Achaean with about five hundred hoplites, and Pasion the Megarian came with three hundred hoplites and three hundred targeteers; both Pasion and Socrates were among those in the field before Miletus. **4.** These came to him at Sardis; but Tissaphernes, seeing these movements and thinking the preparation to be too great to be directed against the Pisidians, proceeds as rapidly as possible to the king with about five hundred horsemen. **5.** And the king, in truth, when he heard from Tissaphernes of the equipment of Cyrus, made preparations against him.

But Cyrus, with the forces which I have mentioned, sets out from Sardis, and marches through Lydia, three days' journey, twenty-two parasangs, to the river Maeander; the width of this was two plethra, and there was a bridge over it, made of boats. **6.** This he crosses and marches one day's journey, eight parasangs, through Phrygia to Colossae, — a populous city, prosperous and large. There he remained seven days, and Menon the Thessalian arrived with a thousand hoplites and five hundred targeteers, — Dolopians, Aenianians, and Olynthians. **7.** Thence he marches a three days' journey, twenty parasangs, to Celaenae, a populous city of Phrygia, large and prosperous. Cyrus had a royal palace there, and a park full of

wild animals, which he used to hunt on horseback whenever he desired to exercise himself and his horses. Through the middle of the park flows the Maeander river, and its sources rise under the palace; it flows through the city Celaenae. **8.** The great king also has a strongly built palace in Celaenae, over the sources of the river Marsyas, at the foot of the citadel; this river also flows through the city and empties into the Maeander; the width of the Marsyas is twenty-five feet. It is said that here Apollo conquered Marsyas, who contended with him in musical skill, and flayed him and hung his skin in the cave from which the sources issue; and for this reason the river is called Marsyas. **9.** It is said that Xerxes, when he was returning from Greece after his defeat in the famous battle, built that palace there, and the citadel of Celaenae. There Cyrus remained thirty days; and Clearchus the Lacedaemonian exile arrived with a thousand hoplites, eight hundred Thracian peltasts, and two hundred Cretan bowmen. And at the same time Sosis the Syracusan came with three hundred hoplites, and Sophraetetus the Arcadian with a thousand hoplites. And there Cyrus reviewed and enumerated the Greeks in the park, and the entire number of hoplites was eleven thousand, and of the peltasts about two thousand. **10.** Thence he marches two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Peltae, a populous city. There he remained three days, during which Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycaean sacrifices and gave an athletic contest; and the prizes were golden strigils; and Cyrus also viewed the contest. Thence he marches two days' journey, twelve parasangs, to Ceramon-agera, a populous city, and on the frontier toward the country of Mysia. **11.** Thence he marches three days' journey, thirty parasangs, to Caÿster-plain, a populous city. There he remained five days, and more than three months' pay was due the soldiers, and they went frequently to headquarters and demanded it. But he put them off by uttering promises, and he was evidently annoyed; for it was not according to the character of Cyrus not to give when he had the means. **12.** There Epyaxa the wife of Syennesis, king of the Cilicians, came to Cyrus; and it was said that she gave Cyrus a great deal of money. Whether so or not, Cyrus then gave the army four months' pay. And the Cilician queen had about herself a guard of Cilicians and Aspendians; and it was said also that Cyrus had intercourse with the Cilician. **13.** Thence he marches a two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Thymbrium, a populous city. There was there, by the roadside, the so-called fountain of Midas, king of the Phrygians, at which it is said that Midas caught the Satyr by mixing it with wine. **14.** Thence he marches a two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Tyriacium,

a populous city. There he remained three days. And it is said that the Cilician queen asked Cyrus to show her the army. Wishing therefore to show it to her, he makes a review of the Greeks and the barbarians in the plain. **15.** And he ordered the Greeks to be so arranged and to so take their place as was their custom for battle, and each general to marshal his own men. They were therefore arranged four deep, and Menon with his soldiers held the right wing, and Clearchus and his men the left wing, while the other generals held the middle. **16.** Now Cyrus viewed first the barbarians, and they marched by, drawn up in troops and companies; and then he viewed the Greeks, riding past them in a chariot, the Cilician queen in a carriage. And they all had brazen helmets and purple tunics, and greaves, and shields which they had uncovered. **17.** But when he had ridden past all, he stopped his chariot in front of the middle of the phalanx, and sent Pigres the interpreter to the generals of the Greeks, and ordered them to present arms, and the whole phalanx to advance. The generals gave these announcements to the soldiers, and when the trumpet had sounded, they presented arms and advanced. And as the soldiers thereupon advanced more swiftly with shouting, they began to run of their own accord toward their tents. **18.** But great was the fear of the barbarians, and not only the Cilician queen fled in her chariot, but those in the marketplace left their wares and fled. The Greeks went to their tents with a laugh; and the Cilician queen wondered as she beheld the brightness and the good order of the army. But Cyrus was amused when he saw the fear inspired by the Greeks into the barbarians. **19.** Thence he marches a three days' journey, twenty parasangs, into Iconium, a frontier city of Phrygia. There he remained three days. Thence he marches through Lycaonia a five days' journey, thirty parasangs. This country he allowed the Greeks to plunder, on the ground that it was hostile. **20.** From this place Cyrus sends back the Cilician queen, by the shortest road, to Cilicia; and he sent with her the soldiers whom Menon led, and with them Menon himself. But Cyrus marches with the rest a four days' journey, twenty-five parasangs, through Cappadocia, to Thoana, a populous city, large and prosperous. There he remained three days; during which Cyrus put to death a Persian man, Megaphernes, a wearer of the royal purple, and a certain other powerful man of his subordinates, charging them with conspiracy against him. **21.** From this place he attempted to enter Cilicia; but the entrance was a wagon road, very steep and impossible for an army to enter, if any one prevented. And besides, Syennesis was said to be upon the heights, guarding the entrance; wherefore they remained a day in the plain. But

on the following day a messenger came saying that Syennesis had left the heights, since he learned that Menon's army was already in Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he heard that Tamos had command of triremes belonging to the Lacedaemonians and Cyrus himself which were sailing around from Ionia to Cilicia. **22.** And so Cyrus went upon the mountains, since no one hindered, and he saw the tents where the Cilicians kept guard. And thence he descended into a large and fertile plain, full of all kinds of trees and of vines; and it produces a great deal of sesame and panic, and millet and wheat and barley. And a mountain, steep and tenable as a stronghold, surrounds it on all sides from sea to sea. **23.** And descending through this plain he marched a four days' journey, twenty-five parasangs, to Tarsus, a large and prosperous city of Cilicia. And there was the royal residence of Syennesis, the Cilician king; and through the middle of the city flows a river, Cydnus by name, two plethra in width. **24.** This city, all the inhabitants, except those who had shops, deserted together with Syennesis for a strong fortress upon the mountains; but those remained, who dwelt by the sea-coast in Soli and in Issus. **25.** And Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, arrived in Tarsus five days before Cyrus; but in the passage of the mountains down into the plain two companies of Menon's army were destroyed. Some said that they were cut down while perpetrating some act of plunder; and others, that after being left behind, and losing the rest of the army and the roads, they then wandered about and were destroyed. At any rate, these were a hundred hoplites. **26.** But when the rest came in they sacked the city of Tarsus, as well as the palace in it, because they were angered at the loss of their comrades. But when Cyrus marched into the city he kept summoning Syennesis to come to him; but he not only declared that he had never before come into the power of any one stronger than himself, but was then unwilling to come to Cyrus before his wife had persuaded him and he had himself received pledges. **27.** But after this, when they were together, Syennesis gave Cyrus a great deal of money for his army: and Cyrus gave him gifts, which are considered honorable at court, — namely, a horse with a golden bridle, a golden necklace, bracelets, a golden short sword, and a Persian gown; also the promise that his country should no longer be plundered, and that the slaves should be returned which had been carried off in plunder if they should be found anywhere.

## THE WORDS OF BOOK I. OF THE ANABASIS

Arranged in the order of their first occurrence.

## CHAPTER I.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. καί, <i>and, also.</i>  | 18. οὖν, <i>therefore, now.</i>  |
| 2. γίγνομαι, 2 aor. ἐγενόμην, <i>to be born, become, be.</i>   | 19. τυγχάνω, 2 aor. ἔτυχον, <i>to happen.</i>  |
| 3. παῖς, παιδός, <i>boy.</i>   | 20. μετα-πέμπομαι, <i>to send after.</i>   |
| 4. δύο, δυοῖν, <i>two.</i>   | 21. ἀπό, with gen., <i>from.</i>   |
| 5. πρέσβυς, -εως, <i>old man; πρεσβύτερος, -ύτατος, older, oldest.</i>   | 22. ἀρχή, -ῆς, <i>beginning, government, province.</i>   |
| 6. μὲν . . . δέ, <i>on the one hand . . . on the other; often best rendered as here by emphasizing the preceding word.</i> | 23. ὅς, ἧ, ὅ, <i>who, which, what.</i>   |
| 7. νέος, -ώτερος, -ώτατος, <i>young, younger, youngest.</i>  | 24. αὐτός, -ή, -ό, <i>self, in the nom. and before the art.; same, after it; him, her it, alone.</i> |
| 8. ἐπεὶ, <i>when; ἐπὶ or ἐπὶν (= ἐπεὶ + ἄν) w. subj. whenever, when.</i>   | 25. σατράπης, -ου, <i>a satrap.</i>  |
| 9. δέ, <i>and, but.</i>  | 26. ποιέω, -ήσω, <i>to make.</i>   |
| 10. ἀσθενέω, impf. ἡσθένουν, fut. -ήσω, <i>to be sick.</i>   | 27. στρατηγός, -οῦ, <i>general.</i>  |
| 11. ὑπό-οπτεύω, impf. ὑπόπτεουν, fut. -εύσω, <i>to suspect.</i>  | 28. ἀπο-δείκνυμι, -δείξω, <i>to show forth; appoint.</i>   |
| 12. τελευτή, -ῆς, <i>end.</i>  | 29. πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; παντός, etc., <i>all, every.</i>   |
| 13. ὁ, ἡ, τό; τοῦ, τῆς, τοῦ, <i>the.</i>   | 30. ὅσος, -η, -ον, <i>as much (pl. many) as.</i>   |
| 14. βίος, -ου, <i>life.</i>  | 31. εἰς, with acc. <i>into; with numerals, about.</i>  |
| 15. βούλομαι, -ήσομαι, <i>to wish.</i>   | 32. πεδῖον, -ου, <i>plain.</i>   |
| 16. ἀμφότεροι, -αι, -α, <i>both.</i>   | 33. ἀθροίζω, -οίσω, <i>to collect; mid. assemble.</i>  |
| 17. παρ-εἰμι, impf. παρ-ἦν, <i>to be present, arrive.</i>  | 34. ἀναβαίνω, 2 aor. ἀν-έβην, <i>to go up.</i>   |
|  | 35. λαμβάνω, 2 aor. ἔλαβον, <i>to take, receive.</i>   |

36. *ὡς*, *as*, *as if*, *when*; to (Ch. II. § 4); with super. intens., *as possible* (§ 5). See H.<sup>1</sup> 651.
37. *φίλος*, -η, -ον, *friendly*, as subs. *a friend*.
38. *ἔχω*, impf. *εἶχον*, fut. *ἔξω* or *σχίσω*, *to have*, *to hold*.
39. *ὀπλίτης*, -ου, *heavy-armed soldier*.
40. *τριακόσιοι*, -αι, -α, *three hundred*.
41. *ἄρχων*, -οντος, *commander*.
42. *τελευτάω*, -ήσω, *to end* (life), *die*. See 12.
43. *καθίστημι*, *to settle*; 2 aor. *κατέστην*, *become settled*.
44. *βασιλεία*, -ῆς, *kingdom*.
45. *διαβάλλω* (to throw through), *to slander*.
46. *πρός*, with gen. *from*; with dat. *at*, *beside*; acc. *to*, *toward*; *against*.
47. *ἀδελφός*, -οῦ, *brother*.
48. *ἐπιβουλεύω*, -εύσω, *to plot against*. See 61.
49. *ὁ δέ* (not preceded by *ὁ μὲν*), *and he*, *but he*.
50. *πείθω*, *πείσω*, *to persuade*; mid. *οὔβη*.
51. *συλλαμβάνω*, 2 aor. *συνέλαβον*, *to seize*. See 35.
52. *ἀποκτείνω*, -κτενῶ, *ἀπέκτεινα*, *to kill*.
53. *μήτηρ*, *μητρός*, *mother*.
54. *ἔξαιτέω*, -ήσω, *demand from or off*, mid. *beg off*.
55. *ἀποπέμπω*, -ψω, *to send away or back*. See 20.
56. *πάλιν*, *back*, *again*.
57. *ἐπί*, with gen. *upon*; with dat. *upon*, *on*, *dependent upon* (= *in the power of*); with acc. *upon*, *against*.
58. *ἀπέρχομαι*, 2 aor. *ἀπῆλθον*, *to go away or back*.
59. *κινδυνεύω*, -εύσω, *to incur danger*.
60. *ἀτιμάζω*, -άσω, *ἠτίμασα*, *to dishonor*.
61. *βουλεύω*, -εύσω, *to plan*; mid. *deliberate*. See 48.
62. *ὅπως*, *how*, *how that*, *in order that*.
63. *μήποτε*, *never* (with subj., imper., etc.). See H. 1018, G.<sup>2</sup> 283, 1 and 2.
64. *ἔτι*, *still*, *yet*.
65. *εἰμί*, impf. *ἦν*, fut. *ἔσομαι*, *to be*, with gen. or dat. *belong to*. See 17.
66. *ἀλλά*, *but*.
67. *ἦν* (not *ἦν*, see 65), or *εἰάν*, *if*, with subj.
68. *δύναμαι*, impf. *ἐδυνάμην*, *to be able*.
69. *βασιλεύω*, -εύσω, *to be king*. See 44.
70. *ἀντί*, with gen., *instead of*.
71. *ἐκεῖνος*, -η, -ο, *that*.
72. *δή*, *now*, *indeed*: often best rendered by emphasizing preceding word.
73. *ὑπάρχω*, impf. *ὑπῆρχον*, fut.

<sup>1</sup> Hadley's Greek Grammar, revised by Allen.<sup>2</sup> Goodwin's Greek Grammar, edition of 1879.

- ξω, *to begin* (see 137); *to be* (§ 4, *to favor*, a rare sense).
74. *φιλέω*, -ήσω, *to love*.
75. *μᾶλλον*, *more*, *rather*.
76. *ἢ*, *than*; *ἢ . . . ἢ*, *either . . . or*.
77. *ὅστις*, *ἤτις*, *ὅτι*, *whoever*, *whichever*, *whatever*. See 23.
78. *ἀφικνέομαι*, 2 aor. *ἀφῆκόμην*, *to arrive*. See 17.
79. *παρά*, with gen. *from*; with dat. *by*, *near*; with acc. *to*.
80. *βασιλεύς*, -έως, *king*. See 69.
81. *οὕτω(ς)*, *so*, *thus*.
82. *διατίθημι*, *to dispose or affect*.
83. *ὥστε*, *so as*, *so that*.
84. *ἑαυτοῦ*, -ῆς, *himself*, *herself*.
85. *βάρβαρος*, -ου, *foreign*, *barbarian*.
86. *ἐπιμελέομαι*, impf. *ἐπεμελούμην*, *to care for*, with gen.
87. *πολεμέω*, -ήσω, *to carry on war*.
88. *τέ . . . καί*, *both . . . and*.
89. *ικανός*, -ή, -όν, *enough*, *competent*.
90. *εὐνοϊκῶς*, *well disposed*.
91. *δύναμις*, -εως, ἢ, *force*, *power*; see 68.
92. *μάλιστα*, *most*, *especially*: *ὡς μάλιστα*, *as much as possible*. See 75.
93. *κρύπτω*, -ψω, *to hide*, *cover*; *ἐπι-*, *to cover over*, *conceal*.
94. *ὅτι*, *that*, *because*, cf. 77; with super., intens. like *ὡς* (see 36), *as possible*.
95. *ἀπαράσκευος*, -ου; -ότερος, -ότατος, *unprepared*.
96. *ἴδε*, *thus*, *as follows*. See 81.
97. *συλλογή*, -ῆς, *collection*, *levy*.
98. *ὀπόσος*, -η, -ον, *as great as*, *as many as*.
99. *φυλακή*, -ῆς, *a garrison*.
100. *ἐν*, with dat., *in*.
101. *πόλις*, -εως, ἢ, *city*.
102. *παρ-αγγέλλω*, fut. *-ελῶ*, *send word to*, *command*.
103. *φρούρ-αρχος*, -ου, *a garrison-commander*.
104. *ἕκαστος*, -η, -ον, *each*; plur. *several*.
105. *άνήρ*, *άνδρός*, *man* (Lat. *vir*).
106. *πολύς*, *πλείων*, *πλείστος*, *much* or *many*, *more*, *most*.
107. *άγαθός*, -ή, -όν; *άμείνων*; *άριστος*, or *βελτίων*, *βέλτιστος*, *good*, *better*, *best*.
108. *γάρ*, *for*.
109. *ἀρχαῖος* -ᾶ, -ον (in the beginning, see 22), *old*, *ancient*; *τὸ ἀρχαῖον*, *formerly*.
110. *ἐκ*, *ἐξ*, with gen., *out of*, *from*.
111. *δίδωμι*, *δώσω* (H. 350; G. 123, 3), *to give*.
112. *τότε*, *then*.
113. *ἀφίστημι*, *ἀποστήσω* (H. 351, G. 123, 3), *to make to stand away*, *remove*; mid., with pf. and 2 aor. act., intrans., *stand aloof*, *revolt*.
114. *πλήν*, *except*.
115. *προ-αισθάνομαι*, 2 aor. *προησθόμην*, *to perceive beforehand*.
116. *οὗτος*, *αὕτη*, *τοῦτο*, *this*, contrast *αὐτός*, *αὐτή*, *αὐτό*, *self*, *same*, *him*, etc.



117. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *the one . . . the other*; plur. *these . . . those*; *some . . . others.*
118. ἀπο-κτείνω, -κτενῶ, ἀπ-έκτεινα, *to kill.*
119. ἐκ-βάλλω, ἐκ-βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἐξέβαλον, *throw out, expel.* See 45.
120. ὑπο-λαμβάνω, 2 aor. ὑπ-έλαβον, *to take under one's protection.* See 35, 51.
121. φεύγω, 2 aor. ἔφυγον, *to flee, be in exile.*
122. συλ-λέγω, -ξω, συν-έλεξα, *to collect.*
123. στρατεύμα, -ατος, τό, *army.*
124. πολιορκίω, -ήσω, *besiege.*
125. κατά, *down*; with gen. *down from*; with acc. *down along, according to, by.*
126. γῆ, γῆς, *earth, land.*
127. θάλαττα, -ης, *sea.*
128. πειράομαι, *to attempt.*
129. κατ-άγειν, *to lead back, restore.*
130. ἐκ-πίπτω, pf. ἐκ-πέπτωκα, *to fall out, be driven out, οἱ ἐκ-πεπτωκότες, the exiles.*
131. αὖ, *again.*
132. ἄλλος, -η, -ο, *another.*
133. πρόφασις, -εως, ἡ, *pretext.*
134. πέμπω, -ψω, *to send.* See 20, 55.
135. ἀξιῶ, impf. ἡξίουν, fut. -ώσω, *to deem worthy, demand (as deserved).*
136. οὐ, οἶ, ἑ, *himself.* See H. 677, a, G. 144, 2.
137. ἄρχω, impf. ἤρχον; fut. -ξω, *to begin (mid.); to rule (act.).* See 22.
138. συμ-πράττω, -άξω, *to do (something) with (another), cooperate with.*
139. ἐπιβουλή, -ῆς, *plot.* See 48.
140. οὐ, οὐκ or οὐχ, *not.* H. 88, G. 13, 2.
141. αἰσθάνομαι, impf. ἤσθανόμην, 2 aor. ἤσθόμην, *to perceive.* See 115.
142. νομίζω, fut. -ιῶ (to regard as custom, see 323), *think, suppose.*
143. ἀμφί, *about.*
144. δαπανᾶω, -ήσω, *to spend (money).*
145. οὐδείς, οὐδεμίᾱ, οὐδέν, *no one, nothing.*
146. ἄχθομαι, *to be vexed.*
147. δασμός, -οῦ, *revenue.*
148. κατ-αντιπέρας, *adv. with gen., opposite.*
149. ἴδε, ἦδε, τόδε, *this, the following.*
150. τρόπος, -ου, *turn, manner.*
151. φυγᾶς, -άδος, *fugitive, exile.* See 121.
152. συγ-γίγνομαι, impf. συν-εγγινόμην, 2 aor. συν-εγενόμην, *to become (see 2) with, become acquainted with, be with.*
153. ἀγαμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἠγάσθην, *to admire.*
154. μίριοι, -αι, -α, *ten thousand.*
155. δαρεικός, -οῦ, *a daric (\$3.60).*
156. χρῦσιον, -ου, *money*; χρῦσός, -οῦ, *gold.*

157. χρῆμα, -ατος, τό, *a thing used*; chief. plur., *goods, money.*
158. ὀρμάω, impf. ὄρμων, -ήσω, *set out, hasten.*
159. ὑπέρ, with gen., *over, in behalf of*; with acc., *over, beyond.*
160. οἰκέω, impf. ὄκουν, fut. -ήσω,  *dwell, inhabit.*
161. ἀφελέω, -ήσω, *aid, assist.*
162. συμ-βάλλω, *to throw or bring together*; mid. *contribute.* See 45, 119.
163. τροφή, -ῆς, *nourishment, support.*
164. στρατιώτης, -ου, *soldier.*
165. ἐκών, -οῦσα, ὄν, *voluntary.*
166. τρέφω, *to nourish, support.* See 163.
167. λανθάνω, 2 aor. ἔλαθον, *to escape notice*; often = *secretly.*
168. ξένος, -ου, *a foreigner who became a guest-friend to some one or entered military service abroad, a mercenary.*
169. πίζω, *to press, oppress.*
170. ὑπό, *under (dat. or acc.); by (gen.).*
171. οἶκοι, *at home.* H. 220, G. 190, n. 2.
172. ἀντι-στασιώτης, -ου, *member of a στάσις or faction, an opponent.*
173. ἔρχομαι, 2 aor. ἤλθον, *to go, come.*
174. αἰτέω, impf. ἤτουν, fut. -ήσω, *ask, demand.*
175. δισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *two thousand.*
176. τρεῖς, τρία, gen. τριῶν, *three.*
177. μῆν, μηνός, ὁ, *month.*
178. μισθός, -οῦ, *pay.*
179. περι-γίγνομαι, 2 aor. περι-εγενόμην, *become above, over-come.* See 2, 152.
180. ἄν, *postpos. particle.* See H. 857; G. 207.
181. τετρακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *four thousand.*
182. ἕξ, *six.*
183. δέομαι, δεήσομαι, *to want.*
184. μή, *not.* See II. 1018, G. 283.
185. πρόσθεν, *before, formerly*; π. . . πρίν, *before that.*
186. κατα-λύω, *dis-solve, to end (esp. a war).*
187. πρίν, *before.* See 185.
188. συμ-βουλεύω, *advise.* See 61.
189. κελεύω, -εύσω, *order.*
190. παρα-γίγνομαι, impf. παρ-εγγινόμην, 2 aor. παρ-εγενόμην, *to come to, arrive.* See 2, 152, 179.
191. στοατεύομαι, *engage in war, make an expedition.*
192. πράγμα, -ατος, τό, *deed, affair*; pl. *affairs, business, trouble.*
193. παρ-έχω, impf. παρ-είχον, *to furnish.* See 38.
194. χώρα, -ᾶς, *country, land.*
195. σύν, with dat., *with.*

## CHAPTER II.

196. δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, to think; seem, seem good.  
 197. ἤδη, already, now.  
 198. πορεύομαι, εὔσομαι, pass. dep., to proceed.  
 199. ἄνω, -τέρω, τάτω, up, upwards.  
 200. παντά - πᾶσι(ν), altogether, wholly.  
 201. βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν, barbarian, foreign.  
 202. ἐνταῦθα, there.  
 203. ἦκω, to come, arrive. H. 827, G. 200, n. 3.  
 204. συν-αλλάττω, -άξω, to change (and bring) together, to reconcile.  
 205. προ-ίστημι. στήσω. -έστησα, trans. to set before or over; intrans. to set over, command: 2 aor. -έστην, -έστηκα.  
 206. ξενικός, -ή, -όν, mercenary.  
 207. ἀκρό-πολις, -εως. ἡ, acropolis, citadel.  
 208. φυλάττω, -άξω, to guard.  
 209. καλέω, έσω. ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, call, summon.  
 210. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχόμεν, to promise.  
 211. εἰ, if.  
 212. καλῶς, honorably, well.  
 213. κατα-πράττω, -ξω, to do effectually, accomplish.  
 214. παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα. make to cease; mid. to cease, pause.
215. οἴκα-δε, homeward. H. 217, G. 61.  
 216. ἡδέως, ἡδῖον, ἡδιστα, pleasantly, gladly.  
 217. πιστεύω, εὔσω, trust, believe.  
 218. ὄπλον, -ον, usually pl. armor.  
 219. πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, five hundred.  
 220. χίλιοι, -αι, -α, a thousand.  
 221. γυμνής, -ήτος, light-armed soldier.  
 222. πελταστής, -οῦ, peltast. See 1268.  
 223. κατα-νοέω, observe carefully. See 821.  
 224. μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα; μείζων (H. 68, G. 16, 7 (b)); μέγιστος, great.  
 225. ἡγέομαι, -ήσομαι, lead, consider (cf. L. *duco*).  
 226. παρα-σκευή, -ῆς, preparation.  
 227. ἧ (sc. ὁδῶ. in which way), as.  
 228. ταχύς, -εία, -ύ; θάττων (H. 74, G. 17, 2, n at end); τάχιστος quick.  
 229. ἵππεύς, -έως, horseman.  
 230. ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, to hear.  
 231. στόλος, -ον, expedition.  
 232. ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι, to prepare against or in turn. See 226.  
 233. φημί, fut. ἐρῶ (IV., 8), 2 aor. εἶπον (III. 7), pf. εἶρηκα, say; οὐ φημι, deny, refuse.

234. ἐξ-ελαύνω, fut. ἐξ-ελῶ, ἐξ-ήλασα, to march.  
 235. διά, with gen. through; with acc. on account of.  
 236. σταθμός, -οῦ, station, day's march.  
 237. παρασάγγης, -ου (Persian), parasang, league.  
 238. εἴκοσι(ν), twenty.  
 239. ποταμός, -οῦ river.  
 240. εὖρος, -ους τό. breadth, width.  
 241. πλέθρον, -ου. plethron (101 ft.).  
 242. γέφυρα, -ās, bridge.  
 243. ἐπι-εμι, impf. ἐπ-ἦν, to be upon.  
 244. ζεύ-νυμι, ζεύξω ζευξα, ζευγμαι (L. *ju(n)g o*), to yoke, join together.  
 245. πλοῖον, -ον, boat.  
 246. ἑπτά, seven.  
 247. δια-βαίνω, 2 aor. δι-έβην, go through, cross.  
 248. εἰς μία, ἐν, gen. ἐνός, one.  
 249. ὀκτώ, eight.  
 250. εὐδαίμων, -ον, gen. -ονος, prosperous.  
 251. μένω μενῶ, ἔμεινα, to remain.  
 252. ἡμέρα, -ās, day.  
 253. ἐντεῦθεν, thence.  
 254. βασιλεια, -ων, plur. of adj. (see 80), royal palace.  
 255. παράδεισος, -ου, park; deriv. PARADISE.  
 256. ἄγριος, -ᾶ, -ον, wild; fr. ἀγρός, -οῦ (L. *ager*), field, country.  
 257. θηρίον, -ον, dim. (in form only) of θήρ, θηρός, a wild animal.  
 258. πλήρης, -ες, gen. -ους, full.
259. θηρεύω, -εύσω, hunt, catch. See 257.  
 260. ἵππος, -ου, horse. See 229.  
 261. ὁπότε, when, whenever.  
 262. γυμνάζω, -άσω, to train (see 1243), exercise.  
 263. μέσος, -η, -ον, middle; τὸ μέσον, centre (= μεδ-γος, L. *med-ius*).  
 264. ῥέω, ῥεύσομαι, 2 aor. ἐ-ρ-ρύην, to flow.  
 265. πηγή, -ῆς, fountain, source, chief. in plur.  
 266. ἐρμυμός, -ή -όν, fortified; from ἐρύομαι, to defend.  
 267. ἐμ-βάλλω, -βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἐν-έβαλον, to throw into; of a river, to empty.  
 268. πέντε, five.  
 269. πούς, ποδός ὁ (L. *pe(d)s*), FOOT.  
 270. λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, to say, speak.  
 271. ἐκ-δέρω, -δερώ, ἐξ ἔδειρα, to skin (off, ἐκ), flay.  
 272. νικάω, -ήσω, to conquer.  
 273. ἐρίζω, -ίσω (ἔρις, -ιδος, strife), strive with.  
 274. περί, with gen., about = concerning; dat. and acc. around, about.  
 275. σοφία, -ās, skill, wisdom.  
 276. δέρμα, ατος, τό, skin. See 271.  
 277. κρεμά-νυμι, κρεμάσω, ἐκρέμασα to hang (trans.).  
 278. ἄντρον, -ον, cave; L. *antrum*.  
 279. ὅθεν, whence, where.  
 280. ὅτε, when.

281. ἡττάομαι, pass. dep. ἡττηθήσομαι, pf. ἡττημαι, ἡττήθην, to be ἡττων (comp. of κακός), inferior, worsted, defeated.
282. μάχη, -ης, battle.
283. ἀποχωρέω, -ήσω, withdraw, retreat.
284. οικοδομέω, -ήσω, ὠκοδόμησα, to build.
285. τριάκοντα, thirty.
286. ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, eight hundred.
287. τοξότης, -ου, a bowman; τόξον, -ον, a bow.
288. διακόσιοι, -αι, -α, two hundred.
289. ἅμα, at the same time; with, with dat.
290. ἐξέτασις, -εως, ἡ, inspection (ἐξετάζω, to inspect).
291. ἀριθμός, -οῦ, number, numbering.
292. σύμπᾶς, σύμπᾶσα, σύμπᾶν, all together, all in a body; τὸ σύμπᾶν, on the whole. See V. 9.
293. δέκα, ten.
294. θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσσα, sacrifice.
295. ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ, contest.
296. τίθημι, θήσω ἔθηκα, put, place; institute: τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, to stack arms, stand under arms.
297. ἀθλον, -ου, prize.
298. στλεγγίς, ἴδος, ἡ, flesh-scrapers or comb.
299. χρυσοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν, golden; χρυσός, -οῦ, gold.
300. θεωρέω, -ήσω, to view, inspect.
301. δώδεκα, twelve.
302. ἀγορά, ἄς, market-place, market.
303. ἔσχατος, -η, -ον, last, farthest.
304. ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα, to owe.
305. πολλῶκις, often. See 106.
306. εἶμι, imperf. ἦα or ἦειν, inf. ἰέναι, part. ἰών, to go. II. 477, α; G. 127, II., κ. 2.
307. θύρα, -ᾶς, door, gate.
308. ἀπαίτew, -ήσω, ἀπῆτησα, demand back.
309. ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, hope, promise.
310. διάγω, -άξω, lead through; of time, continue.
311. δῆλος, -η, -ον, evident.
312. ἀνιάω, ἔσω, to grieve; fr. ἀνία, as grief.
313. ἀποδίδωμι, -δώσω, ἀπέδωκα, to give back, to pay. See 109.
314. γυνή, -αικός, ἡ, woman, wife.
315. στρατία, ἄς, army.
316. τέτταρις, -α; gen. -ων, four.
317. φύλαξ, -ακος, guard.
318. ὁδός, -οῦ, ἡ, way, road.
319. κρήνη, -ης, spring, fountain.
320. οἶνος, ου, for Φοῖνος, L. vinum, WINE.
321. κεράννυμι, κεράσω, ἐκέρασα, to mix, mingle.
322. ἐπιδείκνυμι, -δείξω, ἐπέδειξα, to show forth, exhibit. See 28.
323. νόμος, -ου, law, custom.
324. τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, to arrange, order.
325. ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα, trans., to make to stand (station, halt, etc.); 2 aor. ἔστην, pf. ἔστηκα, plupf. ἐστήκειν (or

- εἶσ-), intrans., to stand. See 113.
326. συντάττω, -ξω, to arrange together, draw up. See 324.
327. δεξιός, ἄ, ὄν, right; ἐν δεξιᾷ, on the right.
328. εὐώνυμος, -ον, left.
329. πρῶτος, -η, -ον, first; πρῶτον, adv., first, at first.
330. παρελαύνω, -ελῶ, -ήλασα, to ride along.
331. ἄλη, -ης, troop (of horse).
332. τάξις, -εως, ἡ, order (esp. in milit. sense, array, rank; company, etc.). See 324.
333. εἶτα, then.
334. ἄρμα, -ατος, τό, chariot.
335. ἀρμ-άμαξα, -ης, carriage (covered).
336. κράνος, -ους, τό, helmet.
337. χαλκοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν, copper, bronze.
338. χιτών, -ῶνος, ὁ, tunic.
339. φοινικοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν, purple (cf. Φοίνικες, Phoenicians, first to discover its use).
340. κνημῖς, -ίδος, ἡ, a greave.
341. ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, shield.
342. ἐκκαλύπτω, -ψω, to uncover.
343. ἐπειδή, when, since; stronger than ἐπεὶ. See 72.
344. πρό, with gen., before; in behalf of.
345. φάλαγξ, -αγγος, ἡ, phalanx.
346. ἑρμηνεύς, -έως, ὁ, interpreter.
347. προβάλλω, -βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἐβαλον, to throw before; mid., of arms, to present. See 45.
348. ἐπιχωρέω, -ήσω, to advance. See 283.
349. ὅλος, -η, -ον, whole, all.
350. προείπον, 2 aor. of προλέγω, to speak forth, proclaim.
351. σαλπίζω, -ιγξω ἐσάλπιγξα, to sound the σάλπιγξ or trumpet.
352. ἔπι-εμι, imperf. ἐπῆειν, to go (or come) on, forward or against. See 306.
353. πρό-εμι, to go forward.
354. κραυγή, -ῆς, shout.
355. αὐτόματος, -ον, of one's own accord, deriv. AUTOMATON.
356. δρόμος, -ου, a running.
357. σκηνή, -ῆς, a tent.
358. φόβος, -ου, fear.
359. καταλείπω, -ψω, 2 aor. κατέλιπον, to leave behind, leave.
360. ὄνια, -ων, τά, wares. See 767.
361. γέλως, -ωτος, ὁ, laughter.
362. ὁράω, imperf. ἑώραν, fut. ὄψομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον, to see.
363. λαμπρότης, -ητος, ἡ, splendor (fr. αἰ. λ. λαμπρός, bright).
364. θαυμάζω, ἄσω, to wonder at, admire.
365. ἡδομαι, pass. dep., ἡσθήσομαι, ἡσθην, to be pleased.
366. ἐπιτρέπω, -ψω, -έτρεψα, turn over to, entrust, permit.
367. διαρπάζω, -άσομαι, to plunder (thoroughly).
368. πολέμιος, -ᾶ, -ον, hostile; οἱ πολ., the enemy.
369. συμπέμπω, -ψω, to send with.

370. φοινικιστής, -οῦ, purple-wearer (see 339), courtier (rare).  
 371. βασιλείος, -α, -ον, royal. See 80.  
 372. ἕτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, other (of two).  
 373. τις, τι, some or any one, a certain.  
 374. ὑπ-αρχος, -ου, an under commander, lieutenant.  
 375. δυνάστης, -ου, powerful man, chief. See 68.  
 376. αἰτιάζομαι, ἄσομαι, to accuse.  
 377. εἰσ-βάλλω, to throw into of an army, to enter; of a river, to empty.  
 378. εἰσ-βολή, -ῆς, entrance.  
 379. ἀμαξιτός, ὄν, for or belonging to a wagon. See 787.  
 380. ὄρθιος, -ᾱ, -ον steep.  
 381. ἰσχυρῶς, mightily, = very as in colloq. Eng.  
 382. ἀμήχανος, -ον impracticable.  
 383. εἰσ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. εἰσ-ἦλθον, to go into, enter. See 58.  
 384. κωλύω, -ύσω, to hinder.  
 385. ἄκρος, -ᾱ, -ον, highest; τὰ ἄκρα, the heights.  
 386. διό (= δι' ὅ), wherefore.  
 387. ὑστεραίος, -ᾱ, -ον, following; τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, on the following day.  
 388. ἄγγελος, -ου, messenger.  
 389. λείπω, -ψω, 2 aor. ἔλιπον, to leave.  
 390. εἶσω, within; τὸ εἶσω, the inner.  
 391. ὄρος, -ους, τό, mountain.  
 392. τριήρης, -ες; gen. -ους, trireme.

393. περι-πλέω, -πλεύσομαι, to sail around.  
 394. οὐ, where.  
 395. κατα-βαίνω, 2 aor. κατα-έβην, to go down, descend. See 34.  
 396. καλός, -ή, -όν; καλλίων, κάλλιστος, beautiful.  
 397. ἐπί-ρρυτος, -ον, overflowed (see 264), well-watered.  
 398. δένδρον, -ου, tree.  
 399. παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν, of every kind.  
 400. σύμ-πλεως, -ων (all) together full of, quite full of.  
 401. ἄμπελος, -ου, ἡ, vine.  
 402. σήσαμον, -ου, sesame (rare).  
 403. μελίμη, -ης, panic, kind of millet (rare).  
 404. κέγχρος, -ου, millet (rare).  
 405. πῦρός, -οῦ, wheat, usu. plur.  
 406. κριθή, -ῆς, barley.  
 407. φέρω, fut. οἴσω, to bear, carry.  
 408. περι-έχω, to hold (its way) round, surround.  
 409. ὄχυρός, -ᾱ, -όν (tenable, from ἔχω), strong.  
 410. ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν, lofty.  
 411. πάντη, on every side.  
 412. ἐλαύνω, fut. ἐλώ, ἤλασα, drive, ride. See 234.  
 413. ὄνομα, -ατος, τό, name.  
 414. ἐκ-λείπω, -ψω, 2 aor. ἐξ ἔλιπον, to leave out, behind, desert. See 389.  
 415. ἐν-οικέω, -ήσω, ἐν-όκησα, to inhabit.  
 416. μετά, with gen., with; with acc. after; μ. ταῦτα, after this.

417. χωρίον, -ον, place, esp. a stronghold.  
 418. καπηλείον, -ου, shop, inn.  
 419. πρότερος, -ᾱ, -ον (comp. of πρό, see 344), before, sooner.  
 420. ὑπερ-βολή, -ῆς, crossing over, cf. 378.  
 421. λόχος, -ου, company (of 100 men).  
 422. ἀπ-όλλυμι, fut. -ολέσω or -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, to destroy; pass. to perish.  
 423. ἀρπάζω, -άσομαι, to seize, plunder. See 367.  
 424. κατα-κόπτω, -ψω, 2 aor. pass. κατα-εκόπη, to cut down or in pieces.  
 425. ὑπο-λείπω, -ψω, 2 aor. -έλιπον, to leave behind. See 414.  
 426. εὕρισκω, εὕρησσω, 2 aor. εὔρον, to find.  
 427. οὐδέ, nor, not even.  
 428. πλανάομαι, -ήσομαι, to wander.  
 429. ἑκατόν, a hundred.  
 430. ὄλεθρος, -ου, destruction. See 422.  
 431. συ-στρατιώτης, -ου, fellow-soldier.  
 432. ὀργίζομαι, fut. ἰοῦμαι, to be angry. See 790.  
 433. εἰσ-ελαύνω, to ride or march into. See 412.  
 434. οὔτε, nor; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor.

435. πῶ, yet.  
 436. κρείττων, -ον, better, stronger, comp. of ἀγαθός. See 107.  
 437. χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ, hand.  
 438. ἐθέλω, less often θέλω, fut. ἐθελήσω, to be willing, to wish.  
 439. πίστις, -εως, ἡ, faith, fidelity; pledge.  
 440. ἀλλήλων, -οις, each other.  
 441. δῶρον, -ου, gift.  
 442. τίμιος, -α, -ον, honorable, honored.  
 443. χρῦσο χάλινος, -ον, with gold-studded) bridle.  
 444. στρεπτός, -ή, -όν, twisted; as subs. necklace.  
 445. ψέλιον, -ου, bracelet.  
 446. ἀκινάκης, -ου (Persian), short-sword.  
 447. στολή, -ῆς, robe.  
 448. μηκέτι, no longer (with subj., imper., etc.).  
 449. ἀφ-αρπάζω, -άσομαι, to plunder from. See 423, 367.  
 450. ἀνδράποδον, -ου, slave.  
 451. πού, indef., somewhere, anywhere. (ποῦ, where?).  
 452. ἐν-τυγχάνω, 2 aor. ἐν-έτυχον, to happen upon, fall in with. See 19.  
 453. ἀπο-λαμβάνω, fut. ἀπο-λήψομαι, 2 aor. ἀπ ἔλαβον, to receive from or back. See 35.

## CHAPTER III.

454. πρόσω or πόρρω (III. 12), forward, further, so εἰς τὸ π.; with gen. far from (III. 12).  
 455. μισθῶ, -ῶσω, to hire.  
 456. βιάζομαι, -άσομαι, mid. dep., to force.  
 457. βάλλω, βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἔβαλον, to throw, hit.  
 458. ὑπο-ζύγιον, -ου [ζυγόν, YOKE], beast of burden.  
 459. μικρός, -ά, -όν, little, small.  
 460. ἐκ-φεύγω, 2 aor. ἐξέφυγον, to flee out or away, escape. See 121.  
 461. κατα-πετρόω, -ῶσω, to stone (down) to death.  
 462. ὕστερον, afterwards, adj. ὕστερος, -ᾶ, -ον, after, later.  
 463. γιγνώσκω, 2 aor. ἔγνω, to know.  
 464. συν-άγω, 2 aor. συνήγαγον, bring together, collect. See 129.  
 465. ἐκ-κλησιᾶ, -ᾶς, assembly. See 209.  
 466. δακρύω, -ύσω, to weep.  
 467. χρόνος, -ου, time.  
 468. σιωπάω, -ήσομαι, to be silent.  
 469. τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε, such; τοι-άδε, such as follows.  
 470. χαλεπῶς, hardly, angrily.  
 471. ἐγώ, gen. ἐμοῦ, I.  
 472. πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ, father-land.  
 473. τιμάω, -ήσω, to honor.  
 474. ἴδιος, -ᾶ -ον, own, private.
475. κατα-τίθημι, -θήσω, to put down or away. See 296.  
 476. καθ-ηδύ-παθείω, -ήσω, to squander in luxury (rare).  
 477. ἡμεῖς, gen. ἡμῶν, you (plur.).  
 478. τιμωρέω, -ήσω, to avenge; mid. avenge one's self on, punish.  
 479. ἀφ-αιρέω, take from, deprive.  
 480. ἵνα, in order that, that.  
 481. εὖ, well.  
 482. πάσχω, πείσομαι, 2 aor. ἔπαθον, to suffer; εὖ (or κακῶς) π. ὑπὸ —, to be well (or ill) treated by  
 483. συμ-πορεύομαι, proceed with.  
 484. ἀνάγκη, -ης, necessity; with or without ἐστί, it is necessary.  
 485. προ-δίδωμι, 2 aor. προ-έδωκα, give up, betray. See 111.  
 486. φιλία, -ᾶς, friendship.  
 487. χρᾶομαι, -ήσομαι, mid. dep. to use, with dat.  
 488. ψεύδω, ψεύσω, to deceive (by lies); mid. lie, be false.  
 489. δίκαιος, -ᾶ, -ον, just.  
 490. οἶδα, subj. εἰδῶ, opt. εἰδείην, imper. ἴσθι, inf. εἰδέναι, pt. εἰδώς, 2 plpf. ᾔδειν, to know.  
 491. αἰρέω, -ήσω, 2 aor. εἶλον, to take; mid. to choose. See 479.  
 492. οὐποτε, never. See 63.  
 493. ἄγω, ἄξω, 2 aor. ἤγαγον, to lead, carry. See 464.

494. ἔπομαι, impf. εἰπόμην, to follow, with dat.  
 495. σύμ-μαχος, -ου, ally. See 282.  
 496. οἴομαι or οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, φήθην, to think.  
 497. ὅπου, where; ὅ. ἄν, wherever (with subj.).  
 498. ἔρημος, -ον, barren, desert; with gen. deprived of, without.  
 499. ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν, hostile: as subs. enemy.  
 500. ἀλέξω, ἀλέξομαι, ἠλεξάμην, to ward off: mid. requite.  
 501. ὅπη, where, whither: ὅ. ἄν, wherever (with subj.).  
 502. γνώμη, -ης, judgment, opinion. See 463.  
 503. σκευοφόρος, -ον, baggage animals; plur. usu. baggage.  
 504. στρατοπεδεύομαι, -εύσομαι, to encamp.  
 505. ἀπορέω, -ήσω, to be at a loss.  
 506. λυπέω, -ήσω, to pain, grieve.  
 507. λάθρᾳ, secretly, without the knowledge of.  
 508. θαρρέω, -ήσω, be courageous.  
 509. δεῖ, δέη, δέοι, δεῖν, part. δέον, it is necessary, there is need.  
 510. προσ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. προσήλθον, to come to. See 383.  
 511. ὡσπερ, just as, as.  
 512. ἡμέτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, our, ours.  
 513. γέ, encl. part., at least; often best translated by emphasis on the word before it.  
 514. συν-έπομαι, to follow with, accompany. See 494.
515. μισθο-δότης, -ου, paymaster. See 178 and 111.  
 516. μέντοι, indeed, yet, however.  
 517. ἀδικέω, -ήσω, to be unjust, injure.  
 518. αἰσχυνω, to shame; pass. be ashamed.  
 519. σύν-οἶδα, 2 pf. am conscious.  
 520. ἐμαυτοῦ, of myself.  
 521. ἔπειτα, thereupon, next, moreover.  
 522. δέιδω, epic pres., whence ἔδεισα, δέδοικα, and 2 pf. δέδια, with pres. sense, to fear.  
 523. δίκη, -ης, justice, punishment.  
 524. ἐπι-τίθημι, put upon; ἐ. δίκην, inflict punishment.  
 525. ὥρᾳ, -ᾶς, time, season.  
 526. καθ-εύδω, to sleep.  
 527. ἀμελέω, -ήσω, to be careless, neglect. Cf. 86.  
 528. χρή, inf. χρῆναι it is necessary, one must.  
 529. ἕως, while, until.  
 530. αὐτοῦ, gen. of place, here.  
 531. σκεπτέος, -ᾶ -ον, verb. adj., to be considered.  
 532. ἀσφαλῶς, -έστερον, -έστατα, safely.  
 533. ἀπ-εἰμι, to go away. See 306.  
 534. ἐπιτηδείος, -ᾶ -ον, suitable; τὰ ἐ. provisions.  
 535. ἄνευ, prep. with gen., without.  
 536. ἰδιώτης, -ου, a private person. See 474.  
 537. ὄφελος, τό, profit.  
 538. ἄξιος, -ᾶ, -ον, worth, worthy. See 135.

539. χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, HARD, difficult, harsh. See 470.
540. πεζός, -ή, -όν, foot-; οἱ π. infantry; πεζῇ, on foot (IV. 18).
541. ἵππικός, -ή, -όν, pertaining to a horse; cavalry. See 260.
542. ναυτικός, -ή, -όν, naval.
543. ὁμοίως, in like manner.
544. ἐπίσταμαι, to know, understand.
545. καθ-ῆμαι, sit down, be encamped.
546. ἄριστος, -η, -ον, best. See 107.
547. ἀν-ίστημι, -ίστην, ἀνα-στήσω, -έστησα, trans. to raise up; 2 aor. -έστην, -έστηκα and mid. intrans., to rise up, stand. See 325.
548. ἐγ-κέλευστος, -ον, urged on. See 189.
549. οἶος, -ᾶ, -ον, of what sort; τοῖόςδε οἷ τοιοῦτος such, οἶος as.
550. ἀπορία, -ᾶς, difficulty. See 505.
551. προσ-ποιόμαι, to make or claim for one's self, pretend. See 26.
552. σπεύδω, σπεύσω, to hasten.
553. ἀπ-άγω, to lead back or away. See 464, 493.
554. ἀγοράζω, -άσω, to buy. See 302.
555. συ-σκευάζω, to make ready (by putting) together, to pack up. See 232.
556. ἀπο-πλέω, -πλεύσομαι, to sail away.
557. ἡγέμων, -όνος, leader.
558. φίλιος, -ᾶ, -ον, friendly.
559. μήδε, nor, not even (with subj., imper., etc., H. 1018, G. 283).
560. προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, -λήψομαι, to seize beforehand. See 35.
561. φθάνω, φθάσω, ἔφθασα, to be first, anticipate.
562. μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor. See 559.
563. κατα-λαμβάνω, 2 aor. -έλαβον, to seize.
564. ἀν-αρπάζω, -άσω, snatch up, carry off. See 423.
565. τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο, such (as precedes).
566. τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο, so much, so great; (in plur.) so many.
567. στρατηγέω, -ήσω, to be general, command. See 27.
568. στρατηγία, -ᾶς, generalship, command; military plan.
569. μηδείς, μηδεμίᾳ, μηδέν, no, no one, none (with subj., imper., etc.).
570. ἐν-οράω, ἐν-όψομαι, to see in or therein. See 362.
571. ποιητέος, -ᾶ, -ον, verb. adj., to be made or done. See 26.
572. δυνατός, -ή, -όν, able, possible. See 68.
573. ἄνθρωπος, -ου, man. See 103.
574. εὐ-ήθεια, -ᾶς, simpleness, folly.
575. εὐ-ήθης, -εις, simple, foolish.
576. λυμαίνομαι, λυμανοῦμαι, to mal treat, mar.
577. πράξις -εως, ἡ, doing, business.

578. ὀκνέω, -ήσω, shrink from, hesitate.
579. ἐμ-βαίνω, -βήσομαι, to go into, embark. See 34.
580. κατα-δύω, to sink (down).
581. φοβέω, -ήσω, to frighten; mid. fear. See 358.
- [582. οἶός τε, οἶᾶ τε, οἶόν τε, such as to (with infin.), able. See 549.]
583. ἐξ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. -ἦλθον, to go out or forth. See 383.
584. ἄκων, ἄκουσα, ἄκον, unwilling. See 165.
585. φλυαρία, -ᾶς, nonsense, folly.
586. ἐρωτάω, -ήσω, 2 aor. ἤρομην, to ask.
587. τίς, τί, gen. τίνος, who? which? what?
588. παρα-πλήσιος, -ᾶ, -ον, similar to or like. See 989.
589. οἶος-περ, οἶᾶ-περ, οἶον-περ (περ intens.), just such as, just as. See 549.
590. κακός, -ή, -όν, bad, cowardly.
591. συν-ανα βαίνω, 2 aor. συν-αν-έβην, to go up with. See 34.
592. φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηναι, to show; mid. and pass. appear.
593. ἐπί-πονός, -ον, toilsome. See 694.
594. ἐπι-κινδύνος, -ον, dangerous. See 941.
595. ἀφ-ίημι, -ήσω, -ἦκα, -εῖκα, let go, send away.
596. πρό θυμός, -ον, eager, zealous (θυμός, -οῦ, heart, mind).
597. ἀν-αγγέλλω, -ελῶ, to report (back). See 388.
- 598 δεῦρο, hither.
599. ἀπο-κρίνομαι, -οῦμαι, to answer. See 840.
600. ἀπ-έχω, to hold off, intrans. be away, be distant. See 38.
601. ἐκεῖ, there.
602. χρήζω, chiefly in pres., to want, desire.
603. αἰρετός, -ή, -όν, verb. adj., chosen. See 491.
604. ὑπ οψία, -ᾶς, suspicion. See 11.
605. ὁμως, nevertheless.
606. προσ-αιτέω, to ask further or in addition. See 174.
607. ἡμι-όλιος, -ᾶ, -ον, a half + the whole, a half more.
608. ἡμι-δάρικόν -οῦ, half-daric.
609. φανερός, -ᾶ, -όν, plain, manifest. See 592.

## CHAPTER IV.

610. στάδιον, -ου, plur. -οι, stadium, furlong (606 ft.).
611. πεντε-καί-δεκα, fifteen.
612. ναῦς, νεώς ἡ, ship. See 542.
613. ναύ-αρχος, -ου, admiral.
614. συμ-πολεμέω, to join in war with. See 87.
615. μετά-πεμπτος, -ον, sent after. See 20. -[dred.
616. ἑπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, seven hun-

617. ὀρμῆω, -ήσω, to anchor.  
 618. μισθο-φόρος -ου, pay-receiv-  
 ing, a mercenary (soldier).  
 619. τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α, four hun-  
 dred.  
 620. συ στρατεύομαι, to join in  
 a campaign or expedition.  
 See 123.  
 621. πύλη, -ης, gate.  
 622. τεῖχος, -ους, τό, wall.  
 623. ἔσωθεν, within; τὸ ἐ., the  
 inner.  
 624. ἔξω, without; τὸ ἐ., the outer.  
 625. ἀ-πᾶς, ἀ-πᾶσα, ἀ-πᾶν, all to-  
 gether, all.  
 626. παρ-έρχομαι, 2 aor. παρ ἦλθον,  
 to go or pass by. See 173.  
 627. βιά, -ᾶς, force. (L. vis.)  
 628. πάρ-οδος, -ου, way-past, a pass.  
 See 318.  
 629. στενός, -ή, -όν, narrow.  
 630. καθ-ήκω, to come down, reach.  
 See 203.  
 631. ὑπερθε(ν), from above. See  
 159.  
 632. πέτρα, -ᾶς, rock. See 461.  
 633. ἠλίβατος, -ον (poet.), steep,  
 said of bare, jagged cliffs.  
 634. ἐφ-ίστημι, ἐπι-στήσω, -έστησα,  
 trans., to set up, upon or  
 over, to set=halt; ἐφ-έστηκα,  
 2 aor. ἐπ-έστην, intrans.,  
 to be set over, stand by or  
 near. See 113.  
 635. ἔνεκα, with gen., on account  
 of.  
 636. ἀπο-βιβάζω, ἄσω, causal of  
 απο-βαίνω, make go off, dis-  
 embark.  
 637. ὄσ-περ, ἤ-περ, ὅ-περ, the very  
 one who or thing which.  
 See 23.  
 638. ἀνα-στρέφω, -ψω, to turn back,  
 to retreat, to rally.  
 639. ἀπ-ελαύνω, -ελῶ, to drive away,  
 march away. See 412.  
 640. μυριάς, ἄδος, ἡ, a myriad  
 (10,000).  
 641. ἐμπόριον, -ου, trading port  
 (emporium).  
 642. αὐτόθι, here, there.  
 643. ὀλκάς, -ᾶδος, ἡ, merchant  
 vessel.  
 644. ἐν τίθημι, -θήσω, -έθηκα, to put  
 in or on. See 296.  
 645. φιλο-τιμέομαι, -ήσομαι, to love  
 honor (τιμή), be jealous.  
 646. ἐάω, imperf. εἶων (-ᾶς, -ᾶ). ἐάσω,  
 εἶασα, to permit. H. 359,  
 G. 104.  
 647. ἀ-φανής, -ές, unseen, invis-  
 ible.  
 648. δι-έρχομαι, 2 aor. δι-ἦλθον, to  
 go through, to spread. See  
 626.  
 649. λόγος, -ου, word, speech; ru-  
 mor. See 270.  
 650. διώκω, -ξω, to pursue.  
 651. εὐχόμαι, imperf. εὐ- or ἠυχόμεν,  
 -ξομαι, to pray, vow.  
 652. δειλός, -ή, -όν, cowardly; v. l.  
 δόλιος, -ᾶ, -ον, treacherous.  
 653. οἰκτεῖρω, -ερῶ, to pity.  
 654. ἀλίσκομαι, ἀλώσομαι, ἐάλωκα,  
 2 aor. ἐάλων, to be taken,  
 seized.  
 655. συγ-καλῆω, -έσω, to call to-  
 gether. See 209.

656. ἀπο-λείπω, -ψω, -λέλοιπα, 2  
 aor. -έλιπον, to leave behind,  
 abandon. See 389.  
 657. ἀπο-διδράσκω, -δράσομαι, -δέ-  
 δρᾶκα, 2 aor. -εδρᾶν, to run  
 away (esp. by stealth).  
 658. οἴχομαι, to be or have gone.  
 H. 827, G. 200, N. 3.  
 659. ἀπο-φεύγω, -ξομαι, 2 aor. -έφυ-  
 γον, to flee from, escape (out  
 of reach). See 121.  
 660. θεός, -οῦ, god.  
 661. ἐπειδάν, whenever (with subj.,  
 H. 913, G. 231, N.).  
 662. κακῶς, -ῖον, -ιστα, badly, ill.  
 663. ἀπο-σϋλάω, to strip off, rob.  
 664. καίτοι, and yet.  
 665. τέκνον, -ου, child.  
 666. φρουρέω, to guard, watch.  
 667. στερέω, -ήσω, to deprive; pass.  
 στέρομαι and στερίσκομαι.  
 668. ἀρετή, -ῆς, goodness, excellence.  
 669. ἀ-θυμός, -ον, disheartened.  
 See 596.  
 670. ἀνά-βασις, -εως, ἡ, going up  
 (into Persia), expedition,  
 whence the name Anabasis.  
 671. ἠδύς, ἠδεῖα, ἠδύ, sweet, pleas-  
 ant. See 216.  
 672. ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ fish.  
 673. πρᾶος, -εία, πρᾶον, mild, gentle.  
 674. περιστερᾶ, -ᾶς, dove.  
 675. κώμη, -ης, village.  
 676. σκηνόω, -ώσω, to encamp;  
 -έω, to be encamped. See  
 357.  
 677. ζώνη, -ης, girdle; εἰς τὴν ζ,  
 for pin money.  
 678. πάνυ, very.  
 679. φύω, φίσω, ἔφύσα, to produce;  
 φύσις, εως, nature.  
 680. ἐκ-κόπτω, -ψω, to cut out, off,  
 or (of trees) down. See 424.  
 681. κατα-καίω, Att. -κάω, -καύσω,  
 to burn down.  
 682. ἀνα-πειθω, to persuade (up  
 to), induce. See 50.  
 683. ἀπ-αγγέλλω, -ελῶ, to report  
 (from), announce. See 597.  
 684. χαλεπαίνω, -ανῶ, to be severe,  
 angry. See 539.  
 685. πάλαι, long ago.  
 686. πατήρ, πατρός, father. See  
 472.  
 687. ἀργύριον, -ου (dim. of ἀργυ-  
 ρος, -ου, silver), piece of silver  
 (silver), money.  
 688. μνᾶ, -ᾶς, mina (100 drachmae  
 = \$17.50).  
 689. ἐπὴν or ἐπᾶν, whenever, when  
 (with subj. See 661).  
 690. ἐντελής, -ές, at its end, full,  
 complete.  
 691. μέχρι, until, as far as.  
 692. πότερον, whether.  
 693. χωρίς, apart, without.  
 694. πονέω, -ήσω, to toil; πόνος,  
 -ου, toil.  
 695. προ-τιμάω, -ήσω, to honor be-  
 fore (another). See 473.  
 696. νῦν, now.  
 697. ψηφίζομαι, -ιοῦμαι, to vote (by  
 ψηφός, a pebble), to resolve.  
 698. αἰτιος, -ᾶ, -ον, responsible, the  
 cause; τὸ αἰ., the cause.  
 699. χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ, grace, favor,  
 gratitude; χάριν εἶδέναι, to  
 be grateful.

700. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *to vote otherwise or against.*  
 701. ἔμ-παλιν, τὸ ἔμ. οἱ τοῦμ., *backward, back.*  
 702. μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone.*  
 703. πιστός, -ή, -όν, *faithful; τὰ πιστά, tokens of good faith, pledges. See 439.*  
 704. φρούριον, -ου, *garrison. See 666.*  
 705. λοχαγία, -ᾶς, *captaincy.*  
 706. ἐπ-αινέω, -έσομαι, -ήνεσα, *to praise, commend.*  
 707. μέλει, μελήσει, *impers. with dat., it is a care to; μ. μοι, I take care.*  
 708. εὐτυχέω, -ήσω (τύχη, *fortune*), *to be fortunate.*  
 709. μεγαλο-πρεπῶς (adj. -ής, -ές, *befitting the great*), *magnificently.*
710. βρέχω, ἔβρεξα, ἐβρέχθην, *to wet.*  
 711. μαστός, -οῦ, *breast.*  
 712. οὐπώ-ποτε, *not yet at any time, never before.*  
 713. δια-βατός, -ή, -όν, *to be crossed, passable. See 247.*  
 714. θεῖος, -α, -ον, *of or from god (θεός), divine.*  
 715. σαφῶς, *clearly; from σαφής, -ές, clear.*  
 716. ὑπο-χωρέω, -ήσω, *to go back (lit. under), withdraw. See 283.*  
 717. ἑννέα, *nine.*  
 718. πενήκοντα, *fif. y.*  
 719. μιστός, -ή, -όν, *full.*  
 720. σίτος, -ου, pl. τὰ σῖτα, *grain, provisions.*  
 721. ἐπι-στίλλομαι, -ιοῦμαι, *to provision one's self, lay in provisions.*

## CHAPTER V.

722. τόπος, -ου, *place.*  
 723. ὀμαλής, -ές, *even, level.*  
 724. ἀψίνθιον, -ου, *wormwood.*  
 725. ἐν-αμι, *impf. ἐν ἦν, to be in or therein. See 65.*  
 726. ὕλη, -ης, *wood, copse.*  
 727. κάλαμος, -ου, *reed (L. calamus).*  
 728. εὐ-ώδης, -ες, *sweet-smelling, fragrant.*  
 729. ἄρωμα, -ατος, τό, *spice (Eng. aroma).*  
 730. παντοῖος -ᾶ, -ον, *of every kind.*
731. ὄνος, -ου, *ass.*  
 732. στρουθός, -οῦ, *sparrow; ἡ σ. μεγάλη, the ostrich.*  
 733. ὠτίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *bustard.*  
 734. δορκάς, ἄδος, ἡ [δέρκ-ομαι, *to see*], *gazelle (deriv. Dorcas).*  
 735. ἐνίοτε, *sometimes.*  
 736. προ-τρέχω, 2 aor. προ-έδραμον, *to run forward or before.*  
 737. τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔδραμον, *to run. See 356.*  
 738. πλησιάζω, -άσω, *to draw near. See 990.*

739. δι-ίστημι, *trans., to set at intervals; intrans., to stand at intervals or apart. See 325.*  
 740. θηράω, -άσω, *to chase, hunt. See 259.*  
 741. δια-δέχομαι, -ξομαι, *to receive (through a line or) in succession, succeed.*  
 742. κρέας, gen. κρέως, plur. κρέα, κρεῶν, τό, *flesh.*  
 743. ἐλάφειος, -ον, *of deer; τὰ ἐ., venison.*  
 744. ἀπαλός, -ή, -όν, *tender.*  
 745. ἀπο-σπάω, -άσω, *to draw off or away.*  
 746. πτέρυξ, -υγος, ἡ, *wing. See 749.*  
 747. αἶρω, ἀρῶ, ἤρα, *to raise.*  
 748. ἱστίον, -ον, *sail.*  
 749. πέτομαι, πτήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐπτόμην, *to fly.*  
 750. βραχύς, -εία, -ύ, *short; βραχύ, a short distance.*  
 751. πέρδιξ, -ῖκος, ὁ, *partridge.*  
 752. ἀπ-αγορεύω, *chiefly in pres. and impf., to speak from or against, renounce; to give out, fail.*  
 753. πλεθριαῖος, -ᾶ, -ον, *of a plethron (in size, length, etc.).*  
 754. περι-ρ-ρέω, -ρεύσομαι, *to flow around. See 264.*  
 755. κύκλος, -ου, *circle.*  
 756. τρισ-καί-δεκα, *thirteen.*  
 757. ἐνενήκοντα, *ninety.*  
 758. λιμός, -οῦ, *hunger, famine.*  
 759. χόρτος, -ου, *grass, fodder.*  
 760. ψιλός, -ή, -όν, *bare.*
761. ἀλέτης, -ου (ἀλέω, *to grind*), *a grinder; ὄνος ἄ., a millstone.*  
 762. ὀρύττω, -ξω, *to dig.*  
 763. πωλέω, -ήσω, *to sell.*  
 764. ἀντ-αγοράζω, *to buy in exchange. See 554.*  
 765. ζάω, *impf. ἔζων, ζήσω, to live; ζώη, -ῆς, life.*  
 766. ἐπι-λείπω, -ψω, 2 aor. ἐπέλιπον, *to leave behind, to fail. See 656.*  
 767. ὠκέομαι, *impf. ἐωνούμην, 2 aor. ἐπριάμην, to buy. H. 359, G. 104. See 360.*  
 768. καπίθη, -ης, *a kapithe (Persian), about 2 quarts.*  
 769. ἄλευρον, -ου, *chiefly in plur., wheat flour.*  
 770. ἄλφιτον, -ου, *chiefly in plur., barley-meal.*  
 771. σίγλος, -ου, *siglos, shekel, = 7½ Attic obols or 25 cents.*  
 772. ὄβολος, -ου, *obol, Attic coin, = 3½ cents.*  
 773. ἡμι-ὀβόλιον, τό, *a half-obol.*  
 774. χοῖνιξ, -ικος, ἡ, *choenix, = about a quart.*  
 775. χωρέω, -ήσω, *to make place (χώρα) for, and so, to contain. See 283.*  
 776. ἐσθίω, 2 aor. ἔφαγον, *to eat.*  
 777. δια-γίγνομαι, *to go (lit. become) through; to pass, to live (of time, etc.). See 179.*  
 778. μακρός, -ᾶ, -όν, *long.*  
 779. ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water.*



780. δια-τελίω, -έσω or -ῶ, bring to an end (τέλος), complete (e. g. a distance).
781. χιλός, -οῦ, folder.
782. ποτέ, encl., at any time, at some time (πότε, when?).
783. στενο-χωρία, -ās, a narrow place. See 629.
784. πηλός, -οῦ, mud.
785. δυσ-πόρευτος, -ον, difficult to pass. See 198.
786. στρατός, -οῦ, army.
787. συν-εκ-βιβάζω, to join (σύν) in bringing out. See 636.
788. ἄμαξα, ης, wagon.
789. σχολαίως, leisurely; from adj, σχολαίος, leisurely, slow.
790. ὀργή, -ῆς, anger.
791. κράτιστος, -η, -ον (from κράτος, strength), best (as super. of ἀγαθός), strongest. See 107.
792. συν-επι-σπεύδω, to join (σύν) in hastening on. See 552.
793. ἔνθα, there, then.
794. μέρος, -ους τό, part, portion.
795. εὐταξία, -ας, good order, discipline.
796. θεάομαι, ἄσομαι, to behold (deriv. theatre).
797. ῥίπτω, -ψω, to throw.
798. πορφυρούς, -ᾶ, -οῦν, purple.
799. κάνδυς, -νος (Persian), overcoat, caftan (rare).
800. ἵημι, ἦσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, to send, let go; mid., send one's self, hasten. See 595.
801. νίκη, -ης, victory. See 272.
802. πρᾶνής, -ές (or πρηνής, L. priōnus), headlong; steep (of a hill).
803. γήλοφος, -ου, ὄ (γῆ + λόφος, crest), hill.
804. πολυ-τελής, -ές, very expensive.
805. ποικίλος, -η, -ον (cf. L. pictūra), many-colored.
806. ἀναξυρίδες, -ων, αἱ (Persian), breeches, trousers.
807. ἔνιοι, -αι, -α, some.
808. τράχηλος, -ου, neck.
809. εὐθύς, adv. (from adj. εὐθύς, straight), immediately.
810. εἰσ-πηδάω, to leap into.
811. μετέωρος, -ον, in mid air, raised aloft (deriv. meteor).
812. ἐκ-κομίζω, -ιῶ, to carry out.
813. δια-τρέβω, -ψω, to rub away; of time, waste, delay.
814. ἐπισιτισμός, -οῦ, provisioning (one's self). See 720.
815. ἀναγκαίος, -ᾶ, -ον, necessary; οἱ ἄ, relations, cf. L. necessarii.
816. καθ-έζομαι, ἐκαθεζόμεν, to sit.
817. μάχομαι, -οῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμεν, to fight. See 282.
818. συν-αγείρω, -αγερώ, to gather together, collect.
819. συν-εἶδον, 2 aor. of συν-οράω, to see together or in one view.
820. προσ-έχω, to hold to; π. τὸν νοῦν, turn one's attention to.
821. νοῦς, νοῦ, ὄ, mind.
822. πλήθος, -ους, τό, multitude, extent, number.
823. ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν, strong. See 381.

824. μήκος, -ους, τό, length.
825. δια-σπάω, -άσω, to tear asunder, separate.
826. ἀσθενής, -ές, weak. See 10.
827. πόλεμος, -ου, war. See 87.
828. πέραν, beyond, across.
829. σχεδιά, -ās, raft.
830. διφθέρα, -ās, a (tanned) skin (deriv. diphtheria).
831. στέγασμα, -ατος, τό, a covering (for tents).
832. πίμπλημι, πλήσω, ἔπλησα, to fill.
833. κοῦφος, light; κοῦφος χόρτος, hay.
834. συ-σπάω, -άσω, to draw together. See 825.
835. ἄπτω, ἄψω, to fasten; commonly mid. fasten one's self to, touch.
836. κάρφη, -ης, hay (rare).
837. βάλανος, -ου, ἡ, an acorn (or similar fruit; in V. 10 = date).
838. φοῖνιξ, -ῖκος, ὄ, date-palm.
839. ἀμφι-λέγω, to talk about, dispute about, wrangle.
840. κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρινα, to judge.
841. πληγή, -ῆς, blow; πλήττω, πλήξω, to strike.
842. διά βασις, -εως, crossing (place, act, or means). See 670.
843. κατα-σκοπέω, -σκέψομαι, -εσκεψάμεν, to view closely, inspect.
844. ἀφ-ιππεύω, to ride away or back (on horseback). See 229.
845. προσ-ελαύνω, -ελῶ, to drive, ride, march up or to. See 412.
846. οὔπω, not yet.
847. ξύλον, -ου, wood; in X. 12 a pole.
848. σχίζω, σχίσω, to split (deriv. schism).
849. δι-ελαύνω, -ελῶ, to ride or march through. See 234.
850. ἀξίνη, -ης, axe.
851. ἀμαρτάνω, -τήσομαι, 2 aor. ἤμαρτον, to miss, to fail.
852. λίθος, -ου, stone.
853. κατα-φεύγω, 2 aor. -έφυγον, to flee for refuge. See 659.
854. γόνυ, γόνατος, τό, L. genu, E. (cog.) KNEE.
855. τετταράκοντα, forty.
856. ἐκ-πλήττω, -ξω, to strike out, drive out (esp. of one's senses). See 841.
857. πρόσ-εimi, impf. προσ-ῆειν, to go to, approach. See 353.
858. ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, small in number; plur. few.
859. κατα-λεύω, to stone down or to death. Cf. 461.
860. πρᾶως, mildly.
861. πόθος, -ους, τό, suffering (deriv. sym-pathy). See 482.
862. ἐξ-ίστημι, trans. (pres., impf., f., and 1 aor.), to set out; intrans. (2 aor., pf., and mid.), to stand out. See 634.
863. πυθάνομαι, 2 aor. ἐπυθόμην, learn (by inquiry).
864. παλτόν, -οῦ, javelin.
865. συν-άπτω, -άψω, to join. See 835.

## CHAPTER VI.

866. ἴχνος, -ους, τό, or ἴχνιον, -ου (dim. only in form), a track or trace.
867. κόπρος, -ον, dung.
868. εἰκάζω, -άσω, to conjecture.
869. στίβος, -ον, beaten path, track.
870. κάω, or καίω, to burn (deriv. caustic).
871. χρήσιμος, -ον, useful. See 487.
872. γένος, -ους, τό, birth, race.
873. προσ-ήκω, am come to, reach to or extend; commonly, belong to; part., related to. See 630.
874. κατ-αλλάσσω, -ξω, to change or exchange, esp. from enmity, to reconcile. See 201.
875. προ κατα-κάω (or -καίω), to burn up before others. See 681.
876. κατα-καίνω, 2 aor. κατ-έκανον, = κατα κτείνω, to kill.
877. ἐν-εδρεύω (ἐν ἐδρα, sitting in ambush), to lie in ambush.
878. δι-αγγέλλω, -ελῶ, to carry word through, announce. See 683.
879. ὠφέλιμος, -ον, helpful. See 161.
880. ἔτοιμος, -η (or -ος), -ον, ready.
881. γράφω, -ψω, to write.
882. ἐπιστολή, -ῆς, a letter.
883. φράζω, φράσω, to tell (deriv. PHRASE).
884. ὑπο-δέχομαι, -δέχομαι, to receive under (one's protection), receive kindly. See 741.
885. ὑπό-μνημα, -ατος, τό, reminder.
886. ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, -γνώσομαι, 2 aor. ἀν-έγνω, to know again, to read. See 463.
887. τρισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, three thousand.
888. παρα-καλέω, -καλῶ, to call (to one's side) in, invite; exhort. See 209.
889. σύμ-βουλος, -ον, counsellor. See 61.
890. ἐξ-αγγέλλω, -ελῶ, to report outside, bring out news. See 878.
891. κρίσις, -εως, ἡ, judgment, trial. See 810.
892. ἀπό-ρ-ρητος, -ον, not (ἀπό) to be told, secret.
893. πράττω, -ξω, to do, perform; with adv. (εὖ, καλῶς, κακῶς, etc.), to fare (well, ill, etc.).
894. ἐμός, -ῆ, -όν, my, mine.
895. ὑπήκοος, -ον (ὑπ-ακούω, to hearken to), obedient, subject. See 230.
896. προσ-πολεμέω, -ήσω, to war against. See 614.
897. οὐκοῦν, not therefore? not then? **nonne?**
898. ὁμολογέω, -ήσω, to speak together, to agree.

899. σεαυτοῦ, -ῶ, of thyself.
900. βωμός, -οῦ, altar.
901. μετα-μέλει, -μελήσει, it concerns one differently (μετά), it repents one (dat.). See 707.
902. τρίτος, -η, -ον, third. See 176.
903. ἄδικος, -ον, unjust. See 523.
904. ἦ, truly, verily.
905. ἀπο-φαίνω, -φανῶ, to show forth. See 592.
906. ἐκποδών, out from one's feet, out of the way.
907. σχολή, -ῆς, leisure.
908. ἐθελοντής, -οῦ, volunteer; as adj., willing. See 438.
909. προσ-τίθημι, to put to, add; mid., add one's self to, agree. See 296.
910. θάνατος, -ου, death.
911. συγ-γενής, -είς, kindred. See 152.
912. ἐξ-άγω, -άξω, to lead out. See 464, 553.
913. προσ-τάττω, -ξω, to give an order to one, to enjoin, command. See 326.
914. προσ-κυνέω, -ήσω, do obeisance to.
915. καίπερ, although.
916. εἰσ-άγω, -άξω, to lead into. See 553.
917. σκηπτούχος, -ου, sceptre-bearer.
918. θνήσκω, chiefly in pf. τέθνηκα; other tenses fr. ἀπο-θνήσκω, -θανοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έθανον, to die, be slain. See 910.
919. πώποτε, ever yet.
920. ἄλλως, in another way, otherwise. See 132.
921. τάφος, -ον, burial, a grave; θάπτω (= ταφ-τω), to bury (deriv. epi-taph).

## CHAPTER VII.

922. νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, L. nox, E. NIGHT.
923. ἔως, ἕω, ἡ, dawn, morning.
924. κέρας, κέρως, τό, horn; wing of an army.
925. δια-τάττω, -ξω, to draw up, arrange. See 326.
926. αὐτό-μολος, -ον (μολεῖν, to go), deserter.
927. λοχ-ᾶγός, -οῦ, leader of a λόχος, captain. See 421.
928. πῶς, how?
929. παρ-αινέω, impf. παρ-ήνον, -έσομαι (αινέω, commend), to recommend, exhort. See 706.
930. θαρρύνω (θάρρος, -ους, courage), to encourage.
931. ἀμείνων, -ον (compar. of ἀγαθός), better. See 107.
932. προσ-λαμβάνω, 2 aor. -έλαβον, to take in addition. See 51.
933. ἐλευθερίᾱ, -ᾱς, freedom.
934. κτάομαι, -ήσομαι, acquire, gain; pf. κέκτημαι, to possess.

935. εὐδαιμονίζω, to account εὐδαιμόνων (happy), congratulate. See 250.
936. πολλαπλάσιος, -ᾶ, -ον, many times as many, manifold more.
937. διδάσκω, -άξω, to teach.
938. ἀν-έχω, -έξω or -σχίσω, 2 aor. -έσχον, hold up; mid. endure, restrain one's self. See 600.
939. εὐ-τολμος, -ον (τολμάω, to dare), courageous.
940. ζηλωτός, -ή, -όν, verb. adj., to be envied; ζηλώω, vie with, envy.
941. κίνδυνος, -ου, danger. See 59.
942. μιμνήσκομαι, μνήσομαι, to remind one's self of; μέμνημαι (as pres.), to remember.
943. πατρῶος, -ᾶ, -ον, paternal, hereditary. See 686.
944. μισημβρία, -ᾶς, mid-day; south.
945. καύμα, -ατος, τό, heat. See 870.
946. ἄρκτος, -ου, ἡ, bear, Great Bear, the north.
947. χειμών, ὠνος, ὁ, winter, cold.
948. σατραπεύω, -εύσω, to be satrap (of or over). See 25.
949. ἐγ-κρατής, -ές, in power over, master of.
950. στέφανος, -ου, crown (deriv. STEPHEN).
951. εἰς-εἰμι, impf. εἰσ-ήειν, to go into. See 352.
952. κρατίω, -ήσω, to overpower, conquer.
953. ἐμ-πίμπλημι, -πλήσω, to fill (in) full; here, satisfy (rare sense). See 832.
954. παρα-κλιέομαι, to urge on, exhort. See 189.
955. ὅσοσ-περ, -η-περ, -ου-περ, just as much, great, or many as. See 30.
956. δια-λέγομαι, to converse with. See 270.
957. ὀπισθε(ν), behind.
958. καιρός, -ού, time, esp. fit time.
959. πῶς, encl. somehow or somewhere; ὡδέ πῶς, about as follows.
960. νή, affirm. part. of swearing, by, yes by.
961. εἰ-περ, if indeed.
962. ἀμαχεί, without a battle. See 282.
963. ἐξ-οπλισιά, -ᾶς, act or process of arming. See 1007.
964. δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον, scythe-bearing.
965. ἑξακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, six thousand.
966. ὑστερίω, -ήσω, to be (behind), later than. See 462.
967. ἀγγέλλω, -ελῶ, ἡγγεῖλα, to announce, bring tidings.
968. αὐτομολέω, -ήσω, to desert. See 926.
969. τάφος, -ου, ἡ, ditch.
970. ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν, dug. See 762.
971. βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ, deep.
972. ὀργυιά, -ᾶς (ὀρέγω, to stretch out the arms), a fathom.
973. βάθος, -ους, τό, depth.

974. παρα-τείνω, -τενῶ, -έτεινα, τέτακα, -μαι, -ετάθη, to stretch along.
975. διῶρυξ, -υχος, ἡ, canal.
976. σῖτ-αγωγός, -οῦ, grain-carrying.
977. δια-λείπω, to leave (a space) between, be or stand apart. See 766.
978. μεταξύ, between (with gen.).
979. ἔρμα, -ατος, τό, defence. See 266.
980. μάντις, -εως, ὁ (μαίνομαι, rare, der. MANIA), prophet, soothsayer.
981. ἑνδέκατος, -η, -ον, eleventh.
982. ἄρα, postpos. illative particle, then.
983. ἀληθεύω, -εύσω, to speak the truth.
984. τάλαντον, -ου, a talent, \$1125.
985. ἀπο-γιγνώσκω, -γνώσομαι, 2 aor. -έγνω, -έγνωκα, to decide (lit. know) against or abandon the idea of. See 463.
986. ἡμελημένως, adv., carelessly. See 527.
987. πορεία, -ᾶς, journey, march. See 198.
988. ἀνα-ταράττω, -άξω, to stir up, confuse.

## CHAPTER VIII.

989. πλήθω, chief. in pres. part.; pass. of πίμπλημι (see 832), to be full.
990. πλησίον, near. See 738.
991. μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, to be about, intend.
992. ἤνικα, when.
993. προ-φαίνω, act. to show forth; mid. to appear before or in front. See 592.
994. ἀνά, prep. with acc., up, up along; ἀ. κράτος, with all (lit. up to) one's might.
995. κράτος, -ους, τό, might, power.
996. ιδρώω, -ώσω, to sweat.
997. βοάω, -ήσομαι, ἐβόησα, to shout (βοή, -ῆς, shout).
998. βαρβαρικῶς, in barbarian (language).
999. παρα-σκευάζω, -άσω, to prepare. See 232.
1000. τάραχος -ου, confusion. See 988.
1001. αὐτίκα, at once, immediately.
1002. ἄτακτος, -ον, disarranged, in disorder. See 324.
1003. ἐπι-πίπτω, -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έπεσον, to fall upon. See 130.
1004. κατα-πηδάω, -ήσομαι, to leap down. See 810.
1005. θώραξ, -ᾶκος, ὁ, breastplate.
1006. ἐν-δύνω, or -δύομαι, 2 aor. -έδυν, to enter; of clothes, etc., to put on.

1007. ἐξοπλίζω, -ιῶ, to arm completely. See 963.  
 1008. σπουδή, -ῆς, haste. See 552.  
 1009. πελταστικός, -ή, -όν, consisting of targeteers. See 222.  
 1010. ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α, six hundred.  
 1011. ὀπλίζω, -ιῶ, to arm.  
 1012. παραμηρίδια, -ων, τά, thigh (μηρός) pieces of armor.  
 1013. κεφαλή, -ῆς, head.  
 1014. διακινδυνεύω (v. l.), -εύσω, to pass through (διά) or incur danger. See 59.  
 1015. προμετωπίδιον, -ου (μέτ-ωπον, the space between the eyes (ὄψ), forehead), a frontlet.  
 1016. προστερνίδιον (πρό + στέρνον, breast), breastplate (for horses).  
 1017. μάχαιρα, -ᾱς, a short sword. See 817.  
 1018. καταφανής, -ές, clearly visible. See 592.  
 1019. δεῖλη, -ης, afternoon.  
 1020. κονιορτός, -οῦ (κόνις, dust; ὄρ-νῦμι, to raise), cloud of dust.  
 1021. νεφέλη, -ης, cloud.  
 1022. λευκός, -ή, -όν, white.  
 1023. συχνός, -ή, -όν, considerable; συχνόν, sc. χωρίον, at a considerable distance.  
 1024. μελανία, -ᾱς, blackness (μέλας, black).  
 1025. ἐγγύς, -ύτερον, -τατα, near.  
 1026. τάχα, quickly.  
 1027. χαλκός, -οῦ, copper, bronze.  
 1028. ἀστράπτω, to lighten, flash.
1029. λόγχη, -ης, lance.  
 1030. λευκοθώραξ, -ᾱκος, adj., wearing white breastplate.  
 1031. γερροφόροι, -ων (carrying the γέρρον, wicker-shield), soldiers with wicker-shields.  
 1032. ποδῆρης, -ες, reaching to the feet. See 269.  
 1033. ξυλινός, -ή, -όν, wooden. See 847.  
 1034. ἔθνος, -ους, τό, nation.  
 1035. πλασίον, -ου, a square.  
 1036. δρέπανον, -ου, scythe. See 964.  
 1037. ἄξων, -ονος, ὁ, axle.  
 1038. πλάγιος, -ᾱ, -ον, slanting; εἰς π., obliquely.  
 1039. ἀποτείνω, -τείνω, to stretch out, extend. See 974.  
 1040. δίφρος, -ου, chariot-board.  
 1041. βλέπω, -ψομαι, ἔβλεψα, to look.  
 1042. διακόπτω, -κόψω, to cut through or in two. See 680.  
 1043. σιγή, -ῆς, silence.  
 1044. ἀνυστός, -όν (verb. of ἀνύω, accomplish), practicable.  
 1045. ἡσυχῆ, quietly (ἡσυχος, quiet).  
 1046. ἴσος, -η, -ον, equal, even; ἐν ἴσῳ, in even (line).  
 1047. βραδέως, slowly (βραδύς, slow).  
 1048. στίφος, -ους, τό, a (dense) mass or body.  
 1049. περί-εἰμι, impf. -ῆν, to be above or superior. See 725.  
 1050. κυκλώω, -ώσω, to encircle. See 755.

1051. ἐκατέρωθεν, on each side.  
 1052. ὀμαλῶς, evenly. See 723.  
 1053. καταθεάομαι, -άσομαι, to look down upon. See 796.  
 1054. ἐκατέρωσε, to each side.  
 1055. ἀποβλέπω, to look (from all else at) intently. See 1041.  
 1056. πελάζω, approach.  
 1057. συναντάω, -ήσω, to meet with.  
 1058. ἱερά, -ῶν, τά, omens (ἱερός, sacred).  
 1059. σφάγιον, -ου, victim (σφάττω, to slay).  
 1060. θόρυβος, -ου, a (confused) noise, tumult.  
 1061. σύνθημα, -ματος, τό, thing which is agreed upon (συν-τίθημι, to agree), watchword.  
 1062. δεύτερον, a second time (δεύτερος, second).  
 1063. σωτήρ, -ῆρος, savior.  
 1064. δέχομαι, -ξομαι, to receive, accept.  
 1065. οὐκέτι, no longer.  
 1066. διέχω, impf. -εἶχον, to hold apart; oftener intrans. be apart or distant. See 600.  
 1067. παιανίζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, to sing the paean or war song.  
 1068. προέρχομαι, to go forward. See 383.  
 1069. ἀντίος, -α, -ον, opposite, against.  
 1070. ἐκ-κυμαίνω, to swell out (κῦμα, wave).  
 1071. θέω (chief. in pres. and impf.; for other tenses see 737), to run.
1072. φθέγγομαι, -ξομαι, to shout, cry out (der. δι-ΡΗΤΗΘΩ).  
 1073. ἐλελλίζω, to raise the war-cry (ἐλελεῦ).  
 1074. δόρυ, δόρατος, τό, spear.  
 1075. δονπέω, -ήσω, to make a sound (δούπος, a dull sound).  
 1076. τόξευμα, -ματος, τό, thing which is shot, an arrow.  
 1077. ἐξ-ικνέομαι, come forth to, to reach. See 78.  
 1078. ἐκ-κλίνω, -ῶ, -έκλινα, to bend out (of line), give way.  
 1079. κενός, -ή, -όν, empty (with gen.).  
 1080. ἡνίοχος (ἡνία, reins; ἔχω, hold), charioteer.  
 1081. προ-εἶδον (pres. προ-οράω), to see before, foresee.  
 1082. ἵππο-δρομος, -ου, horse-race (deriv. HIPPODROME).  
 1083. τοξεύω, -εύσω, to shoot (with a τόξον, bow). See 1076.  
 1084. ὣς, thus. Note the accent.  
 1085. συ-σπειράομαι, to be drawn up (lit. rolled) closely.  
 1086. ἀσφαλής, -ές, safe. See 532.  
 1087. ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ, strength, force.  
 1088. ἡμισυς, -εια, -υ, half.  
 1089. ἔμπροσθεν, in front. See 185.  
 1090. ἐπι-κάμπτω, -κάμψω, to bend forward.  
 1091. κύκλωσις, -εως, ἡ, encircling; εἰς κ., in order to encircle. See 1050.  
 1092. φυγή, -ῆς, flight. See 121.  
 1093. τρέπω, τρέψω, to turn. See 366.

1094. τροπή, -ῆς, *turn, rout* (of an enemy). See 1093.  
 1095. δια-σπείρω, -σπερῶ, *to strew, to scatter*.  
 1096. σχεδόν, *nearly, almost*.  
 1097. ὄμο-τράπεζος, -ου (at table (τράπεζα) with), *messmate*.  
 1098. καθ-οράω, κατ-όψομαι, 2 aor. κατ εἶδον, *to look down upon, observe*. See 362.  
 1099. παίω, παίσω, *to strike, smite*, chief. poet. for τύπτω.  
 1100. στέρνον, -ου, *breas'*.  
 1101. τιτρώσκω, τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, *to wound*.  
 1102. λατρός, -οῦ, *physician*.  
 1103. λάομαι, λάσομαι, *to heal*.  
 1104. τραῦμα, -ατος, τό, *wound*. See 1101.  
 1105. ἀκοντιζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, *to shoot with a javelin (ἄκων)*.

1106. ὄφθαλμός, -οῦ, *eye*.  
 1107. βιαίως, *forcibly*. See 627.  
 1108. ἑκάτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *each* (of two).  
 1109. κείμαι, imperf. ἐκείμην, *to lie*.  
 1110. θεράπων, -οντος, *servant, attendant*.  
 1111. πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, πέπτωκα, 2 aor. ἔπεσον, *to fall*. See 1003.  
 1112. περι-πίπτω (see 1111), *to fall around, embrace*.  
 1113. ἐπι-σφάττω, -σφάζω, *to slay upon*. See 1059.  
 1114. σπάω, σπάσω, ἔσπασα, *to draw*. See 834.  
 1115. φορέω, -ήσω (cf. φέρω), *to wear*.  
 1116. εὖνοια, -ᾶς, *good will*. See 90, 821.  
 1117. πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ, *faithfulness*. See 703.

## CHAPTER IX.

1118. βασιλικός, -ῆ, ὄν, *kingly, royal*. See 80.  
 1119. πείρα, -ᾶς, *trial, experience*. See 128.  
 1120. παιδεύω, -εύσω, *to train, educate*. See 3.  
 1121. σωφροσύνη, -ης, *prudence; self control*.  
 1122. κατα-μανθάνω, -μαθήσομαι, 2 aor. -έμαθον, *to learn thoroughly*.

1123. αἰσχρός, -ά, ὄν; comp. αἰσχίων, superl. αἰσχιστος, *shameful, disgraceful*. See 518.  
 1124. μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, 2 aor. ἔμαθον, *to learn*.  
 1125. αἰδήμων, -ον, *modest* (αἰδώς, *modesty*).  
 1126. ἡλικιώτης, -ου, *an equal in age* (see 1134), *a comrade*.

1127. ὑπο-δέεστος, *wanting somewhat, inferior*. See 183.  
 1128. φιλο-ἵππος, -ον, *fond of horses* (deriv. PHILIP).  
 1129. ἔργον, -ου (for Φέργον), *WORK, deed*.  
 1130. τοξικός, -ῆ, -όν, *of a bow; ἡ τοξική (τεχνή), archery*. See 1083.  
 1131. ἀκόντισις, -εως, ἡ, *throwing the javelin*. See 1105.  
 1132. φιλο-μαθής, -ές *fond of learning*.  
 1133. μελετηρός, -ά, -όν, *studious* (μελετάω, *to study, practise*).  
 1134. ἡλικία, -ᾶς, *age, time of life*. See 1126.  
 1135. πρέπει, *it becomes, is fitting*.  
 1136. φιλό θηρος, -ον, *fond of the chase* (θήρᾱ).  
 1137. φιλο-κίνδυνος, -ον, *fond of danger*.  
 1138. ἐπι-φέρω, *bring up or against; mid. rush upon or against*. See 407.  
 1139. τρέω, *to tremble, flee from*.  
 1140. συμ πίπτω, 2 aor. συν-έπεσον, *to fall together, grapple with*. See 1003.  
 1141. κατα-σπάω, *to draw down*. See 831.  
 1142. ἀτελής, -ῆς, *wound, scar*.  
 1143. τέλος, -ους, τό, *end; often as adv., finally*.  
 1144. κατα-κτείνω, 2 aor. -έκανον, *to kill*. See 52.  
 1145. βοη θέω, -ήσω, *to aid, assist* (with dat.). See 1071.

1146. μακαριστός, -ῆ, -όν (verb. adj. of μακαρίζω, *to deem μάκαρ or blessed*).  
 1147. κατα-πέμπω, -ψω, *to send down*. See 55.  
 1148. σπένδω, σπείσω, *to pour a libation; mid. to pour a libation with another, make a treaty*.  
 1149. συν-τίθημι, -θήσω, *put together; mid. agree* (make an agreement, IX. 7). See 1061.  
 1150. σπονδή, -ῆς, *a libation; plur. treaty, truce*. See 1148.  
 1151. τοι-γαρ-οὖν *for indeed then, therefore*.  
 1152. προ-ίημι, -ήσω, -ῆκα, εἶκα, -εἶμαι, *send before or away; chief. in mid. let go, give up*. See 800.  
 1153. ἅπαξ, *once*.  
 1154. μείων, -ον, *less, smaller, used as comp. of μικρός*.  
 1155. εὐχή, -ῆς, *prayer, vow*.  
 1156. ἐκ-φέρω, -οίσω, *to bring out or forth; to report*. See 1138.  
 1157. ἕσπε, *until*.  
 1158. ἐπι-θυμέω, -ήσω, *to set one's heart* (θυμός) *upon, desire*. See 596.  
 1159. σῶμα, -ατος, τό, *body*.  
 1160. κακοῦργος, -ου, *evil-doer*. See 1129.  
 1161. κατα-γελῶ, ἄσομαι, *to laugh* (down) *at, deride*. See 361.

1162. ἀ-φειδής, -ές; -έστερος, -έστατος, unsparing (φείδομαι, to spare).
1163. στείβω, to tread. See 869.
1164. ἀ-δειώς, fearlessly (δέος, fear).
1165. ὅποι, whither.
1166. προ-χωρέω, -ήσω, go on, advance; be of aid. See 348.
1167. δια-φιδόντως, exceedingly (δια-φέρω, differ, excel).
1168. κατα-στρέφω, turn down, overturn, subdue.
1169. δούλος, -ον, a slave.
1170. ἀφθονία, -ας (ἀ φθονος, not grudged), abundance.
1171. μὴν, certainly, assuredly; γέ μὴν, assuredly, at least, moreover.
1172. δικαιοσύνη, -ης, justice. See 489.
1173. πλούσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, rich.
1174. φιλο-κερδέω, -ήσω, to be fond of gain. See 1181.
1175. δικαίως, justly.
1176. δια χειρίζω, -ῶ, to have in hand (χείρ), to manage.
1177. ἀληθινός, -ή, -όν, true (to name), genuine. See 983.
- [1178. πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, to sail. See 393.]
1179. κερδαλέος, ᾱ -ον, gainful.
- [1180. πειθ-αρχέω, -ήσω, to obey authority ἀρχή), to obey.]
1181. κέρδος, ους, τό, gain, profit. See 1174.
1182. ὑπ-ηρετίω, -ήσω, to be a servant (ὑπηρέτης) to serve.
1183. ἀ-χάριστος, -ον, thankless, unthanked. See 699.
1184. προ-θυμία, -ᾱς, zeal. See 596.
1185. ὑπ-ηρέτης, -ου, an under rower (ἐρέτης), a servant.
1186. δεινός, -ή, -όν, fearful, terrible, mighty; clever. See 522.
1187. οἰκο-νόμος, -ου, house-steward, manager.
1188. κατα-σκευάζω, -άσω, prepare or equip fully (to manage well, IX. 19). See 999.
1189. πρόσ οδος, -ου, ἡ, coming to, approach, revenue. See 318.
1190. ἀεὶ, always.
1191. προσ-δίδωμι, -δώσω, to give in addition, add. See 485.
1192. θαρραλέως, boldly (θαρραλέος, bold). See 508.
1193. πάομαι, chief. in pf. and plpf. πέπαμαι, ἐπεπάμην, have gotten, possess. See 934.
1194. ἥκιστα, least, least of all.
1195. φθονέω, -ήσω (φθόνος, envy), to envy.
1196. φανερῶς, manifestly. See 609.
1197. πλουτέω, -ήσω, to be rich. See 1173.
1198. ἀπο-κρύπτω, -ψω, to hide from or away. See 93.
1199. εὖ-νους, -ουν, well-disposed. See 90.
1200. σύν-εργος, -ου, fellow-worker. See 1129.
1201. κατ-εργάζομαι, to work out, accomplish. See 1129.

1202. θεραπεύω, -εύσω, to serve, attend. See 1110.
1203. δια-δίδωμι, -δώσω, to give to different ones, distribute. See 1191.
1204. σκοπέω (in pres. and impf.), σκέψομαι (from σκέπτομαι), ἐσκεψάμην, to look at, observe.
- [1205. κόσμος, -ου, order, adornment].
1206. καλλωπισμός, -οῦ, adornment (κάλλος, beauty; ὤψ, face).
1207. κοσμῶ -ήσω, to adorn.
1208. θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν, wonderful. See 364.
1209. ἐπι-μέλεια, care, attention. See 86.
1210. προ-θυμέομαι, to be zealous, eager. See 596.
1211. χαρίζομαι, -ίσομαι or -ιοῦμαι. See 699.
1212. ἀγαστός, -ή, -όν, admirable. See 153.
1213. βίκος, -ου (Semitic), wine-jar (rare).
1214. ἡμι-δεής, -ές (δέω, to lack), half-lacking, half-full.
1215. ἐπι-τυγχάνω, 2 aor. -έτυχον, to happen upon, meet with. See 452.
1216. τήμερον, or σήμερον, today.
1217. ἐκ-πίνω, f. -πίομαι, 2 aor. -έπιον, to drink off or up.
1218. χήν, χηνός, ὄ, ἡ, goose.
1219. ἡμί-βρωτος, -ον, half-eaten. See 1214.
1220. ἄρτος, -ου, loaf, bread.
1221. ἡμισυ, -εος, τό, a half.
1222. ἐπι-λέγω, -λέξω, to say further or in reference to.
1223. γεύω, to give a taste; mid. to taste (with gen.).
1224. σπάνιος, -ᾱ, -ον, scarce, rare.
1225. δια-πέμπω, -ψω, to send in different directions or around. See 1147.
1226. πεινάω, -ήσω, to be hungry.
1227. προσ-καλέω, -έσω, to call to, summon. See 209.
1228. σπουδαιολογέομαι, to talk earnestly. See 1008.
1229. δηλώω, -ώσω, to make evident, show.
1230. τεκμήριον, -ου, sign, proof.
1231. ἐπι-χειρέω, -ήσω, to take in hand (χείρ), attempt. See 1176.
1232. ἀγαπάω, -ήσω, to love (ἀγάπη, love).
1233. τιμή, -ῆς, honor.
1234. ὀρθῶς, rightly.
1235. βέβαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, firm, steadfast.
1236. συντράπεζος, -ου, mess-mate. See 1097.

## CHAPTER X.

1237. ἀπο-τέμνω, -τεμῶ, 2 aor. -έταμον, to cut off.
1238. εἰσ-πίπτω, -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έπεσον, to fall into. See 1003.
1239. στρατόπεδον, -ου, camp. See 504.
1240. ἐνθεν, thence, whence.
1241. παλλακίς, ἴδος, ἡ, mistress.
1242. σοφός, -ή, -όν, skilled, wise.
1243. γυμνός, -ή, -όν, naked (X. 3, lightly clad).
1244. ἀντι-τάττω, -άξω, to draw up against. See 326.
1245. σώζω, σώσω, to save, rescue. See 1063.
1246. ἐντός, within, adv. with gen.
1247. ἀρήγω, -ξω, to aid, succor.
1248. στρέφω, -ψω, 2 aor. p. ἐστράφην, to turn.
1249. ἀνα-λαμβάνω, 2 aor. -έλαβον, to take up. See 51.
1250. σύν-οδος, -ου, ἡ, coming together, meeting (derivative, SYNOD). See 1189.
1251. φρόνιμος, ον, prudent.
1252. ἀπ-αλλάττω, -ξω, to change from or off, to set free; mid. and pass. be set free, depart. See 874.
1253. συν-τυγχάνω, 2 aor. -έτυχον, to meet with. See 1215.
1254. ὁμοῦ, adv., together.
1255. προσ-άγω, -άξω, to lead to or towards (with obj. omitted, approach). See 464.
1256. περι-πτύσσω, -ξω, to fold around, outflank.
1257. ἀμφοτέρωθεν, from or on both sides. See 16.
1258. ἀνα-πτύσσω, -ξω, to unfold or fold back.
1259. παρ-αμείβομαι, to change (to pass on, to pass by).
1260. σχῆμα, -ατος, τό, form (deriv. SCHEME).
1261. σύν-εμι, impf. -ῆειν, to go or come together, to meet. See 352.
1262. παρα-τάττω, -ξω, to draw up beside. See 326.
1263. αὐθις, again, back.
1264. ἐπι-διώκω, -ξω, to pursue after. See 650.
1265. λόφος, -ου, crest, hill.
1266. σημεῖον, -ου, sign, standard.
1267. ἀετός, -οῦ, eagle.
1268. πέλιτη, -ης, crescent shield.
1269. ἀνα-τείνω, -τενῶ, stretch up or out, extend. See 974.
1270. ἄθροος, -ᾶ, -ον, in crowds, in a body.
1271. ἄλλοθεν, from another place.
1272. ψιλώω, -ώσω, to make bare, strip.
1273. ἀνα-βιβάζω, to make go up, lead up. See 636.
1274. ἥλιος, -ου, sun.

1275. δύνω or δόμαι, to enter; sink into (the sea), set. See 1006.
1276. ἀνα-παύω, to make to cease or rest; mid. to rest. See 214.
1277. οὐδαμοῦ, nowhere.
1278. προ-ελαύνω, -ελάω, to drive or ride forward. See 845.
1279. δορπηστός, -οῦ, supper time.
1280. σῆτιον, -ου, chief. in plur. grain, food. See 720.
1281. ποτόν, -οῦ, drink. See 1217.
1282. σφοδρός, -α, -όν, excessive, violent.
1283. ἐνδεῖα, -ᾶς, want. See 183.
1284. ἄ-δειπνος, -ον, without dinner (δείπνον).
1285. ἀν-αριστος, -ον, without breakfast (ἄριστον).

## VOCABULARY.

### Α.

ἀ, ἀ-περ. See δε, δε-περ.

ἀγάγω, ἀγαγών. See ἀγω.

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, good, brave.

ἀγαμαι, admire. 535,<sup>1</sup> 4; 329.<sup>2</sup>

ἀγαπάω, -ήσω, love, am pleased.

ἀγαστός, -ή, -όν, admirable, praise-worthy.

ἀγγέλλω, announce. 329.

ἄγγελος, -ου, ὁ, messenger.

ἀγορά, -άς, ἡ, assembly; place of assembly, market-place; market, provisions on sale.

ἀγοράζω, buy; mid., buy for one's self.

ἄγριος, -ιά, -ον, wild.

ἄγω, lead, lead on, bring, convey. 508, 6; 330.

ἀγών, -ώνος, ὁ, game, contest.

ἀ-δειπνος, -ον, supper-less.

ἀδελφός, -οῦ, ὁ, brother.

ἀ-δεώς, fearlessly.

ἀδικέω, be unjust, act unjustly; harm, wrong, injure.

ἀ-δικος, -ον, unjust, bad; περί τινα, against any one; τὸ ἀδικόν, injustice.

ἀεί, always.

ἄετός, -οῦ, ὁ, eagle.

Ἀθηναῖος, -ου, ὁ, Athenian.

ἀθλον, -ον, τὸ, prize in a contest.

ἀθροίζω, collect, muster troops; mid., come together, assemble, collect. Cf. 517, 1; εικάζω, 338.

ἀθρόος, -α, -ον, together, in a body.

ἀ-θύμος, -ον, spirit-less, disinclined; πρὸς ἀνάβασιν, toward, etc.

αἰ, αἰ, αἰς. See ὁ, δε.

Αἰγύπτιος, -ιά, -ον, Egyptian.

αἰδήμων, -ον, gen. -όνος, modest, respectful.

Αἰνιάν, -ἄνος, ὁ, Aenidian. The Aenidians lived in Thessaly, occupying the valleys of the Spercheios.

αἰρετός, -ή, -όν, taken, chosen; οἱ αἰρετοί, the delegates.

αἰρέω, take, seize, capture; mid., take for one's self, choose. 539, 1; 330.

αἶρω, raise. 518, 2; 330.

αἰσθάνομαι, perceive, become aware of or that. 522, 1; 330.

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν, disgraceful, base. 253; § 72, 1.

αἰσχύνω, disgrace, shame; mid., be ashamed; ὅτι, because. Cf. 519, 3; 330.

αἰτέω, ask, ask for; mid., ask for something as a favor, entreat, beg.

αἰτιόμαι, blame, accuse, charge.

<sup>1</sup> References in this heavy type are to sections in Hadley's (Allen) Grammar.

<sup>2</sup> References in this type are to pages in Goodwin's Grammar.



**αἴτιος**, -ιά, *ον*, chargeable with; responsible; being or acting as the cause of.  
**ἀκινάκης**, -ου, ὁ, Persian dagger, short and straight.  
**ἀκοντίζω**, hurl a javelin, hit or wound with a javelin.  
**ἀκόντισις**, -εως, ἡ, use or hurling of the javelin.  
**ἀκούω**, hear, hear about or of. 507, 1; 330.  
**ἀκρόπολις**, -εως, ἡ, the highest part of a city, citadel.  
**ἄκρος**, -ᾶ, -ον, highest; τὸ ἄκρον, top; τὰ ἄκρα, heights, hills.  
**ἄκων**, -ουσα, -ον, gen. -οντος, -ούσης, un-willing; Κῆρον ἄκοντος, against the will of Cyrus.  
**ἀλέξω**, ward off; mid., ward off from one's self, defend one's self, repel, punish. 510, 1; 331.  
**ἀλέτης**, -ου, ὁ, grinder; as adj., ὄνος ἀλέτης, grinding mill, grindstone.  
**ἄλευρον**, -ου, τό, flour, wheat-flour, usually plur.  
**ἀληθεύω**, speak or tell the truth.  
**ἀληθινός**, -ή, -όν, true, trusty, genuine.  
**ἀλίσκομαι**, be taken, captured, taken as prisoner. 533, 1; 331.  
**ἀλλά**, but; ἀλλ' ὅμως, but yet; at the beginning of a speaker's words, untranslated, or like the Eng. well; ἀλλὰ δέχομαι, well, I accept it.  
**ἀλλήλων**, one another, each other.  
**ἄλλος**, other, rest of, another; ὁ ἄλλος, the rest, the other; τὰ ἄλλα ἐτίμησε, in other respects than what immediately follows; τι καὶ ἄλλο (ἄλλης), any other kind of; ἄλλοι ἄλλως, some in one way, others in another; ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, in various directions.  
**ἄλλως**, differently. See ἄλλος.  
**ἄλφιτον**, -ου, τό, grains, groats; barley-grains, barley-meal; usually plur.

**ἄλω**, ἀλώσομαι. See ἀλίσκομαι.  
**ἄμα**, at the same time, together with; ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, at daybreak.  
**ἄμαξα**, -ης, ἡ, wagon, heavy wagon for hauling freight.  
**ἄμαξιτός**, -όν, for wagons, fit for wagons.  
**ἄμαρτάνω**, miss, fail, err. 522, 2; 331.  
**ἄ-μαχεί**, without resistance or fighting.  
**Ἀμβρακιώτης**, -ου, ὁ, an Ambraciot or Ambracian. Ambracia was a city of Epeiros, about 80 stadia, or 7 miles, north of the gulf named after it the Sinus Ambracius.  
**ἀμείνων**, -ον, gen. -ονος, comp. of ἀγαθός, better, superior.  
**ἀμελέω**, be negligent or careless of.  
**ἀ-μήχανος**, -ον, in-expedient; impracticable; insurmountable.  
**ἄμπελος**, -ου, ἡ, vine.  
**ἀμφί**, about, around.  
**ἀμφι-λέγω**, dispute, quarrel with words.  
**Ἀμφιπολίτης**, an Amphipolite. Amphipolis was a city of Thrace on the river Strymon.  
**ἀμφότερος**, -ᾶ, -ον, both; τῶ παιδὲ ἀμφοτέρω, both the sons.  
**ἄν**. Cf. 857; 207.  
**ἄν**, for ἐάν, if.  
**ἀνά**, up, opp. to κατά; ἀνὰ κράτος, up to one's strength, at full speed.  
**ἀνα-βαίνω**, go or march up, ascend, embark, proceed from the coast into the interior. 519, 7; 333.  
**ἀνάβασις**, -εως, ἡ, upward march or expedition, ascent.  
**ἀνα-βιβάζω**, lead up.  
**ἀν-αγγέλλω**, report, bring back word. See ἀγγέλλω.  
**ἀνα-γινώσκω**, recognize, read. 531, 4; 335.  
**ἀναγκαῖος**, -ᾶ, -ον, necessary; τὶ ἀναγκαῖον, some necessity.

**ἀνάγκη**, -ης, ἡ, necessity; ἀνάγκη ἐστίν, it is necessary.  
**ἀνα-γνοῦς**. See ἀνα-γινώσκω.  
**ἀνα-λαμβάνω**, take up, take up with one, rescue.  
**ἀναξυρίδες**, -ων, αἱ, trousers, such as were worn by the Persians.  
**ἀνα-παύω**, mid., rest one's self; take, or go to, rest.  
**ἀνα-πείθω**, persuade, induce.  
**ἀν-ἄριστος**, -ον, without breakfast.  
**ἀν-αρπάξω**, snatch up, carry off.  
**ἀνα-στάς**. See ἀν-ίστημι.  
**ἀνα-στρέφω**, turn back or around, retreat, advance. 508, 26; 355.  
**ἀνα-σχέσθαι**. See ἀν-έχω.  
**ἀνα-ταράττω**, stir up, confuse.  
**ἀνα-τείνω**, stretch or hold up, raise.  
**ἄνδρα**, ἄνδρός. See ἀνήρ.  
**ἀνδράποδον**, -ου, τό, slave, captive.  
**ἄνευ**, without.  
**ἀν-έχω**, hold up, sustain; mid., endure.  
**ἀνήρ**, ἄνδρός, ὁ, man, meaning about the same as the Lat. vir.  
**ἀνθ'**, by elision, for ἀντί.  
**ἄνθρωπος**, man, homo; human being; sometimes used in a contemptuous sense.  
**ἀνιάω**, trouble, annoy.  
**ἀν-ίστημι**, raise or start up; mid., rise, stand up.  
**ἀντ'**, by elision, for ἀντί.  
**ἀντ-αγοράζω**, buy in return or exchange.  
**ἀντί**, against, over against, instead of, in return for.  
**ἀντίος**, -ιά, -ον, opposite; ἀ. λέναι, go against.  
**ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι**, make counter preparations.  
**ἀντι-πέρᾶς**, opposite.  
**ἀντιστασιώτης**, political opponent or adversary.

**ἀντι-τάττω**, draw up or set in line against.  
**ἄντρον**, -ου, τό, cave.  
**ἀνυστός**, -όν, practicable, possible.  
**ἄνω**, upwards, high up, into the interior (from the sea-coast).  
**ἄξινη**, -ης, ἡ, axe.  
**ἄξιος**, -ιά, -ον, worth, worthy.  
**ἀξιόω**, consider as proper, ask for as a proper thing.  
**ἄξων**, -ονος, ὁ, axle.  
**ἀπ-αγγέλλω**, bring back tidings from a place or person, report.  
**ἀπ-αγορεύω**, refuse, give up, give out through exhaustion, am fatigued.  
**ἀπ-άγω**, bring or lead away or back.  
**ἀπ-αιτέω**, ask for or demand as one's right.  
**ἀπ-αλλάττω**, get rid of, remove; mid. and pass., be freed from; withdraw. 514, 1; 331.  
**ἀπαλός**, -ή, -όν, soft, tender.  
**ἄπαξ**, once.  
**ἀ-παρασκευος**, un-prepared.  
**ἀπᾶς**, -ᾶσα, -αν, entire, all without exception.  
**ἀπ-έδωκα**. See ἀπο-δίδωμι.  
**ἀπ-έθανον**. See ἀπο-θνήσκω.  
**ἀπ-εἰμι**, go from or away, depart, desert.  
**ἀπ-ελαύνω**, drive away, ride or march away, retreat. 521, 1; 338.  
**ἀπ-ελθών**. See ἀπ-έρχομαι.  
**ἀπ-έρχομαι**, go away, come from, withdraw, desert. 539, 2; 340.  
**ἀπ-έχω**, be away from, be distant; refrain from.  
**ἀπ-ήγαγον**. See ἀπ-άγω.  
**ἀπ-ήειν**. See ἀπ-εἰμι.  
**ἀπ-ήλαυον**. See ἀπ-ελαύνω.  
**ἀπ-ήλθον**. See ἀπ-έρχομαι.  
**ἀπ-ηλλάγην**. See ἀπ-αλλάττω.  
**ἀπ-ιέναι**, ἀπ-ιμεν. See ἀπ-εἰμι.  
**ἀπό**, with the gen., from, from off, away from; by means of.

ἀπο-βιβάζω, *cause to go off or away from, disembark* (trans.). 424.  
 ἀπο-βλέπω, *look away, look away toward*. 508, 8; 334.  
 ἀπο-γινώσκω, *decide negatively, relinquish or abandon a thought or purpose*. 531, 4; 335.  
 ἀπο-δέδρακα. See ἀπο-διδράσκω.  
 ἀπο-δείκνυμι, *show; appoint*. 528, 3; 336.  
 ἀπο-διδράσκω, *run off or away; speak away; escape*. 530, 2; 337.  
 ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back, return what is due; pay*.  
 ἀπο-δοῦναι, ἀπο-δώσω. See preceding.  
 ἀπο-κρίνομαι, *reply*. 519, 2; 345.  
 ἀπο-κρύπτω, *hide away, conceal; mid., hide for one's self; hoard money*. 513, 10; 345.  
 ἀπο-κτείνω, *kill, put to death; deliver to the executioner*. 519, 4; 345.  
 ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *take back, receive back*. 523, 5; 346.  
 ἀπο-λείπω, *leave, leave behind; desert*. 511, 7; 346.  
 ἀπο-λήψομαι. See ἀπο-λαμβάνω.  
 ἀπ-όλλυμι, *mid., be destroyed, perish, die*. 528, 8; 349.  
 Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, ὁ, *Apollo*.  
 ἀπο-πέμπω, *send away or back; τοὺς δασμοὺς, remit, etc.* 508, 21; 351.  
 ἀπο-πλέω, *sail away or back, sail homeward*. 512, 3; 352.  
 ἀπορέω, *be in distress or without resource, be perplexed*.  
 ἀπορία, -ίας, ἡ, *distress, difficulty*.  
 ἀπό-ρητος, -ον, *secret*.  
 ἀπο-σπάω, *draw away from, from one's pursuer, hence outstrip*.  
 ἀπο-στήναι. See ἀφ-ίστημι.  
 ἀπο-σῦλάω, *strip off, despoil, rob*.  
 ἀπο-τείνω, *stretch away, extend*. 519, 5; 356.  
 ἀπο-τέμνω, *cut off*. 521, 8; 356.

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show, reveal; mid., show one's self, appear, show for one's self, express an opinion*. 518, 19; 358.  
 ἀπο-φεύγω, *flee away, run away*. 511, 15; 358.  
 ἀπο-χωρέω, *go away, retreat, return*.  
 ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *vote against*.  
 ἄπτω, *mid., touch*. 513, 1; 332.  
 ἀπ-ωλόμην. See ἀπ-όλλυμι.  
 ἄρα, *inferential, therefore, then; probably*.  
 ἀργύριον, -ον, τό, *silver money, money*.  
 ἀρετή, -ῆς, ἡ, *virtue, goodness; good service*.  
 ἀρήγω, *succor, render aid*.  
 ἀριθμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *number, enumeration, total amount*.  
 ἄριστον, -ον, τό, *breakfast*.  
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best, best in rank, noblest; most advantageous*.  
 Ἀρκάς, -άδος, ὁ, *Arcadian, native of Arcadia*.  
 ἄρκτος, -ον, ἡ, *bear, Great Bear, north*.  
 ἄρμα, -ατος, τό, *chariot for war*.  
 ἀρμάμαξα, -ης, ἡ, *covered carriage*.  
 ἀρπάζω, *seize, carry away; plunder*. 517, 1; 333.  
 Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, ἡ, *Artemis, the Lat. Diana*.  
 ἄρτος, -ον, ὁ, *bread*.  
 ἀρχαῖος, -α, -ον, *old, ancient; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly*.  
 ἀρχή, -ῆς, ἡ, *beginning, rule, government, province*.  
 ἀρχω, *begin, command*. 508, 7; 333.  
 ἄρωμα, -ατος, τό, *spice*.  
 ἀσθενέω, *am sick or feeble*.  
 ἀσθενής, -ές, *feeble*.  
 ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *large oval shield of the heavy-armed soldiers*.  
 ἀστράπτω, *gleam, flash*.  
 ἀσφαλής, -ές, *firm, safe; ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, in a safe place*.

ἀσφαλῶς, *safely*.  
 ἀ-τακτος, -ον, *disarranged, in disorder*.  
 ἀτ-μάζω, *dishonor*.  
 Ἀττικός, -ῆ, -όν, *Attic, Athenian*.  
 αὖ, *again*.  
 αὖθις, *again*.  
 αὕτη, αὐταί. See οὗτος.  
 αὐτίκα, *immediately, at once*.  
 αὐτοῖ, *there, in this or that place*.  
 αὐτόματος, -η, -ον, *self-moved; ἀπὸ or ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, voluntarily, of one's own accord*.  
 αὐτομόλῳ, *desert*.  
 αὐτόμολος, -ον, ὁ, *deserter*.  
 αὐτός, -ή, -όν, *ipse, self; ὁ αὐτός, idem, same; in oblique cases it is the ordinary pron. 3d pers.*  
 αὐτοῦ, *in this or that place, here, there*.  
 αὐτοῦ. See ἑαυτοῦ.  
 ἀφ', *for ἀπό when o is elided before a rough breathing*.  
 ἀφ-αιρέω, *seize or take away, rob; usually mid.* 539, 1; 330.  
 ἀ-φανής, -ές, *unseen, out of sight, gone*.  
 ἀφειδῶς.  
 ἀφ-ειστήκειν. See ἀφ-ίστημι.  
 ἀφθονία, -ίας, ἡ, *abundance*.  
 ἀφ-ίημι, *send away or off, dismiss, release*. 534, 3; 342.  
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι, *arrive, come to*. 524, 2; 342.  
 ἀφ-ιππεύω, *ride away on horseback*.  
 ἀφ-ίστημι, *mid., stand off or away, revolt*. 534, 5; 342.  
 Ἀχαιός, -ά, -όν, *Achaean*. Achaia was a portion of the Peloponnesus, bordering on the Corinthian Gulf.  
 ἀ-χάριστος, -ον, *without thanks, unrewarded*.  
 ἄχθομαι, *dep., be displeased*. 510, 2; 333.  
 ἀψίνθιον, -ον, τό, *wormwood*.

B.

Βαβυλῶν, -ῶνος, ἡ, *Babylon*.  
 Βαβυλώνιος, -ᾶ, -ον, *Babylonian*.  
 βάθος, -ους, τό, *depth*.  
 βαθύς, -εία, -ύ, *deep*.  
 βάλανος, -ον, ἡ, *nut*.  
 βάλλω, *throw, hit*. 518, 4; 334.  
 βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν, *barbaric, barbarian*.  
 βαρβαρικῶς, *in a barbarian way; in the barbarian tongue*.  
 βάρβαρος, *barbarian; οἱ βάρβαροι, people who were not Greeks, barbarians*.  
 βασιλεία, -ας, ἡ, *kingdom*.  
 βασίλειος, -ον, *kingly, royal; τὰ βασίλεια [δῶματα], royal rooms or residence*.  
 βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ, *king*.  
 βασιλεύω, *am king*.  
 βασιλικός, -ή, -όν, *kingly, royal*.  
 βέβαιος, -α, -ον, *firm*.  
 βελτίων, -ον, *better, βέλτιστος, -η, -ον, best*.  
 βία, -ας, ἡ, *force*.  
 βιάζομαι, *use force, compel*.  
 βιαίως, *forcibly, violently*.  
 βίκος, -ον, ὁ, *pitcher*.  
 βίος, -ον, ὁ, *life*.  
 βλέπω, *look; of objects, pointed or directed towards*. 508, 8; 334.  
 βοάω, *shout out, cry aloud*.  
 βοηθέω (βοή, *shout*; θέω, *run*), *hasten with help, bring aid*.  
 Βοιωτός, -οῦ, ὁ, *Boeotian*. Boeotia lay northwest of Attica.  
 βουλεύω, *plan, counsel; mid. deliberate, consult*.  
 βούλομαι, *wish*. 510, 4; 334.  
 βραδέως, *slowly*.  
 βραχύς, -εία, -ύ, *short; βραχύ (adv. acc.), short distance*.  
 βρέχω, *wet, moisten*. 508, 9.  
 βωμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *altar*.

## Γ.

γάρ, postpos., *for*; καὶ γάρ, *etenim, for*.

γέ, postpos. and enclitic, *at least, you see, you know*.

γεγένημαι, γέγονα See γίγνομαι.

γέλωσ, -ωτος, ὁ, *laughter*.

γενέσθαι, γενοίμην. See γίγνομαι.

γίνος, -ους, τό, *birth*.

γερρο-φόρος, -ου, ὁ, *soldier with or carrying a wicker-shield*.

γεύω, mid., *taste*.

γέφυρα, -άς, ἡ, *bridge*.

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *earth, land*.

γῆ-λοφος, -ου, ὁ, *hill*.

γίγνομαι, *become, am born; result*. 506, 1; 335.

γνοίην, γνώσομαι. See γιγνώσκω.

γνώμη, -ης, ἡ, *opinion, plan, expectation*.

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό, *knee*.

γράφω, *write*. 508, 11; 335.

γυμνάζω, *exercise*.

γυμνής, -ῆτος, ὁ, *light-armed soldier*.

γυμνός, -ή, -όν, *half-dressed, naked, exposed to danger*.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman, wife*.

## Δ.

δ', by elision, for δέ.

δακρύω, *weep*.

δαπανάω, -ήσω, *spend or squander money*.

δᾶρεικός, -οῦ, ὁ, *daric*. A Persian gold coin, worth about \$4.00.

δασμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *tax, revenue*.

δέ, postpos., *but, for*, frequently and.

δεδιώς, δέδοικα. See δέδω.

δέδομαι. See δίδωμι.

δεηθῆναι, δεῖ. See δέω.

δέδω, *fear, be afraid*. 490, 5; 336.

δείλη, -ης, ἡ, *afternoon, evening*.

δειλός, -ή, -όν, *cowardly*.

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible; able, skilful; τὸ δεινόν, danger*.

δεῖται. See δέω.

δέκα, *ten*.

δένδρον, -ου, τό, *tree*.

δέξομαι. See δέχομαι.

δεξιός, -ά, -όν, *right; ἡ δεξιὰ (χείρ), right hand, pledge; ἐν δεξιᾷ, on the right (hand)*.

δέρμα, -ατος, τό, *the skin as removed from the body, hide*.

δεῦρο, *hither*.

δεύτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *second; τὸ δεύτερον, second time*.

δέχομαι, *receive, accept*. Page 357; 336.

δέω, *need; mid., want, desire, beg; δεῖ, it is necessary; τὸ δέον, the desired thing*.

δή, postpos., a strengthening particle, *verily, indeed, just; in questions, pray*.

δηλός, *evident; δηλον ὅτι, evidently*.

δηλώω, *show, make manifest*.

διά, with gen., *through; διὰ ταχέων, quickly; with acc. on account of*.

διαβαίνω, *go through, cross*. 519, 7; 333.

διάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *place of crossing, ford*.

διαβατός, -ή, -όν, *fordable*.

διαβάς, διαβῆναι. See διαβαίνω.

δι-αγγέλλω, *bring word through, report*. G. 329.

δια-γίγνομαι, *come through, subsist; continue, pass time*.

δι-άγω, *lead through; continue; pass time*.

δια-δέχομαι, *receive through or in a line, relieve*.

δια-δίδωμι, *distribute*.

δια-κινδυνεύω, *run all risks, make a desperate attempt*.

δια-κόπτω, *cut or break through, cut to pieces*.

διακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hundred*.

δια-λέγομαι, *converse, confer with*.

δια-λείπω, *leave between, stand at intervals*.

δια-πέμπω, *send around or among*.

δι-αρπάζω, *plunder*. 517, 1; 333.

δια-σπάω, *draw apart, separate, scatter*.

δια-σπείρω, *scatter; mid., intrans*.

δια-στάς. See δι-ίστημι.

δια-τάττω, *arrange or draw up in line of battle*. 514, 9; 356.

δια-τελέω, *finish anything, as a distance*.

δια-τίθημι, *dispose, handle or treat persons*. 534, 1; 356.

δια-τρῖβω, *wear away, waste time*. 508, 3; 357.

δια-φέρωντως, *differently, pre-eminently*.

δια-χειρίζω, *manage, control, administer*.

διδάσκω, *teach, instruct, inform*. 533, 8; 337.

δίδωμι, *give*. 534, 4; 337.

δι-έβαινον, δι-έβην. See δια-βαίνω.

δι-ελαύνω, *drive or ride through*.

δι-έρχομαι, *come or go through; λόγος διήλθε, a rumor spread through (the army)*. 539, 2; 340.

δι-έχω, *have between, be apart or distant*. 508, 16; 340.

δι-ήλασε. See δι-ελαύνω.

δι-ήλθον. See δι-έρχομαι.

δι-ίστημι, *set apart; mid., stand apart; open the ranks*. 534, 5; 342.

δίκαιος, -ᾶ, -ον, *just; n. pl., justice*.

δίκη, -ης, ἡ, *justice*.

δί, = δι' ὅ, *on account of which, wherefore*.

δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *two thousand*.

διφθέρι, -ᾶς, ἡ, *tanned skin; bag*.

δίφρος, -ου, ὁ, *wagon or chariot seat*.

διώκω, *pursue, chase, rout an enemy*.

494.

διώρυξ, -υχος, ἡ, *trench, canal*.

δοθῆναι, δοίην. See δίδωμι.

δοκέω, *think, suppose; δοκεῖ, it seems, seems best; τὰ δόξαντα, the things which seemed best or were determined upon*. 509, 3; 337.

Δόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ, *Dolopian*. The Dolopes lived in the southwestern parts of the Pindus range.

δόξαι, δόξω. See δοκέω.

δορκάς, -άδος, ἡ, *gazelle*.

δορπηστός, -οῦ, ὁ, *supper-time, evening*.

δόρυ, -ατος, τό, *spear used by the Greek hoplite*.

δούλος, -ου, ὁ, *slave*.

δοῦναι, δούς. See δίδωμι.

δουπέω, -ήσω, *rattle, clash*.

δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον, *scythe-bearing*.

δρέπανον, -ου, τό, *scythe*.

δρόμος, -ου, ὁ, *a run, race; δρόμω, with a run, at full speed*.

δύναμαι, *am able, can (ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, as much or as well as he could); be worth, valued at*. 535, 5; 337.

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ, *force, ability; military force or strength*.

δυναστής, -ου, ὁ, *man in power, officer*.

δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *able, possible; ἢ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, as much as possible*.

δύω, δύσω, *enter; of the sun, set*. 507, 3; 337.

δύο, *two*.

δυσ-πόρευτος, -ον, *hard or difficult to pass through or along*.

δώ, δώσω. See δίδωμι.

δώδεκα, *twelve*.

δῶρον, -ου, τό, *gift*.

Ε.

είν, *if*; followed by the subj.  
 εαυτοῦ, -ῆς, *sui*, of himself.  
 εάω, εάσω, *permit, allow*.  
 ἐγγύς, *comp. ἐγγύτερον or -τέρω, near*.  
 ἐγενόμην, ἐγιγνόμην. See γίνομαι.  
 ἐγ-κέλευστος, -ον, *bidden, instructed*.  
 ἐγ-κρατής, -ές, *in power or powerful over*.  
 ἔγνω. See γινώσκω.  
 ἔγω, *I*.  
 ἔγωγε, *I for my part, equidem*.  
 ἔδει, ἔδειτο. See δέω.  
 ἔδισαν. See δίδω.  
 ἔδωκα. See δίδωμι.  
 ἔζων. See ζάω.  
 ἐθελοντής, -ου, ὁ, *volunteer*; as adj. *willing*.  
 ἐθέλω, *am willing, choose, desire*.  
 510, 10; 337.  
 ἐθέμην. See τίθημι.  
 ἔθνος, -ους, τό, *tribe, nation*; *κατ' ἔθνη, tribe by tribe*.  
 εἰ, *if, whether*; *εἰ μή, unless*; *εἰ δὲ μή, but if not*.  
 εἶα, εἶασα. See εἶω.  
 εἶδέναι. See οἶδα.  
 εἶδον. See ὁράω.  
 εἶδω, εἶδώς. See οἶδα.  
 εἶπν, εἶπσαν. See εἶμι.  
 εἰκάζω, *liken unto, conjecture, suppose*.  
 G. 338.  
 εἴκοσι(ν), *twenty*.  
 εἰλόμην, εἶλον. See αἰρέω.  
 εἶμι, *am, exist*; *ἔστι(ν), it is possible*; *ἔστι δ' ὅστις, somebody*. 537, 1; 338.  
 εἶμι, *go, come*. 536, 1; 338.  
 εἶπον. See φημί.  
 εἶ-περ, *if really*.  
 εἶρηκα. See φημί.  
 εἰς, *into, against*; with num. *as much as, about*.  
 εἷς, *μιά, ἓν, one*.

εἰσ-άγω, *bring into*.  
 εἰσ-βάλλω, *throw into, make an entrance into*; of rivers, etc., *empty into*.  
 εἰσ-βολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *entrance*.  
 εἰσ-εἶμι, *come or go into or in*.  
 εἰσ-ελαύνω, *ride or march into, enter*.  
 εἰσ-ελθεῖν. See εἰσ-έρχομαι.  
 εἰσ-έρχομαι, *come into, enter*.  
 εἰσ-ῆεν. See εἰσ-εἶμι.  
 εἰσ-ήλασα. See εἰσ-ελαύνω.  
 εἰσ-ήχθη. See εἰσ-άγω.  
 εἴσομαι, -εται. See οἶδα.  
 εἰσ-πηδάω, -ησομαι, *leap into*.  
 εἰσ-πίπτω, *fall upon*; of an army, *enter, invade*.  
 εἴσω, *within*.  
 εἶτα, *then, in the next place, thereupon*.  
 εἶχον. See ἔχω.  
 εἶων. See εἶω.  
 εἶ. See εἶ.  
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον, *each*; plur., *several*.  
 ἑκάτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *either, each*.  
 ἑκατέρωθεν, *on either or both sides*.  
 ἑκατέρωσε, *in both directions*.  
 ἑκατόν, *one hundred*.  
 ἐκ-βάλλω, *throw or drive out, expel*.  
 ἐκ-δέρω, -δερώ, *skin, flay*.  
 ἐκεῖ, *there, in that place*.  
 ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ο, *that, that one*; *he, she, it*.  
 ἐκ-καλύπτω, *uncover*.  
 ἐκκλησία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *assembly*.  
 ἐκ-κλίνω, *bend out of position*; *give way, flee*.  
 ἐκ-κομίζω, *bring or fetch out*.  
 ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut out, destroy by cutting out, e. g. trees*.  
 ἐκ-κῦμαίνω, -ανῶ, *bend (in any direction) like a wave*.  
 ἐκ-λείπω, *leave, abandon, forsake*.  
 ἐκ-πεπτωκώς. See ἐκ-πίπτω.  
 ἐκ-πίνω, *drain, drink up*.  
 ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out, am banished*; *οἱ ἐκπεπτωκότες, the exiles*.

ἐκ-πλαγείς. See ἐκ-πλήττω.  
 ἐκ-πλήττω, *strike out of one's senses*; *terrify, amaze*.  
 ἐκ-ποδών, *out of the way*.  
 ἐκτόμην. See κτάομαι.  
 ἐκ-φέρω, *bring out, publish, report*.  
 ἐκ-φεύγω, *flee out of danger, escape*.  
 ἐκών, -ούσα, -όν, *willing, of one's own accord*.  
 ἔλαβον. See λαμβάνω.  
 ἐλαύνω, *drive, ride, march*.  
 ἐλάφαιος, -ον, *of or belonging to a deer*.  
 ἐλεῖν, ἐλέσθαι. See αἰρέω.  
 ἐλελίζω, *raise the war-cry*.  
 ἐλεξα, ἐλέχθη. See λέγω.  
 ἐλευθερία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *freedom*.  
 ἐλήφθη. See λαμβάνω.  
 ἐλθεῖν, ἐλθών. See ἔρχομαι.  
 Ἑλλάς, -ᾶδος, ἡ, *Greece*.  
 Ἕλλην, -ηνος, ὁ, *Greek*.  
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν, *Grecian*.  
 Ἑλληνικῶς, *in the Greek way, in Greek*.  
 Ἑλλησποντιακός, -ή, -όν, *Hellenspontic*.  
 ἔλομι, -οίμην, -όμενος. See αἰρέω.  
 ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *hope*; *ἐλπίδας λέγων, expressing hopes*.  
 ἐλῶν. See ἐλαύνω.  
 ἐμαντοῦ, -ῆς, *of myself*.  
 ἐμ-βαίνω, *go into, embark*.  
 ἐμ-βάλλω, *throw into*; of rivers, *flow into, empty*; *ἐ. πληγὰς, inflict blows, thrash*; *ἐ. χιλόν, give fodder (to horses)*; in battle, *charge, fall upon*.  
 ἔμεινα. See μένω.  
 ἐμός, -ή, -όν, *my*.  
 ἐμοῦ. See ἐγώ.  
 ἐμ-παλιν, *backwards, back again*.  
 ἐμ-πίπλημι, *fill, satisfy*.  
 ἐμ-πλεως, -ων, *full*.  
 ἐμπόριον, -ου, τό, *port of trade, market*.

ἐμ-προσθεν, *before, in front*.  
 ἐν, *in, on*; *ἐν τούτῳ, at this time*.  
 ἐν, ἐνός. See εἷς.  
 ἐνδεια, -ᾶς, ἡ, *want, need, lack (of provisions)*.  
 ἐν-δέκατος, -η, -ον, *eleventh*.  
 ἐν-δύω, *mid. and perf. act., put upon one's body*.  
 ἐν-έβαλον. See ἐμ-βάλλω.  
 ἐν-εδρεύω, *lie in ambush*.  
 ἐν-εἶμι, *am in or on*; *am in a place, am there*.  
 ἐνεκα, ἐνεκεν, *on account of, for the sake of*.  
 ἐνεήκοντα, *ninety*.  
 ἐν-ἦν. See ἐν-εἶμι.  
 ἐνθα, *there, here*; *where*; *thereupon*.  
 ἐνθεν, *thence*; *ἐνθεν . . . ἐνθεν, on this side . . . on that side, on all sides*.  
 ἐνί, ἐνός. See εἷς.  
 ἐνιοι, -αι, -α, *some*.  
 ἐνίοτε, *sometimes, occasionally*.  
 ἐννέα, *nine*.  
 ἐν-οικέω, *inhabit*; *οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες, the inhabitants*.  
 ἐν-οράω, *see in a thing, perceive, distinguish*.  
 ἐνταῦθα, *here, there*; *hereupon, then*.  
 ἐντελής, -ές, *full, complete*.  
 ἐντεῦθεν, *thence, thereupon*.  
 ἐν-τίθημι, *place on, put on board*.  
 ἐντός, *within*.  
 ἐν-τυγχάνω, *happen upon, find*.  
 Ἐνυάλιος, -ου, ὁ, *Euryalius*, epithet of Ares, as god of destructive warfare.  
 ἐξ, with gen., *out of, forth, from*.  
 ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *bring out word, report*.  
 ἐξ-άγω, *bring or conduct out*; *induce, tempt*.  
 ἐξ-αιτέω, *demand as a right, beg off*; *mid., demand, beg for as a favor*.  
 ἐξακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *six thousand*.  
 ἐξακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *six hundred*.  
 ἐξ-έβαλον. See ἐκ-βάλλω.  
 ἐξ-ελαύνω, *drive out, march*.

ἐξ-ελθεῖν. See ἐξ-έρχομαι.  
 ἐξ-ελιπον. See ἐκ-λείπω.  
 ἐξ-έρχομαι, come or go out, escape.  
 ἐξέτασις, -εως, ἡ, review, examination.  
 ἐξ-έφυγον. See ἐκ-φεύγω.  
 ἐξ-ἤλθον. See ἐξ-έρχομαι.  
 ἐξ-ἤχθην. See ἐξ-άγω.  
 ἐξ-ικνέομαι, come as far as, reach.  
 ἐξ-ίστημι, mid., stand out or away from.  
 ἔξομεν. See ἔχω.  
 ἐξ-οπλίζω, arm fully or completely.  
 ἐξοπλισία, -ās, ἡ, the arming or equipping of soldiers.  
 ἔξω, adv., outside; τὸ ἔξω, the outside or outer.  
 ἔπαθον. See πάσχω.  
 ἐπ-αινέω, -έσω, applaud, praise.  
 ἐπέε, conj., when, after; since (causal).  
 ἐπειδάν, conj. with subj., whenever.  
 ἐπειδή, when indeed, after.  
 ἐπ-εἰμι, am upon or over.  
 ἐπ-εἰμι, come against, attack, advance.  
 ἐπεισα, ἐπέισθην. See πείθω.  
 ἐπειτα, thereupon, then, afterwards.  
 ἐπ-ελιπον. See ἐπι-λείπω.  
 ἐπ-επάμην, -το. See πάομαι.  
 ἐπ-ίστην. See ἐφ-ίστημι.  
 ἐπ-ῆεν, -ῆεσαν. See ἐπ-εἰμι (2).  
 ἐπ-ῆν. See ἐπ-εἰμι (1).  
 ἐπ-ῆνεσαν. See ἐπ-αινέω.  
 ἐπί, with gen., on, upon; ἐπὶ τετ-  
 τάρων, in fours, four deep; ἐφ'  
 ἡμῶν, in our time; with dat. at,  
 upon, for (purpose); ἐπὶ τούτῳ, for  
 that object; ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, to death;  
 ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, in the power of, etc.;  
 with acc. to, against; ἐπὶ πολὺ, to a  
 great distance.  
 ἐπ-ιάσι(ν). See ἐπ-εἰμι (2).  
 ἐπι-βουλεύω, plot against.  
 ἐπιβουλή, -ῆς, ἡ, conspiracy, plot.  
 ἐπι-δείκνυμι, show, exhibit.  
 ἐπι-διώκω, pursue.  
 ἐπι-θεῖναι, ἐπι-θῶ. See ἐπι-τίθημι.

ἐπι-θῶμι, desire or long for.  
 ἐπι-κάμπτω, bend or bring (the wings  
 of an army) together.  
 ἐπικίνδυνος, -ον, dangerous.  
 ἐπι-κρύπτω, cover over, conceal.  
 ἐπι-λέγω, say in reference to or in  
 connection with a thing.  
 ἐπι-λείπω, leave, fail, forsake.  
 ἐπιμέλεια, -ās, ἡ, care, attention.  
 ἐπι-μελλομαι, care for, give attention  
 to.  
 ἐπίμπλην. See πῖμπλημι.  
 ἐπι-πίπτω, fall upon, attack.  
 ἐπίπνονος, -ον, laborious, difficult.  
 ἐπι-ρ-ρυτος, -ον, well-watered.  
 ἐπι-σίτιζομαι, lay in provisions.  
 ἐπι-σίτισμός, -οῦ, ὁ, a laying in of  
 provisions.  
 ἐπίσταμαι, know, know how. 535. 6;  
 339.  
 ἐπι-στήσας. See ἐφ-ίστημι.  
 ἐπιστολή, -ῆς, ἡ, letter.  
 ἐπι-σφάττω, slay upon or over. 514,  
 15; 355.  
 ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον, suitable, fitting;  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, provisions.  
 ἐπι-τίθημι, place upon; ἐ. δίκην, inflict  
 punishment.  
 ἐπι-τρέπω, turn or give over to, allow.  
 508, 28; 357.  
 ἐπι-τυγχάνω, happen upon, find.  
 523, 9; 357.  
 ἐπι-φέρω, bring upon; mid., rush  
 upon, attack.  
 ἐπι-χειρέω, undertake, attempt.  
 ἐπι-χωρέω, move upon, advance.  
 ἐπ-ιών, -οῦσα, -όν. See ἐπ-εἰμι (2).  
 ἐπλευσα. See πλέω.  
 ἔπομαι, follow. 508, 13; 339.  
 ἐπτὰ, septem, seven.  
 ἑπτα-κόσιοι, -αι, -α, seven hundred.  
 Ἐπύαξα, -ης, ἡ, Epyaxa.  
 ἐπυθόμην. See πυνθάνομαι.  
 ἔργον, -ου, τό, work, action; τὰ εἰς  
 τὸν πόλεμον ἔργα, the deeds of war.

ἐρεῖ. See φημί.  
 ἔρημος, -ον, deserted, desert; deprived  
 of, without.  
 ἐρίζω, strive or contend with.  
 ἔρμηνεύς, -έως, ὁ, interpreter.  
 ἔρυμα, -ατος, τό, defence, protection.  
 ἐρυμός, -ῆ, -όν, fortified, strong (as a  
 fort).  
 ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, 2 aor. ἦλθον,  
 come, go. 539, 2; 340.  
 ἐρωτάω, -ήσω, ask.  
 ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, 2 aor. ἔφαγον, eat.  
 ἐσοίμην, ἔσται, ἔστέ, ἐστί(ν). See  
 εἰμί.  
 ἔστε, conj., until.  
 ἔστηκα, ἐστώς, ἔστην. See ἴστημι.  
 ἔσχατος, -η, -ον, last, farthest.  
 ἔσχον. See ἔχω.  
 ἔσωθεν, within; τὸ ἔσωθεν, the inner.  
 ἔσωσα. See σώζω.  
 ἔταξα, ἐτάχθην. See τάττω.  
 ἕτερος, -α, -ον, one or other of two,  
 another of two; plur., one or other, or  
 another of two divisions, parties, etc.  
 ἔτετιμήμην. See τιμάω.  
 ἔτι, yet, yet more; hereafter, after-  
 wards, still.  
 ἔτοιμος, -η, -ον, ready.  
 ἔτρωσα. See τιτρώσκω, wound.  
 ἔτυχον. See τυγχάνω.  
 εὖ, adv., well.  
 εὐδαιμονίζω, congratulate.  
 εὐδαίμων, -ον, fortunate, prosperous.  
 εὐθήθεια, -ās, ἡ, folly.  
 εὐθήτης, -ες, foolish.  
 εὐθύς, immediately; εὐ. παῖδες ὄντες,  
 immediately from childhood, from  
 very childhood.  
 εὖνοια, -ās, ἡ, good-will.  
 εὐνοϊκῶς, with good-will; εὖν. ἔχειν,  
 be well disposed, affectionate.  
 εὖνοος, -ον, contr. to εὖνους, -ου, of  
 good mind or feeling, well disposed.  
 εὐρίσκω, find. 533, 5; 340.  
 εὖρος, -ους, τό, width, breadth.

εὐταξία, -ās, ἡ, good order, arrange-  
 ment, discipline.  
 εὐ-τολμος, -ον, bold, courageous.  
 εὐ-τυχέω, be successful.  
 Εὐφράτης, the Euphrates.  
 εὐχή, -ῆς, ἡ, prayer, wish.  
 εὐχομαι, pray, wish earnestly.  
 εὐ-ώδης, -ες, fragrant.  
 εὐ-ώνυμος, -ον, left, left side, left wing  
 of an army.  
 ἐφάνην. See φαίνομαι.  
 ἔφασαν. See φημί.  
 Ἐφεσος, Ephesus; in Asia Minor at  
 the mouth of the Cayster.  
 ἐφ-εστήκεσαν. See ἐφ-ίστημι.  
 ἔφην, ἔφη. See φημί.  
 ἐφ-ίστημι, ἐπι-στήσω, place or set  
 upon or in; ἐ. τὸν ἵππον, check, etc.;  
 mid., stand by or over.  
 ἔφυγον. See φεύγω.  
 ἐχθρός, -οῦ, ὁ, personal enemy, foe.  
 ἔχω, imperf. εἶχον, ἔξω, 2 aor. ἔσχον,  
 have, hold; εὐνοικῶς ἐ., be kindly  
 disposed; ὅπως ἐ., be so, be in the  
 same condition; κακῶς ἐ., be in a  
 bad condition, go badly; ἐχόμενος,  
 mid., hold one's self to, come next.  
 508, 16; 340.  
 ἔψομαι. See ἔπομαι.  
 ἔρων, ἔρω. See ὀράω.  
 ἔως, ἔω, Attic decl., dawn.  
 ἔως, conj., while.

## Ζ.

ζάω, ζήσω, live. 412; 341.  
 ζεύγνυμι, ζεύξω, join. Lat. jungo.  
 528, 5; 341.  
 Ζεὺς, Διός, Zeus, the king of gods and  
 men.  
 ζῆν. See ζάω.  
 ζηλωτός, -ῆ, -όν, enviable, one to be  
 envied.  
 ζώνη, -ης, ἡ, zone, girdle, belt; εἰς  
 ζώνην, for pin-money.

Η.

ἦ . . . ἦ, *either . . . or.*  
 ἦ, *than.*  
 ἦ, *verily, certainly.*  
 ἦ. See ὁ, ἦ, τό.  
 ἦ. See ὅς ἦ, δ.  
 ἦ. See εἰμί.  
 ἠγάσθην. See ἀγαμαι.  
 ἠγεμών, -όνος, ὁ, *leader, guide; commander.*  
 ἠγέομαι, -ήσομαι, *lead, command; think, deem.*  
 ἦδειν. See οἶδα.  
 ἠδέως, *sweetly, gladly.*  
 ἦδη, *now, already, at length.*  
 ἠδύς, -εία, -ύ, *comp. ἠδέων, sweet.*  
 ἠδομαι, ἠδήσομαι, ἦσθην, *am pleased.*  
 ἦεν, ἦσαν. See εἶμι, *go.*  
 ἠέλων. See ἐθέλω.  
 ἠκιστα, *adv., least, least of all.*  
 ἠκω, ἦξω, *am come, have arrived.*  
 ἠλασα, ἠλαυνον. See ἐλαύνω.  
 ἠλθον. See ἔρχομαι.  
 ἠλί-βατος, -ον, *impassible, precipitous.*  
 ἠλικία, -ᾱς, ἦ, *time of life, age.*  
 ἠλικιώτης, -ον, ὁ, *an equal in years; companion.*  
 ἠλιος, -ου, ὁ, *sun.*  
 ἠμεῖς, *plur. of ἐγώ, we.*  
 ἠμελημένως, *carelessly.*  
 ἠμέρα, -ᾱς, ἦ, *day.*  
 ἠμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *our.*  
 ἠμί-βρωτος, -ον, *half-eaten.*  
 ἠμι-δᾶρεικόν, -οῦ, τό, *half-daric.*  
 ἠμι-δεής, -ές, *half-empty, half-full.*  
 ἠμι-όλιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *as substant., one and one-half, a half more.*  
 ἠμισυς, -εία, -υ, *half; as substant., a half.*  
 ἠμι-ωβόλιον, -ον, τό, *a half obol.*  
 ἦν, = ἐάν, *if, with subjunct.*  
 ἦν. See εἰμί.  
 ἦνεσχόμεν. See ἀνέχω.  
 ἦνίκα, *conj., when.*

ἠνι-οχος, -ου, ὁ, *driver of a wagon or chariot.*  
 ἦξιν, ἦξομι. See ἦκω.  
 ἠπερ. See ὄσπερ.  
 ἠρξάμην, ἠρχόμεν. See ἀρχω.  
 ἠρόμην, ἠρώτων. See ἐρωτάω.  
 ἦσαν. See εἰμί.  
 ἦσθανόμεν, ἦσθέμην. See αἰσθάνομαι.  
 ἦσθην. See ἦδομαι.  
 ἦσυχῆ, *quietly, noiselessly.*  
 ἠττάομαι, -ήσομαι, *be conquered.*  
 ἠύχόμεν. See εὐχομαι.  
 ἠύρον. See εὐρίσκω.

Θ.

θ', *for τέ, by elision before an initial rough vowel.*  
 θάλαττα, -ης, ἦ, *sea.*  
 θάνατος, -ου, ὁ, *death.*  
 θαρραλέως, *boldly, fearlessly.*  
 θαρρέω *am of good courage, have no fear.*  
 θαρρῶν, *give encouragement, cheer.*  
 θάπτων, *comp. of ταχύς, which see.*  
 θαυμάζω, -άσομαι, *wonder, admire.*  
 θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν, *wonderful.*  
 Θαψακηνός, -οῦ, ὁ, *inhabitant of Thapsacus.*  
 θεάομαι, -άσομαι, *behold, see, view.*  
 θεῖν. See θέω, *run.*  
 θεῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *miraculous, marvellous.*  
 θέμενος, θέντες. See τίθημι.  
 θεός, -οῦ, ὁ, *deity, god.*  
 θεραπεύω, *serve, provide or care for.*  
 θεράπων, -οντος, ὁ, *servant.*  
 θέσθαι. See τίθημι.  
 Θέτταλος, -ον, ὁ, *Thessalian.*  
 θέω, *run.*  
 θεωρέω, *view, review, e. g. an army.*  
 θηράω, -άσω, *hunt wild animals.*  
 θηρεύω, *go on a hunt, hunt.*  
 θηρίον, -ον, τό, *wild animal.*  
 θνήσκω, *die.* 530, 4; 342.

θόρυβος, -ου, ὁ, *noise.*  
 Θράξ, Θρακός, ὁ, *Thracian.*  
 θύρα, -ᾱς, ἦ, *gate, door.*  
 θύω, θύσω, *sacrifice.* 504, 2; 342.  
 θώραξ, -ᾱκος, ὁ, *breastplate.*

Ι.

ἰάομαι, -άσομαι, *dress or heal a wound.*  
 ἰατρός, -οῦ, ὁ, *physician.*  
 ἰδεῖν, ἰδών. See ὁράω, *see.*  
 ἰδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *private; eis τὸ ἴδιον, for private use.*  
 ἰδιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *a private person, private soldier.*  
 ἰδρῶς, *sweat.*  
 ἰεμαί, ἰεντο. See ἴημι.  
 ἰεναί, ἰω, ἰών. See εἶμι.  
 ἱερός, -ᾱ, -όν, *sacred; τὰ ἱερά, the omens indicated by the sacrifices.*  
 ἴημι, *send, throw; mid., send one's self, rush.* 534, 3; 342.  
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν, *enough, able.*  
 Ἰκόνιον, -ον, *Iconium, a city of Phrygia.*  
 ἴλη, -ης, ἦ, *troop, chiefly of horse, probably sixteen front and four deep.*  
 ἰνα, *conj., with subj. or opt., in order that.*  
 ἰόντος, ἰόντων, *etc. See εἶμι.*  
 ἱππεύς, -έως, ὁ, *horseman; plur., cavalry.*  
 ἱππικός, -ή, -όν, *of cavalry; τὸ ἱππικόν, the cavalry.*  
 ἱππό-δρομος, -ον, ἦ, *horse-race.*  
 ἵππος, -ου, ὁ, *horse; ἀπὸ ἵππου, on horseback.*  
 ἴσος, -η, -ον, *equal; ἐν ἴσῳ, in an even line, with equal step.*  
 Ἰσσοί, -ῶν, οἱ, *Issus, in eastern Cilicia, at the northeast corner of the Mediterranean.*

ἴστε. See οἶδα.

ἴστημι, *set, make stand, halt, stop; mid. and 2 aor. act., stand.* 534, 5; 342.  
 ἰστίον, -ου, τό, *sail.*  
 ἰσχυρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *strong.*  
 ἰσχυρῶς, *mightily, very.*  
 ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἦ, *vis, strength.*  
 ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ, *fish.*  
 ἴχνος, -ους, τό, *trace, track.*  
 Ἰωνία, -ᾱς, ἦ, *Ionian, the most central part of Asia Minor.*  
 Ἰωνικός, -ή, -όν, *Ionian.*

Κ.

καθ', *by elision for κατά, before a rough vowel.*  
 καθ-έξομαι, *impf. ἐκαθεζόμεν, sit down, halt, rest.*  
 καθ-εὔδω, *lie down, sleep.* 510, 8; 343.  
 καθ-ηδυσ-παθέω, *squander or waste in luxury.*  
 καθ-ήκω, *come down, extend down; belong to as a duty.*  
 κάθ-ημαι, *sit down, sit; of an army, am stationed.* 537, 2; 341 (ἦμαι).  
 καθ-ἵστημι, *set down, place, arrange, of forces; mid., with 2 aor. act., take one's place, be established, be settled.* 534, 5; 342.  
 καθ-οράω, *κατ-εἶδον, see fully, examine.* 539, 4; 350.  
 καί, *que, and, even, also; with partic., although; καὶ . . . καὶ, τέ . . . καὶ, both . . . and.*  
 καί-περ, *with partic., although.*  
 καιρός, -οῦ, ὁ, *occasion, particular moment.*  
 καί-τοι, *conj., and assuredly, and yet.*  
 καίω, κάω, *burn.* 520, 1; 343.  
 κακός, -ή, -όν, *bad, base, cowardly.*

κακούργος, -ου, ὁ, evil-doer.

κακῶς, badly, ill; κ. ποιεῖω, harm, wrong; κ. ἔχω, am in a bad condition; κ. πράττω, fare badly.

κάλαμος, -ου, ὁ, reed.

καλέω, call, name, call to one's self, summon. 504, 5; 343.

καλλωπισμός, -οῦ, ὁ, ornament, adornment.

καλός, -ή, -όν, beautiful; of omens, favorable.

καλῶς, beautifully, well; κ. πράττω, succeed; κ. ἔχω, am all right.

κάν, by crasis for και ἄν.

κάνδυσ, -υος, ὁ, a Persian coat, of wool or silk, purple-colored, buttoning over the breast, and furnished with loose sleeves, reaching to the fingers.

καπηλεῖον, -ου, τό, booth, shop.

καπίθη, -ης, ἡ, cupithe, a Persian measure, equal to 2½ choenics or 2.3 litres.

Καππαδοκία, -ᾶς, ἡ, Cappadocia, a province of eastern Asia Minor, north of the Taurus mountains.

κάρφη, -ης, ἡ, hay.

κατά, with gen., down from, down; with acc., down along, along, against; κατά γῆν, by land; κατ' ἔθνη, nation by nation; κατά χώρῶν, in the proper place.

καταβαίνω, come or go down, descend, dismount. 519, 7; 333.

κατ-αγάγοι. See κατ-άγω.

κατα-γελᾶω, laugh at, mock; exult.

κατ-άγω, 2 aor. κατ-ήγαγον, lend or bring down or back. 508, 6; 330.

κατα-δύω, sink (trans.). 507, 3; 337.

κατα-θεάομαι, -άσομαι, gaze down upon, look out towards.

κατα-κάνω, -κάνῶ, slay, put to death. 518, 7; 343.

κατα-καίω or -κείω, burn down, destroy by fire. 520, 1; 343.

κατα-κεκόψεσθαι. See κατα-κόπτω.

κατα-κόπτω, cut down, cut to pieces. 513, 9; 344.

κατα-λαμβάνω, seize, take possession of, catch. 523, 5; 346.

κατα-λείπω, leave behind, leave. 511, 7; 346.

κατα-λεύω, stone to death.

κατα-ληφ-, -ληψ-. See κατα-λαμβάνω.

κατα-λιπών. See κατα-λείπω.

κατ-αλλάττω, reconcile; pass, am reconciled. 514, 1; 331.

κατα-λύω, of an army, break ranks, rest, halt; κ. πρὸς, break up hostilities, make peace with.

κατα-μανθάνω, learn well. 523, 7; 347.

κατα-νοέω, consider or watch carefully.

κατα-πέμπω, send down, i. e. from the interior to the sea-coast.

κατα-πετρόω, stone to death.

κατα-πηδάω, -ήσομαι, leap down.

κατα-πράττω, do well, accomplish. 514, 6; 353.

κατα-σκέπτομαι, view, examine. 513, 15; 354.

κατα-σκευάζω, fit out, equip, improve.

κατα-σπάω, -σπάσω, draw down.

κατα-στήσομαι, -σω. See καθ-ίστημι.

κατα-στρέφω, over-turn, subdue. 508, 26; 355.

κατα-τίθημι, lay down, deposit, put away, e. g. a treasure.

κατα-φανής, -ές, gen. -οῦς, visible.

κατα-φεύγω, flee for refuge. 511, 15; 358.

κατ-έβην. See κατα-βαίνω.

κατ-εθέμην. See κατα-τίθημι.

κατ-ελήφθην. See κατα-λαμβάνω.

κατ-εργάζομαι, do thoroughly, accomplish. 359; 339.

κατ-έστην. See καθ-ίστημι.

κατ-ιδεῖν. See καθ-οράω.

καῦμα, -ατος, τό (καίω), heat.

Καῦστρου πεδῖον, plain of the Caister, a populous spot in Phrygia.

κάω. See καίω.

κέγχρος, -ου, ὁ, panic, a small grain valued as a food.

κείμαι, lie, lie fallen. 482; 178.

κέκτημαι. See κτάομαι.

Κελαιναί, -ῶν, αἱ, Celdææ, in Phrygia.

κελεύω, order, bid, command.

κενός, -ή, -όν, empty; foll. by gen., without.

Κεράμων ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ, Ceramon agora, a market-town in Phrygia.

κεράννυμι, mix, usually wine and water. 525, 1; 343.

κέρας, -ᾶτος, or -ως, τό, horn, wing of an army.

κερδαλέος, -ᾶ, -όν, gainful.

κέρδος, -ους, τό, gain; pay, wages.

κεφαλή, -ῆς, ἡ, head.

Κιλικία, -ᾶς, ἡ, Cilicia, the south-eastern province of Asia Minor.

Κίλιξ, -ικος, ὁ, a Cilician.

Κίλισσα, -ης, ἡ, Cilician woman.

κινδυνεύω, incur danger.

κίνδυνος, -ου, ὁ, danger.

κνημῖς, -ῖδος, ἡ, greave, leggin, worn to protect the lower part of the leg, and made usually of metal lined with some soft material.

Κολοσσαί, -ῶν, αἱ, Colossæ, in Phrygia, seat of the church to which Paul wrote the "Epistle to the Colossians."

κονι-ορτός, -οῦ, ὁ, cloud of dust.

κόπρος, -ου, ὁ, dung.

κοσμῶ, -ήσω, arrange, adorn.

κόσμος, -ου, ὁ, arrangement, adornment.

κούφος, -η, -όν, light, i. e. not heavy.

κράνος, -ους, τό, helmet.

κρατέω, -ήσω, am superior, conquer.

κράτιστος. See κρείττων.

κράτος, -ους, τό, strength, power; κατὰ κράτος, with all one's strength.

κραυγή, -ῆς, ἡ, shout.

κρέας, κρέως, τό, flesh, meat.

κρείττων, κράτιστος, comp. and sup. of ἀγαθός, superior, better, stronger, higher in rank.

κρεμάννυμι, hang up, suspend. 525, 2; 345.

κρήνη, -ης, ἡ, spring of water; fountain.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, a Cretan.

κριθή, -ῆς, ἡ, usually plur., barley.

κρίνω, judge. 519, 2; 345.

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ, trial.

κρύπτω, hide, conceal. 513, 10; 345.

κτάομαι, acquire. 465, a; 345.

κύκλος, -ου, ὁ, circle.

κυκλώω, encircle, surround.

κύκλωσις, -εως, ἡ, a surrounding, an encircling.

Κύρειος, -α, -όν, Cyræan, belonging to Cyrus.

κωλύω, prevent, hinder.

κώμη, -ης, ἡ, village.

## Δ

λαβεῖν, -οι, -όν. See λαμβάνω.

λαθεῖν. See λανθάνω.

λάθρᾱ or λάθρᾱ, secretly, without the knowledge of.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -ου, ὁ, Spartan.

λαμβάνω, take, capture, obtain. 523, 5; 346.

λαμπρότης, -ητος, ἡ, brightness, splendor.

λανθάνω, escape the knowledge or notice of; foll. by suppl. partic. 523, 6; 346.

λέγω, say, speak. 508, 19 b; 346.

λείπω, leave. 511, 7; 346.

λέξων, fut. act. part. of λέγω.

λευκο-θήραξ, -ἄκος, ὁ, *having a white breast-armor or corselet.*  
 λευκός, -ή, -όν, *bright, white.*  
 ληφθῆναι, λήψομαι. See λαμβάνω.  
 λίθος, -ου, ὁ, *stone.*  
 λιμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *hunger.*  
 λόγος, -ου, ὁ, *word, rumor, argument.*  
 λόγχη, -ης, ἡ, *spear-head, spear.*  
 λόφος, -ου, ὁ, *hill, height.*  
 λοχᾶγιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *a captaincy.*  
 λοχ-ἄγος, -οῦ, ὁ, *captain.*  
 λόχος, -ου, ὁ, *company of soldiers, consisting of 100 men.*  
 Λυδία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Lydia, the west central province of Asia Minor.*  
 Λύδιος, -ᾶ, -ον, *Lydian.*  
 Λύκαια (λερά), *the Lycian rites, celebrated by the Arcadians each spring in honor of Zeus, on the Lycian range.*  
 λυμαίνομαι, λυμανοῦμαι, *ruin, spoil.*  
 λυπέω, *pain, grieve.*

## M.

μά, *pay, surely; μά τοῦ θεοῦ, pay, surely, by the gods.*  
 Μαίανδρος, -ου, ὁ, *the Maeander river.*  
 μακαριστός, -ή, -όν, *made happy; enviable.*  
 μακρός, -ά, -όν, *long.*  
 μάλα, *comp. μάλλον, sup. μάλιστα, very, exceedingly; comp. rather; sup. most especially, most, best.*  
 μανθάνω, *learn.*  
 μάντις, -εως, ὁ, *prophet, soothsayer.*  
 Μαρσύας, -ου, ὁ, *Marsyas, the Marsyas river.*  
 μαστός, -οῦ, ὁ, *the breast.*  
 μάχαιρα, -ᾶς, ἡ, *dagger, with only one edge sharp, the dull edge being straight, the sharp one curved; this weapon was worn at the belt.*

μάχη, -ης, ἡ, *battle, fight.*  
 μάχομαι, *fight, fight with.* 510, 11; 347.  
 μέ, μ', μου, μοί. See ἐγώ.  
 μεγάλη. See μέγας.  
 μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, *in a courtly or magnificent way.*  
 Μεγαρεύς, -έως, ὁ, *a Megarian.*  
 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *great, large; τὸ μέγιστον, chiefly.*  
 μεθ', *by elision for μετά, before a rough vowel.*  
 μέζων, *larger, greater; comp. of μέγας.*  
 μέναι, *aor. inf. act. of μένω.*  
 μέλων, *comp. of μικρός, less, worse; μέιον ἔχειω, be worsted.*  
 μελανία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *blackness, black object.*  
 μέλα, *fut. μελήσει, it is a care, it concerns; ἐμοὶ μελήσει, it will be my care.*  
 μελετηρός, -ά, -όν, *assiduous or studious in practising.*  
 μελίνη, -ης, ἡ, *millet, panic, usually plur.*  
 μέλλω, *intend, am likely, am about to.*  
 μέν, *postpos. particle, on the one hand, indeed; reg. foll. by an adverbative δέ.*  
 μέν-τοι, *but yet, however.*  
 μένω, *aor. ἔμεινα, remain.*  
 μέρος, -ους, τό, *part, portion.*  
 μεσ-ημβρία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *mid-day; south.*  
 μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle; τὸ μέσον, the middle.*  
 μεστός, -ή, -όν, *full.*  
 μετά, *with gen. or acc.; with gen., with; μετά ἀδικίας, with, by means of, injustice; with acc., after.*  
 μετα-μέλα, *poenitet, it repents; μσοι, you repent.*  
 μεταξύ, *between.*  
 μετά-πεμπτος, *sent after.*  
 μετα-πίπτω, *send after; mid., send after to come to myself.* 508, 21; 351.

μετέωρος, -ον, *in mid air, raised from the ground.*  
 μέχρι, *up to, as far as, until.*  
 μή, *as conj., with subj. or opt., that not, lest; as adv., not; ὅποι μή, except where; εἰ μή, unless.*  
 μηδέ, *nor, ne . . . quidem, not even.*  
 μηδεῖς, *not even one, no one.*  
 Μηδιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Media, the country lying north and east of the Tigris river.*  
 μη-κ-έτι, *not again, no longer.*  
 μήκος, -ους, τό, *length.*  
 μὴν, *adv., vero, in truth, however, yet.*  
 μὴν, μηνός, ὁ, *month.*  
 μή-ποτε, *n-ever.*  
 μήτε, *and not; μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor.*  
 μήτηρ, -τρός, ἡ, *mother.*  
 Μίδας, -ου, ὁ, *Midas.*  
 μικρός, -ά, -όν, *small; μικρόν, adv. acc., narrowly.*  
 Μιλήσιος, -ία, -ον, *Milesian.*  
 Μίλητος, -ου, ἡ, *Miletus, an Ionian city.*  
 μνησκόω, *remind; perf. mid., remember.* 530, 8; 348.  
 μισθο-δότης, -ου, ὁ, *pay-giver, pay-master.*  
 μισθός, -οῦ, ὁ, *pay, wages.*  
 μισθο-φόρος, -ου, ὁ, *servicing for pay, mercenary.*  
 μισθώω, *hire.*  
 μνᾶ, -ᾶς, ἡ, *mina, = 100 drachmae,  $\frac{1}{60}$  of a talent, a little less than \$20.*  
 μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone, only.*  
 μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ, *myriad, 10,000.*  
 μύριος, -ᾶ, -ον, *10,000.*  
 Μύσιος, -ᾶ, -ον, *Mysian.* Mysia lay in the northwest part of Asia Minor.  
 Μῦσός, -οῦ, ὁ, *same as the preceding.*

## N.

ναύ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *ship commander, admiral.*  
 ναῦς, νε-ώς, ἡ, *navis, ship.*  
 ναυτικός, -ή, -όν, *naval.*  
 νέος, -ᾶ, -ον, *novus, young.*  
 νεφέλη, -ης, ἡ, *cloud.*  
 νεώς, νεών. See ναῦς.  
 νή, *adv., of swearing, yea by; νῆ Δία, yea, by Zeus.*  
 νή-es. See ναῦς.  
 νικάω, *conquer.*  
 νίκη, -ης, ἡ, *victory.*  
 νομίζω, *suppose, believe, think.* 348.  
 νόμος, -ου, ὁ, *custom.*  
 νόος (νοῦς), -όν (-οῦ), ὁ, *mind.*  
 νύκτ-es, etc. See νύξ.  
 νῦν, *nunc, now.*  
 νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night; μέσαι νύκτες, midnight.*

## Ξ.

Ξενίας, -ου, ὁ, *Xenias.*  
 ξενικός, -ή, -όν, *of mercenaries; τὸ ξ., the mercenary army.*  
 ξένος, -ου, ὁ, *guest-friend, mercenary.*  
 Ξενοφών, -ώντος, ὁ, *Xenophon.*  
 ξύλινος, -η, -ον, *wooden.*  
 ξύλον, -ου, τό, *wood, piece of wood.*

## O.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, *the article, the; ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, he (this) on the one hand . . . he (that) on the other; ὁ δέ, he, however; freq. poss., e.g. πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, before his brother; freq. = those who, e.g. τοὺς ἐκπεπτοκότας, those who had been exiled.*  
 ὀ. See ὄς. ὀτι. See ὄστις.  
 ὀβολός, -ου, ὁ, *obol, about 3½ cents.*



88ε, ηδε, τ6δε, *this*.  
 6δ6ς, -6υ, η, *way, route, journey*.  
 6θεν, *whence*.  
 6ι, *the*; see 6. 6ι, see 6ς. 6ι, encl., see 6υ.  
 6ιδα, *I know*; perf. with a pres. meaning; χ6ρω 6ιδα, *am grateful*. 491; 178.  
 6ικαδε, *homeward*.  
 6ικ6ω, *inhabit*; π6λις 6ικουμ6νη, *a city well-inhabited*.  
 6ικο-δομ6ω, *build* (house, palace, etc.).  
 6ικ6ι, *at home*; 6ι 6ικ6ι, *those at home*.  
 6ικο-ν6μος, -6υ, 6, *housekeeper, steward*.  
 6ικτε6ρω, *pity*.  
 6ιμαι, *think*; often parenthetical, *me-thinks*.  
 6ινοσ, -6υ, 6, **vinum**, **WINE**.  
 6ιομαι, *think, suppose*. 510, 16; 349.  
 6ιοσ, -6, -6υ, **qualis**, *of what or which kind or nature*.  
 6ιοσ-περ, -6-περ, -6υ-περ, *of just which kind or nature*.  
 6ιτινεσ. See 6στισ.  
 6ιχομαι, *am gone*. 510, 17; 349.  
 6κν6ω, *hesitate, am reluctant*.  
 6κτακ6σιοι, -6ι, -6α, *eight hundred*.  
 6κτ6, *eight*.  
 6λεθροσ, -6υ, 6, *destruction*.  
 6λιγοσ, -η, -6υ, *small, little* (in quantity); plur., *few*; 6λιγον (δει), *almost*.  
 6λκασ, -6δοσ, η, *freight-vessel, merchantman*.  
 6λοσ, -η, -6υ, *whole, entire*.  
 6μο-τραπ6εζοσ, adj. used as noun, -6υ, 6, *table-companion*.  
 6μου, *together*.  
 6μωσ, *at the same time, nevertheless*.  
 6υ. See 6ς.  
 6νομα, -6τοσ, τ6, *name*.  
 6νοσ, -6υ, 6, *ass*; 6. 6λετ6ησ, *millstone*.  
 6ντ-6σ, -εσ, etc. See 6ιμι.

6-πη, *whither, in what way or direction*.  
 6πισθεν, *from behind, in the rear*.  
 6πλιζω, *arm, put on armor*.  
 6πλιτ6ησ, -6υ, 6, *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite*.  
 6πλον, -6υ, τ6, plur. τ6 6πλα, *armor, arms*.  
 6πόσοσ, -η, -6υ, *how large soever*; plur., *how many soever*.  
 6π6τε, *whenever, when* (indefinite).  
 6που, *wherever*; 6που μ6, *except where*.  
 6πωσ, conj., *in order that*; adv., *in whatever way*.  
 6ραω, see. 539, 4; 350.  
 6ργ6η, -ησ, η, *anger*.  
 6ργιζω, *make angry*.  
 6ργυι6, -6ησ, η, *fathom, six feet*.  
 6ρθιοσ, -ι6, -6υ, *steep*.  
 6ρθωσ, *rightly*.  
 6ρμ6ω, *start, rush*; mid., *start, set out from*.  
 6ρμ6ω, *lie at anchor*.  
 6ροσ, -6υσ, τ6, *mountain*.  
 6ρυκτ6σ, -η, -66ν, *dug*.  
 6ρυττω, *dig*. 514, 4; 350.  
 6ρχομ6νιοσ, -6υ, 6, *Orchomenian*.  
 Orchomenos was located in the east part of Arcadia.  
 6σ, η, 6, *who, which*; 6δ, as adv., *where*; η δυνατ6ν μ6λιστα, *as well or strictly as possible*.  
 6σοσ, -η, -6υ, **quantus**, *how much or great*; plur., *as many as*; παντεσ 6σοι, *all who*; with numerals, 6σον, *just about*.  
 6σοσ-περ, -η-περ, -6υ-περ, *just as much or many as*.  
 6σ-τισ, η-τισ, 6-τι, *whoever, whichever, whatever*.  
 6ταν, *whenever*.  
 6τε, *when*.  
 6τι, conj. *that, because*; with the superlat., intensive, e. g. 6τι πλειστουσ, *as many as possible*.

6τι, 6του, 6τω. See 6στισ.  
 6υ, 6υκ, 6υχ, *not* (denying a fact); 6υκ 6φασαν λ6ναι, *they refused to go*.  
 6υ. See 6ς.  
 6υ, 6ι, 6ι, encl., **sui, sibi, se**, *of himself or herself, etc.*  
 6υδαμου, *nowhere*.  
 6υδε, 6υδ', *and not, nor*; = **ne . . . quidem**, *not even*.  
 6υδ-6ισ, 6υδε-μια, *nobody, no* (adj.), 6υδ-6ν, *nothing*.  
 6υκ. See 6υ.  
 6υκ-6τι, *no longer*.  
 6υκουν, **nonne**, *not therefore?*  
 6υν, *accordingly, however, be that as it may*.  
 6υ-ποτε, *n-ever*.  
 6υ-πω, *not yet*.  
 6υ-π6-ποτε, *not yet at any time, never before*.  
 6υσ. See 6ς.  
 6υσα, 6υσιν. See 6ιμι.  
 6υτε, *nor*; 6υτε . . . 6υτε, *neither . . . nor*.  
 6υτινοσ. See 6στισ.  
 6υτοσ, 6υτη, τ6υτο, *this, that*; και τ6υτα, *and that too*.  
 6υτοσ-ι, *this . . . here*.  
 6υτω(σ), *thus*.  
 6φειλω, *owe*; pass., *owed, due*. 518, 12; 350.  
 6φελοσ, τ6, *use, advantage*.  
 6φθαλμ6σ, -6υ, 6, *eye*.  
 6χυροσ, -6, -66ν (6χω), *tenable*; of a stronghold, *fortified*.

II.

παθειν. See πασχω.  
 παθοσ, -6υσ, τ6, *treatment*.  
 παι6νιζω, *sing a paean or war-song*.  
 παιδευ6ω, *educate*.  
 παισ, παιδοσ, 6 or η, *child; boy, girl*.

παιω, *strike*. 505, 12; 350.  
 παλαι, *long ago*.  
 παλιν, *back, again*.  
 παλλακισ, -ιδοσ, η, *mistress*.  
 παλτον, -6υ, τ6, *javelin, Persian spear*, light and easily handled  
 παν. See πασ.  
 παντ6-ι-6υσι(ν), *wholly*.  
 παντη, *on all sides, altogether*.  
 παντοδαποσ, -η, -66ν, *of every kind*.  
 παντοιοσ, -6α, -66ν, *of every kind, various, manifold*.  
 πανυ, *wholly, very*.  
 παρ6, **BESIDE**: (a) with gen., *from* (beside); (b) with dat., *beside, at*; (c) with acc., *to* (the side of); *against, i. e. contrary to, e. g. περι τ6σ σπονδοσ*.  
 παρ-αγγελλω, *pass the word along, order, summon*.  
 παρ-γιγνομαι, *become by the side of, arrive*.  
 παρ6δεισοσ, -6υ, 6, *park* (Persian).  
 παρ-αιν6ω, *advise; exhort*.  
 παρ-καλ6ω, *call to my side, invite*.  
 παρ-κελευ6μαι, *bid, urge, encourage*.  
 παρ-αμ-ιζω, *change*; mid., *change* (a line of battle) for one's self.  
 παρ-αμ-ηριδιον, -6υ, τ6, adj. used subst., *thigh-piece* (of armor).  
 παρ-απλησιοσ, -ι6, -66ν, or -6σ, -66ν, *similar*.  
 παρ-ασαγγησ, -6υ, 6, *parasang* (Pers.), = 30 stadia, 5½ kilometers, a little more than 3 miles, *league*.  
 παρ-ασκευαζω, mid., *prepare, make ready*.  
 παρ-ασκευη, -ησ, η, *preparation*.  
 παρ-αταττω, *arrange in line* (for battle).  
 παρ-ατεινω, *stretch along, extend*.  
 παρ-εγεν6μην, -ετο. See παρ-αγιγνομαι.  
 παρ-ειμι, *am by or on hand, am present; arrive*.

παρ-ελαύνω, march or drive by or past.  
 παρ-έρχομαι, go along, past or through.  
 παρ-ετέτατο. See παρα-τείνω.  
 παρ-έχω, furnish; cause.  
 παρ-ήλασα. See παρ-ελαύνω.  
 παρ-ήλθον. See παρ-έρχομαι.  
 παρ-ήν. See πάρ-εμι.  
 πάρ-οδος, -ου, ἡ, way by passage, pass.  
 Παρράσιος, -ου, ὁ, Parthasian. Parthasia was in southwest Arcadia.  
 παρ-ών. See πάρ-εμι.  
 πᾶς, every, all.  
 πάσχω, suffer; εὖ π., enjoy. 533, 11; 351.  
 πατήρ, -τρός, ὁ, father.  
 πατρῖς, -ίδος, ἡ, fatherland.  
 πατρῶς, -ᾶ, -ου, paternal, hereditary.  
 παύω, stop; mid., cease. 505, 17.  
 πεδῖον, -ου, τό, plain.  
 πεζός, -ή, -όν, of infantry; subst. foot-soldier, plur. infantry; πεζῶν, on foot.  
 πείθω, persuade; mid. and pass., believe, obey. 511, 8; 351.  
 πεινάω, am hungry.  
 πείρα, -ᾶς, ἡ, experience, acquaintance.  
 πειράω, -άσω, mid., try.  
 πείσᾶς, πεισθείς. See πείθω.  
 πείσομαι. See πάσχω and πείθω.  
 πελάζω, draw near, approach.  
 Πελοποννήσιος, -ᾶ, -ου, Peloponnesian.  
 Πελοπόννησος, -ου, ἡ, Peloponnese, that part of Greece which is south of the Isthmus of Corinth.  
 πελταστής, -ου, ὁ, peltast, a soldier armed with a spear (ἀκόντιον) about 4½ feet long, a sword, and a small wooden shield (πέλτη) covered with leather.  
 πελταστικός, -ή, -όν, of peltasts; subst., force of peltasts, targeteers.  
 πέλτη, -ης, ἡ, pelta. See πελταστής.

πέμπω, send. 508, 21; 351.  
 πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, five hundred.  
 πέντε, five.  
 πεντε-καί-δεκα, fifteen.  
 πενήκοντα, fifty.  
 πέπτωκα, -κώς. See πίπτω.  
 πέραν, on the other side, across.  
 πέρδιξ, -ῖκος, ὁ, partridge.  
 περί, around; with gen., about, concerning; π. παντός (or πολλοῦ) ποιεῖσθαι, to consider as all (or very) important; with dat., about, with the idea of place where; with acc., about, concerning.  
 περι-γίγνομαι, become around, prevail over.  
 περί-εμι, get the upper hand, surpass.  
 περι-έχω, surround.  
 περι-ήν. See περί-εμι.  
 περι-πεσεῖν. See περι-πίπτω.  
 περι-πίπτω, fall round about, embrace.  
 περι-πλέω, sail around.  
 περι-πτύσσω, fold round about, surround, enfold.  
 περι-ρ-ρέω, flow round about.  
 περιστερὰ, -ᾶς, ἡ, dove.  
 Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ, a Persian.  
 Περσικός, -ή, -όν, Persian.  
 πέτομαι, fly. 508, 23; 351.  
 πέτρᾶ, -ᾶς, ἡ, rock, rocky cliff.  
 πηγῆ, -ῆς, ἡ, source, of a river.  
 πηλός, -οῦ, ὁ, mud.  
 πιέζω, press, bring into distress.  
 πῖμπλημι, πλοο, fill. 534, 7; 352.  
 πίπτω, fall. 506, 4; 352.  
 Πισιδίης, -ου, ὁ, a Pisidian. Pisidia was a district of Asia Minor, south of Phrygia, and bordering on the Mediterranean.  
 πιστεύω, trust, have confidence in.  
 πίστις, -εως, ἡ, trust, confidence, pledge.  
 πιστός, -ή, -όν, trusty; τὰ πιστά, pledges.

πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ, faithfulness.  
 πλάγιος, -ιά, -ον, oblique; eis πλάγιον, obliquely, sideways.  
 πλαίσιον, -ου, τό, rectangle; square.  
 πλανάομαι, wander.  
 πλεθριαῖος, -ιά, -ον, of a plethrum (100 feet) in length or width.  
 πλέθρον, -ου, τό, plethrum, 30.83 meters, a little more than 101 feet.  
 πλείων, πλείων, πλείστος. See πολὺς.  
 πλέω, sail. 512, 3; 352.  
 πλέων, πλέων. See πολὺς.  
 πληγή, -ῆς, ἡ, plaga, blow.  
 πλήθος, -ους, τό, multitude, extent, number.  
 πλήθω, am full; ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, market-time. 534, 7.  
 πλὴν, prep., except; conj., except that.  
 πλήρης, -ες, full.  
 πλησιάζω, come near, approach.  
 πλησίον, adv., near.  
 πλοῖον, -ου, τό, boat, large or small; the larger boat propelled by banks of oars is called ναῦς or τριήρης.  
 πλούσιος, -ιά, -ον, rich.  
 πλουτέω, am rich.  
 ποδ-ήρης, -ες, reaching to the feet.  
 ποδός, ποδῶν. See ποῦς.  
 ποιέω, make, do. See εὖ, κακῶς, περί.  
 ποιητέος, -ᾶ, -ον, faciendus, must be made or done.  
 ποικίλος, -η, -ον, many-colored, embroidered.  
 πολεμέω, make or carry on war.  
 πολέμιος, -ιά, -ον, hostile; subst., an enemy; τὰ πολέμια, military affairs.  
 πόλεμος, -ου, ὁ, war.  
 πολι-ορκέω, besiege.  
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ, city.  
 πολλάκις, often.  
 πολλα-πλάσιος, -ιά, -ον, manifold, many more.  
 πολὺς, comp. πλείων, sup. πλείστος, much, plur. many; τὸ πολὺ, the

greater part; διὰ πολλά, for many reasons; πλείον, πλείον, plus, more.  
 πολυ-τελής, -ές, costly.  
 πονέω, labor, toil.  
 πορεία, -ᾶς, ἡ, journey.  
 πορεύω, mid., proceed, march, journey.  
 πόρρω, far away, far from.  
 πορφύρεος (-οῦς), -έα (-ᾶ), -εον (-οῦν), purple.  
 ποσί. See ποῦς.  
 ποταμός, -οῦ, ὁ, river.  
 ποτέ, at some time, once.  
 πότερον, utrum, whether.  
 ποτός, -ή, -όν, drinkable; τί ποτόν, anything to drink.  
 ποῦ, anywhere, perhaps.  
 ποῦς, ποδός, ὁ, foot.  
 πράγμα, -ατος, τό, affair, deed; plur. business; trouble.  
 πράεων. See πρᾶος.  
 πρᾶνής, -ές, steep.  
 πράξις, -εως, ἡ, business, undertaking.  
 πρᾶος, -εῖα, -ον, mild, tame.  
 πράττω, do, perform; κακῶς π., fare badly, am unsuccessful. 514, 6; 353.  
 πρᾶως, mildly.  
 πρέπω, become, suit.  
 πρέσβυς, -εως, comp. -ύτερος, old.  
 πρίασθαι (see ὠνόμαϊ), buy, 539, 7; 164, 165.  
 πρίν, conj., before, freq. with πρόσθεν preceding.  
 πρό, before, with gen.; in front of, before (temporal); in behalf of.  
 προ-αισθάνομαι, perceive in advance or beforehand.  
 προ-βάλλω, throw before; mid., throw before one's self; προβάλλεσθαι τὰ δπλα, present arms.  
 προ-δίδωμι, prodo, give up, betray.  
 προ-δούς, προ-δόντα. See προ-δίδωμι.  
 προ-δραμών. See προ-τρέχω.

προ-είπον, announce beforehand or in the presence of others.  
 προ-ειστήκαν. From προ-ίστημι.  
 προ-ελαύνω, ride forward.  
 προ-ήειν. From πρό-εμι.  
 προ-θυμέομαι, am eager or zealous.  
 προ-θυμίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, eagerness, zeal.  
 πρό-θυμος, -ον, eager.  
 προ-θυμῶς, eagerly.  
 προ-ίδοιμι. From προ-οράω.  
 προ-ύναμι. From πρό-εμι.  
 προ-ήμι, throw away, desert, abandon.  
 προ-ίστημι, place in command, set in charge.  
 προ-κατα-κάω, burn in advance of or before others.  
 προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, seize in advance of or before others.  
 προ-μετωπίδιον, -ον, τό, protection for the head, head-piece.  
 πρό-οιτο. See προ-ίημι.  
 προ-οράω, see beforehand or in front.  
 πρόσ, at, by; with gen., in front of; προς θεῶν, in the sight of the gods; προς τοῦ τρόπου, in accord with the character; with dat., at, in addition to; with acc., to, towards; with reference to.  
 προσ-άγω, lead on or forward, advance.  
 προσ-αιτέω, ask in addition, ask besides.  
 προσ-δίδωμι, give in addition, give besides.  
 προσ-ελαβον. See προσ-λαμβάνω.  
 πρόσ-εμι, come towards, advance.  
 προσ-ελαύνω, ride or march towards, advance.  
 προσ-έρχομαι, come towards, approach.  
 προσ-ετάχθη. See προσ-τάττω.  
 προσ-έχω, hold to, apply; τὸν νοῦν προσέχω, give attention.  
 προσ-ήειν. See πρόσ-εμι.

προσ-ήκω, come or extend towards, pertain to, am related to.  
 προσ-ήεσαν. See πρόσ-εμι.  
 πρόσθεν, before; π. . . πρὶν, before that; ὁ πρόσθεν, the previous.  
 προσ-θέσθαι. See προσ-τίθημι.  
 προσ-ιών. See πρόσ-εμι.  
 προσ-καλέω, call towards, summon.  
 προσ-κυνέω, do reverence, bow down before.  
 προσ-λαμβάνω, take in addition or besides.  
 πρόσ-οδος, -ου, ἡ, return, revenue, gain.  
 προσ-ποιέω, pretend.  
 προσ-πολεμέω, make war against.  
 προσ-τάττω, lay a command or duty upon, command.  
 προσ-στερνίδιον, -ον, τό, breast-protector, breastplate.  
 προσ-τίθημι, place by or beside, add; mid., concur.  
 πρόσω, forward.  
 πρότερος, -ᾱ, -ον, prior, before, sooner.  
 προ-τίμάω, honor or esteem before others.  
 προ-τρέχω, run before, outrun.  
 προ-φαίνω, mid., appear in front or in the distance.  
 πρό-φασις, -ews, ἡ, pretext.  
 προ-χωρέω, advance, help, be for one's convenience.  
 πρώτος, -η, -ον, first; πρώτον, adv., primum, first.  
 πτέρυξ, -υγος, ἡ, wing.  
 πύλη, -ης, ἡ, gate.  
 πυθάνομαι, inquire, learn by inquiry. 523, 8; 353.  
 πῦρός, -οῦ, ὁ, chiefly plur., wheat.  
 πῶ, yet, up to this or that time.  
 πωλέω, sell.  
 πῶποτε, ever yet, ever, up to this or that time.  
 πῶς, how?  
 πῶς, encl., somehow; ὡδέ πως, about as follows.

## Ρ.

ρέω, flow. 512, 5; 353.  
 ῥίπτω, throw. 513, 13; 354.

## Σ.

σαλπίζω, blow the trumpet. 398, b; 354.  
 Σάμιος, -ον, ὁ, Samian. Samos was a very important island, lying off the west central part of Asia Minor.  
 Σάρδεις, -εων, αἱ, Sardis, on the river Pactolus; the capital of Lydia.  
 σατραπεύω, am satrap or ruler over.  
 σαφῶς, clearly.  
 σεαυτοῦ, σαντοῦ, of thyself. 266; 80.  
 σημεῖον, -ου, τό, sign, standard.  
 σήσαμον, -ου, τό, sesame, a seed largely cultivated in Persia for the oil it furnishes, and for its excellence as a food.  
 σιγή, -ῆς, ἡ, silence.  
 σίγλος, -ου, ὁ, shekel, = 7½ obols, 25 cents.  
 σιτ-αγωγός, -όν, grain-carrying.  
 σίτιον, -ου, τό, bread, food.  
 σίτος, -ου, ὁ, grain.  
 σιωπάω, am silent.  
 σκεπτός, -ᾱ, -ον, to be considered.  
 σκέπτομαι, specio, look at, examine, consider. 513, 15; 354.  
 σκευο-φόρος, -ον, baggage-carrying; subs., neut. plur., pack-animals.  
 σκηνέω, encamp.  
 σκηνή, -ῆς, ἡ, tent.  
 σκηπτούχος, -ου, ὁ, sceptre-bearer.  
 σκοπέω. See σκέπτομαι.  
 σοφία, -ᾱς, ἡ, wisdom, (musical) skill.  
 σοφός, -ῆ, -όν, wise, accomplished, skilful.  
 σπάνιος, -ιά, -ον, scarce, rare.  
 σπάω, draw. 503, 4; 355.

σπένδω, pour, make a libation; mid., make a libation (hence treaty), with some one. 463, c; 355.  
 σπεύδω, hasten.  
 σπονδή, -ῆς, ἡ, libation; plur. treaty.  
 σπουδαιο-λογέω, talk earnestly or on weighty topics.  
 σπουδή, -ῆς, ἡ, haste.  
 στάδιον, -ου, τό, plur. τὰ στάδια or οἱ στάδιοι, stadium, little less than a furlong, = about 606 feet.  
 σταθμός, -οῦ, ὁ, stopping place, station, day's journey, about five parasangs, or fifteen miles.  
 στέγασμα, -ατος, τό, covering.  
 στείβω, stīpo, tread, press; ὁδὸς στειβομένη, trodden way, highway. 511, 9; 355.  
 στενός, -ῆ, -όν, narrow.  
 στενο-χωριά, -ᾱς, ἡ, narrow place.  
 στερέω, deprive; pass., στέρομαι. 533, 6; 355.  
 στέρνον, -ου, τό, breast.  
 στέφανος, -ου, ὁ, crown.  
 στήναι, στήσᾱς. See ἴστημι.  
 στίβος, -ου, ὁ, path, track.  
 στίφος, -ους, τό, (dense) mass or body.  
 στλεγγίς, -ίδος, ἡ, strigil, flesh-comb, scraper.  
 στολή, -ῆς, ἡ, dress, robe.  
 στόλος, -ου, ὁ, military preparation, expedition.  
 στρατεύμα, -ατος, τό, army.  
 στρατεύω, engage in war, am in the field.  
 στρατηγέω, am general, command, lead.  
 στρατηγία, -ας, ἡ, military command.  
 στρατηγός, -οῦ, ὁ, general.  
 στρατιά, -ᾱς, ἡ, army.  
 στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ, soldier.  
 στρατο-πεδεύω, mid., encamp.  
 στρατό-πεδον, -ου, τό, camp.  
 στρατός, -οῦ, ὁ, army.

στραφείς. See στρέφω.  
 στρεπτός, -ή, -όν, *twisted*; ὁ στρεπτός, *necklace*.  
 στρέφω, *turn*; mid., *turn or face about*. 508, 26; 355.  
 στρουθός, -οῦ, ὁ, ἡ, *ostrich*.  
 σύ, *thou*. 261; 79.  
 συγγενής, -ές, *akin*; subst., *relative, kinsman*.  
 συγγίγνομαι, *come into intercourse or acquaintance with, associate with*.  
 συγκαλέω, *convoke, call together*.  
 συλαμβάνω, *apprehend, arrest*.  
 συλλέγω, *collect*.  
 συλλογή, -ῆς, ἡ, *collection, levy (of soldiers)*.  
 συμβάλλω, mid., *contribute*.  
 συμβουλεύω, *counsel with, advise*; mid., *confer with*.  
 σύμβουλος, -ου, ὁ, *counsellor*.  
 σύμμαχος, -ου, ὁ, *ally*.  
 σύμπᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν, *altogether*.  
 συμπέμπω, *send with some one*.  
 συμπίπτω, *fall in with, grapple with*.  
 σύμπλωτος, -ων, *filled with, abounding in*.  
 συμπολεμέω, *fight with (as an ally)*.  
 συμπορεύομαι, *proceed with*.  
 συμπράττω, *work with another, cooperate*.  
 σύν, *with*; with dat.  
 συναγείρω, *gather together, collect*.  
 συναγω, *bring together, collect*.  
 συναλλάττω, *change together, reconcile*.  
 συναβαίνω, *go up with*.  
 συναντάω, *meet with*.  
 συναπτω, *join together, join*.  
 συνγενόμεν. See συγγίγνομαι.  
 σύν-αμι, *come together, meet, encounter*.  
 συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *join in bringing out*.  
 συν-ελέξα, συν-ελέγετο. See συλλέγω.  
 συν-επι-σπεύδω, *join in hastening on*.

συν-έπομαι, *follow with, accompany*.  
 συν-εργός, -οῦ, ὁ, *fellow-worker, helper*.  
 συν-έσπων. See συ-σπάω.  
 συν-ήγαγον. See συν-άγω.  
 συν-ηειν, συν-ηεσαν. See σύν-ειμι.  
 σύν-θημα, -ατος, τό, *agreement, watchword*.  
 συν-θοίτο. See συν-τίθημι.  
 συν-ιδεῖν. See συν-οράω.  
 σύν-οδος, -ου, ἡ, *meeting, encounter*.  
 σύν-οιδα, *am conscious, realize*.  
 συν-οράω, *see together or in one view*.  
 συν-τάττω, *arrange together, draw up (forces)*.  
 συν-τίθημι, *put together*; mid., *agree*.  
 συν-τράπεζος, -ου, ὁ, *table companion, messmate*.  
 συν-τυγχάνω, *fall in with, meet, find*.  
 Συρακούσιος, *Syracusan*. Syracuse was the largest city of Sicily, and located in its southeastern part.  
 Συρία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Syria*, that part of western Asia lying east of the Mediterranean and north of Arabia.  
 Σύριος, -ιά, -ον, *Syrian*.  
 Σύρος, -ου, ὁ, *Syrian*.  
 συ-σκευάζω, *make ready*; pack up.  
 συ-σπάω, *draw together*.  
 συ-σπειράω, *roll or draw closely together*.  
 συ-στρατεύω, mid., *join in an expedition*.  
 συ-στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *fellow-soldier*.  
 συχνός, -ή, -όν, *considerable*; συχνόν (numerous in chap. viii. § 10), *at a considerable distance*.  
 σφάγιον, -ου, τό, *sacrificial victim*; plur., *omens from sacrifices*.  
 σφείς, σφίσι. See σθ, σθ, ξ.  
 σχεδιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *frame, raft*.  
 σχεδόν, *nearly, almost*.  
 σχήμα, -ατος, τό, *form, figure*.  
 σχίζω, *split*.  
 σχολαίως, *leisurely*.  
 σχολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *leisure*.

σάζω, *save*. 517, 5; 355.  
 σώμα, -ατος, τό, *body*.  
 σωτήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ, *savior*.  
 σωφροσύνη, -ῆς, ἡ, *temperance, self-control*.

## T.

τάλαντον, -ου, τό, *talent, about \$1125*.  
 τάλλα, = τὰ ἄλλα.  
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ, *order, discipline; line or body of soldiers*.  
 τάραχος, -ου, ὁ, *confusion*.  
 Ταρσοί, -ῶν, οἱ, *Tarsus, the capital of Cilicia*.  
 τάττω, *arrange, order*. 514, 9; 356.  
 ταῦτη, *in this or that way or direction*.  
 τάφος, -ου, ὁ, *burial, grave*.  
 τάφρος, -ου, ἡ, *ditch, trench*.  
 ταχθῆναι, ταχθείς. See τάττω.  
 τάχα, *quickly*.  
 ταχῶς, θάπτον, τάχιστα, *quickly*.  
 ταχύς, θάπτων, τάχιστος, *quick*.  
 τέ, *both; and, encl.*  
 τεθηκώς. See θνήσκω.  
 τεῖχος, -ους, τό, *wall*.  
 τεκμήριον, -ου, τό, *evidence, proof*.  
 τέκνον, -ου, τό, *child*.  
 τελευτάω, *finish; die*.  
 τελευτή, ῆς, ἡ, *end*.  
 τέλος, -ους, τό, *end*; adv. acc., *finally*.  
 τετρ-, τεττ-. See the list of numerals in the grammar.  
 τεύξεσθε, τεύξομαι. See τυγχάνω.  
 τήμερον, *to-day*.  
 Τίγρης, -ῆτος, ὁ, *river Tigris*; its course is southerly through the countries southeast of the Euxine; it unites with the Euphrates, near Babylon, before entering the Persian Gulf.  
 τίθημι, *put, place*; mid., *τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, stand under arms or halt in line*. 534, 1; 356.  
 τίμάω, *esteem, honor*.

τίμη, -ῆς, ἡ, *honor*.  
 τίμιος, -ιά, -ιον, *honorable, honored*.  
 τίμωρέω, *punish*.  
 τίς, τί, *some one, any one, some person or thing*.  
 τίς, τί, *who? what?*  
 τιτρώσκω, *wound*. 531, 6; 357.  
 τοι-γαρ-οὖν, *therefore, so then, accordingly*.  
 τοιόσ-δε, -άδε, -όνδε, *of the kind mentioned or about to be mentioned*; λέγειν τοιάδε, *to speak as follows*.  
 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη -οὔτο(ν), *such, usually referring to what precedes*.  
 τόξευμα, -ατος, τό, *arrow*.  
 τοξεύω, *shoot the bow*; pass., *am struck with an arrow*.  
 τοξικός, -ή, -όν, *relating to the bow*; ἡ τοξική, *archery*.  
 τοξότης, -ου, ὁ, *bowman*.  
 τόπος, -ου, ὁ, *place*.  
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο(ν), *so great, so much (plur. so many)*.  
 τότε, *then*.  
 τραῦμα, -ατος, τό, *wound*.  
 τράχηλος, -ου, ὁ, *neck*.  
 τρεῖς, τρία, *tres, three*.  
 τρέπω, *turn*. 508, 28; 357.  
 τρέφω, *feed, support, nourish*. 508, 29; 357.  
 τρέχω, *run*. 539, 5; 357.  
 τρέω, *tremble; flee*. 503, 15; 357.  
 τρία. See τρεῖς; τριάκοντα, τριά-κόσιοι. See list of numerals in the Grammar. 288; 76.  
 τριήρης, -ους, ἡ, *trireme, the Greek war-vessel*.  
 τρισ-. See list of numerals in Grammar. 288; 76.  
 τρίτος, -η, -ον, *third*.  
 τροπή, -ῆς, ἡ, *a turning, defeat, rout*.  
 τρόπος, -ου, ὁ, *turn, way, manner*.  
 τροφή, -ῆς, ἡ, *support, nurture*.  
 τυγχάνω, *happen, chance, happen or chance upon*. 523, 9; 357.

## Υ.

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water*.  
 ὕλη, -ης, ἡ, *wood, bush, shrubbery*.  
 ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, ὑμῖν, ὑμᾶς. See σύ.  
 ὑπ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *officer, lieutenant*.  
 ὑπ-άρχω, *begin, am on hand, aid*.  
 ὑπ-ελαύνω, *ride up to*.  
 ὑπέρ, **super, OVER**; with gen., *over, in behalf of, on account of, concerning*; with acc., *over, beyond*.  
 ὑπερ-βολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *passage over (e. g. mountains)*.  
 ὑπερθεν, *from over, over, above*.  
 ὑπ-εσχόμεν. See ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.  
 ὑπ-ήκοος, -ον, *obedient, subject*.  
 ὑπ-ηρετώ, *render aid*.  
 ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *promise*. 524, 5; 358.  
 ὑπό, **sub, under**; with gen., *under, by (of agency, with passive verbs)*; with dat. *under, at the foot of*; with acc., *to (a position) under*.  
 ὑπο-δέεστος, *of inferior origin or station, inferior*.  
 ὑπο-δέχομαι, *take or receive under protection*.  
 ὑπο-ζύγιον, -ου, τό, *yoke - animal, beast of burden*.  
 ὑπο-κρύπτω, *mid., secrete, hide away*.  
 ὑπο-λαμβάνω, *take under protection*.  
 ὑπο-λείπω, *leave behind*.  
 ὑπέμνημα, -ατος, τό, *reminder, remembrance*.  
 ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect*.  
 ὑπο-χωρέω, *withdraw, retreat*.  
 ὑποψία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *suspicion*.  
 ὑστεραίος, -ᾶ, -ον, *next (in time), following*.  
 ὑστερέω, *am behind, later than, too late for*.  
 ὕστερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *later, behind*.  
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν, *high*.

## Φ.

φαίην. See φημί.  
 φαίνω, *show, mid., show myself, appear*. 518, 19; 358.  
 φάλαγξ, -αγγος, ἡ, *line or order of battle, phalanx*.  
 φανερός, -ά, -όν, *apparent, evident*.  
 φανερώς, *apparently, evidently, openly*.  
 φασί(ν). See φημί.  
 φέρω, *bear, bear away, receive*; χαλ-πῶς φ., *am troubled*. 539, 6; 358.  
 φεύγω, *flee*; ὁ φεύγων, *fugitive*. 511, 15; 358.  
 φημί, *say*; οὐ φημι, *refuse*. 535, 1, 481; 358.  
 φθάνω, *anticipate*. 521, 2; 358.  
 φθέγγομαι, *utter or make a sound, shout*.  
 φθονέω, *begrudge, envy*.  
 φιλέω, *love*.  
 φιλία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *love, friendship*.  
 φίλιος, -ιά, -ον, *friendly*.  
 φίλ-ιππος, -ον, *fond of horses*.  
 φιλό-θηρος, -ον, *fond of hunting*.  
 φιλο-κερδέω, *am fond of gain*.  
 φιλο-κίνδυνος, -ον, *fond of danger*.  
 φιλο-μαθής, -ές, *fond of learning*.  
 φίλος, -ου, ὁ, *friend*.  
 φιλο-τίμειομαι, *am piqued or jealous*. 497, α.  
 φίλτερος, -α, -ον, *comp. of φίλος*.  
 φλυαρία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *folly, nonsense*.  
 φοβέω, *frighten*; *mid., fear*.  
 φόβος, -ου, ὁ, *fear*.  
 φοινίκιος(οὺς), -έα(ῆ), -εον(-οῦν), *purple*.  
 Φοινίκη, -ης, ἡ, *Phoenicia*.  
 φοινικιστής, -οῦ, ὁ, *wearer of the purple, courtier*.  
 φοῖνιξ, -ίκος, ὁ, *palm-tree, espec. date-palm*.  
 φορέω, *wear*.  
 φράζω, *tell, declare*. 514, 17; 359.  
 φρόνιμος, -ον, *temperate, cool-headed*.

φρούρ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *commander of a garrison*.  
 φρουρέω, *guard, watch*.  
 φρούριον, -ου, τό, *guard, garrison*.  
 Φρυγία, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Phrygia*.  
 Φρύξ, Φρυγός, ὁ, *a Phrygian*.  
 φυγάς, -άδος, ὁ, *fugitive, exile*.  
 φυγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *flight*.  
 φυλακή, -ῆς, ἡ, *vigilia, a guard (collective)*.  
 φύλαξ, -κος, ὁ, *guardsman*.  
 φυλάττω, *guard*. 514, 11; 359.  
 φύω, *produce*. 507, 4; 359.  
 Φωκαῖς, -ίδος, ἡ, *Phocæan woman*.

## Χ.

χαλεπαίνω, *am angry*.  
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, *hard, difficult*.  
 χαλεπώς, *hardly, grievously*; χαλε-πῶς φέρω, *am troubled, am grieved*.  
 χάλκεος(οὺς), -έα(ῆ), -εον(οῦν), *brazen, of bronze*.  
 χαλκός, -οῦ, ὁ, *bronze*.  
 χαρίζομαι, *gratify*.  
 χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ, *grace, favor*; χ. εἰδέ-ναι, *recognize a favor, feel grateful*.  
 χειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ, *winter, cold*.  
 χεῖρ, *χειρὸς, ἡ, hand*.  
 χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *one thousand*.  
 χιλός, -οῦ, ὁ, *hay, fodder*.  
 χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ, *tunic, the linen garment worn next the body*.  
 χοῖνιξ, -κος, ἡ, *choenix, about a litre or quart*.  
 χόρτος, -ου, ὁ, *dry grass, fodder*.  
 χρᾶομαι, *use*. 412; 360.  
 χρεή, *it is necessary, one must*. 535, 3, 486; 360.  
 χρήζω, *desire, wish*.  
 χρήμα, -ατος, τό, *thing*; plur., *espec. goods, means, wealth*.  
 χρῆναι, *see χρεή*; χρῆσθαι, *see χρᾶομαι*.

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον, *useful*.  
 χρόνος, -ου, ὁ, *time*.  
 χρύσεος(οὺς), -έα(ῆ), -εον(οῦν), *golden*.  
 χρῦσιον, -ου, τό, *gold piece, gold money*.  
 χρῦσο-χάλινος, -ον, *golden-bridled*.  
 χώρα, -ᾶς, ἡ, *a country*.  
 χωρέω, *make room, advance*; of a measure, *contain, hold*.  
 χωρίον, -ου, τό, *stronghold*.  
 χωρίς, *apart from*.

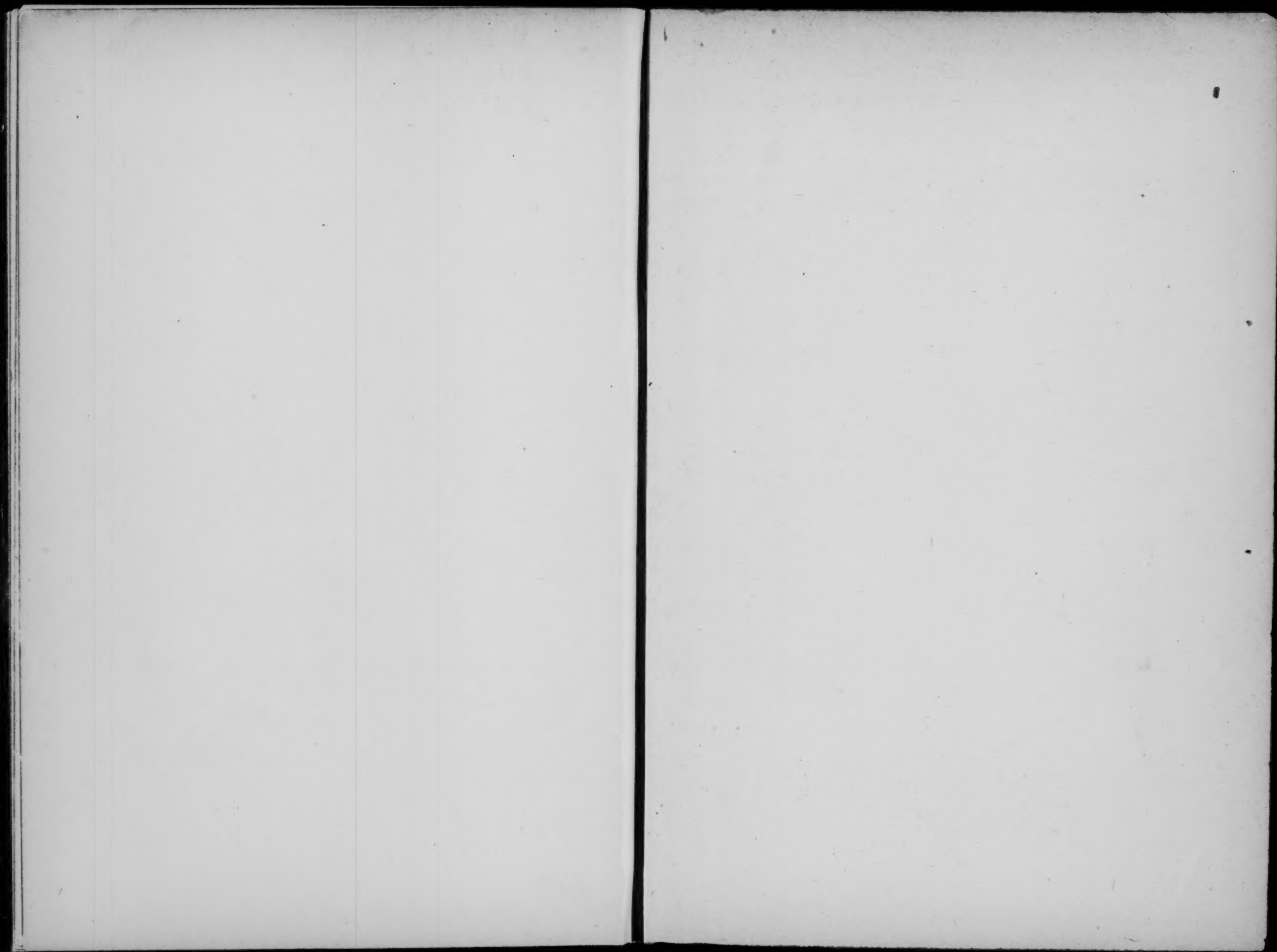
## Ψ.

ψέλιον, -ου, τό, *bracelet*.  
 ψεύδω, *deceive*; pass., *am mistaken*; mid., *deceive, lie*. 360.  
 ψηφίζω, *vote*.  
 ψιλός, -ή, -όν, *bare, unprotected*.  
 ψιλόω, *make bare*; pass., *am cleared of*.

## Ω.

ὦδε, *thus (as follows)*.  
 ᾤετο. See οἶομαι.  
 ᾤκτειρον. See οἶκτεῖρω.  
 ὠνόομαι, *buy, traffic*. 539, 7; 360.  
 ὠρᾶ, -ᾶς, ἡ, *hora, season, suitable time, hour*.  
 ὡς, *as*: (a) with numerals, *about*; (b) strengthening the superl. ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*; (c) as a prep., *to*; (d) with the partic., *as, on the ground that*; (e) *how, in what manner*; (f) as conj., *that, in order that*.  
 ὦς, *thus*.  
 ὡσ-περ, *just as, just as if*.  
 ὥστε, *so that (as a result)*.  
 ὠτειλή, -ῆς, ἡ, *scar*.  
 ὠτίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *bustard*.  
 ὠφελέω, *benefit, assist, aid*.  
 ὠφέλιμος, -η, -ον, *beneficial*.





COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

This book is due on the date in the box below, or at the  
e

887.82

H23

Harper + Waters.

An inductive greek method.

1894  
310 M.B.N.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY



0026058170



